Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1 For safety and security	Make sure to read through them
2 Instrument cluster	How to read the gauges and meters, the variety of warning lights and indicators, etc.
3 Operation of each component	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving, etc.
4 Driving	Operations and advices which are necessary for driving
5 Lexus Display Audio system	Operating the Lexus Display Audio system
6 Interior features	Usage of the interior features, etc.
7 Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures
8 When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction or emergency
9 Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features, etc.
Index	Search by symptom
	Search alphabetically

For your information 8
Reading this manual 12
How to search 13
Pictorial index 14

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 34
For safety drive 36
Seat belts 38
SRS airbags 45
Airbag manual on-off system 54
Safety information for children 56
Child restraint systems 57
Exhaust gas precautions 82

1-2. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 83
Double locking system 88
Alarm 89

2 Instrument cluster

2. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 96
Gauges and meters 101
Multi-information display 105
Head-up display 111
Fuel consumption information 118

3 Operation of each component

3-1. Key information
Keys 124

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 130
Back door 136
Smart entry & start system 148

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 169
Rear seats 171
Driving position memory 178
Head restraints 182

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 185
Inside rear view mirror 187
Outside rear view mirrors 189

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 192
Moon roof 195
Electronic sunshade 199

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 202
Cargo and luggage 211
Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package) 213
Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package) 214

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch 221
Automatic transmission 226
Multidrive 233
Turn signal lever 239
Parking brake 240
Brake Hold 243
ASC (Active Sound Control) 245

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 246
Automatic High Beam 250
Fog light switch 254
Windshield wipers and washer 256
Rear window wiper and washer 260

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 262

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Stop & Start system 266
Dynamic radar cruise control 271
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 286
Cruise control 300
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 304
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 312
Lexus parking assist-sensor 322
Rear view monitor system 330
Driving mode select switch 340
Driving assist systems 343
All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models) 349
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 350
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 359

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips 370
Utility vehicle precautions 374

5 Lexus Display Audio system

5-1. Basic Operations

Lexus Display Audio system 380
Steering wheel audio switches 386
USB/AUX ports 387

5-2. Setup

Setup menu 389
General settings 390
Voice settings 393
Display settings 394

5-3. Using the audio system

Selecting the audio source 396
Optimal use of the audio system 397
Audio settings 398
Audio menu screen operation 402

5-4. Using the radio

Radio operation 405

5-5. Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA/AAC discs

CD player operation 407

5-6. Using an external device

Listening to an iPod 413
Using USB memory device 417
Using the AUX port 422

5-7. Connecting Bluetooth®

Steps for using Bluetooth® devices 423
Registering a Bluetooth® device 425
Selecting a Bluetooth® device 426
Connecting a Bluetooth® audio player 427
Connecting a Bluetooth® phone 428
Displaying a Bluetooth® device details 429
Detailed Bluetooth® settings 430

5-8. Bluetooth® Audio

Listening to Bluetooth® Audio 431

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone
Using a Bluetooth® Phone 433
Making a call 435
Receiving a call 438
Speaking on the phone 439
Using a Bluetooth® phone messages 441
Using the steering wheel switches 444
Bluetooth® phone settings 445
5-10. Phonebook
Contact settings 447
Messaging setting 450
5-11. Bluetooth®
What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 451
Bluetooth® 454
5-12. Other function
"Information" screen 461
MirrorLink™ 462
USB photo 465
Speech command system 467

6 Interior features

6-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
Automatic air conditioning system 470
Heated steering wheel/ seat heaters/ seat ventilators 480
6-2. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list 483
• Front interior light 484
• Personal lights 484
• Rear interior light 484
6-3. Using the storage features
List of storage features 486
• Glove box 487
• Console box 487
• Cup holders/ bottle holders 488
• Sunglass holder 489
• Card holders 490
Luggage compartment features 491
6-4. Other interior features
Other interior features 497
• Sun visors 497
• Vanity mirrors 497
• Clock 498
• Power outlet 498
• Wireless charger 499
• Armrest 504
• Assist grips 504
• Coat hooks 505
ERA-GLONASS 506

7 Maintenance and care

7-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 510
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 514

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 517

7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 520
Hood 522
Positioning a floor jack 523
Engine compartment 525
Tires 538
Tire inflation pressure 548
Wheels 550
Air conditioning filter 552
Electronic key battery 554
Checking and replacing fuses 556
Light bulbs 560

8 When trouble arises

8-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 574
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 575

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 576
If you think something is wrong 582
Fuel pump shut off system 583
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 584
If a warning message is displayed 591
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 594
If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire) 607
If the engine will not start 623
If the electronic key does not operate properly 625
If the vehicle battery is discharged 629
If your vehicle overheats 633
If the vehicle becomes stuck 637

9 Vehicle specifications

9-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.).....640

Fuel information.....654

9-2. Customization

Customizable features 656

9-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 666

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 668

Alphabetical index.....672

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio/visual system
- Lexus parking assist monitor

Toyota Motor Europe NV/SA, Avenue du Bourget 60 - 1140 Brussels, Belgium
www.toyota-europe.com

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

Both genuine Lexus and a wide variety of other spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Should it be determined that any of the genuine Lexus parts or accessories supplied with the vehicle need to be replaced, Lexus recommends that genuine Lexus parts or accessories, be used to replace them. Other parts or accessories of matching quality can also be used.

Lexus cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine Lexus spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional before you scrap your vehicle.



Your vehicle contains batteries and/or accumulators. Do not discard them into the environment but cooperate with separate collection (Directive 2006/66/EC).

WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Reading this manual

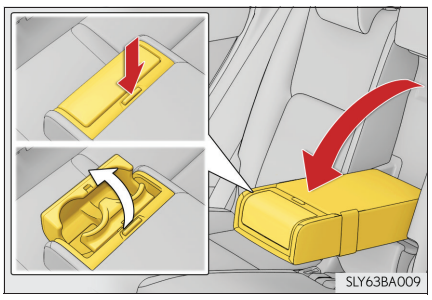
WARNING:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.

NOTICE:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

1 2 3 ... Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

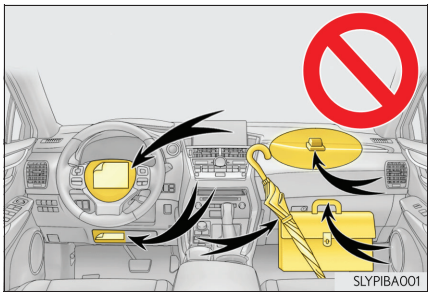
Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).


SLY63BA009

Indicates the component or position being explained.

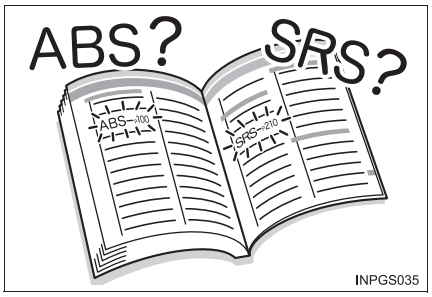
Means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.


SLYPIBA001

How to search

■ **Searching by name**

• Alphabetical index.....P. 672



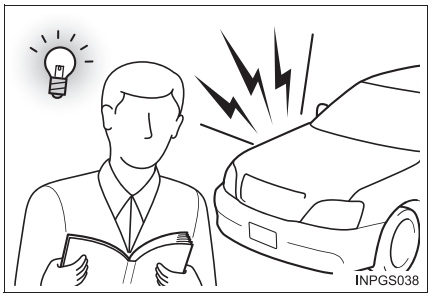
■ **Searching by installation position**

• Pictorial index.....P. 14



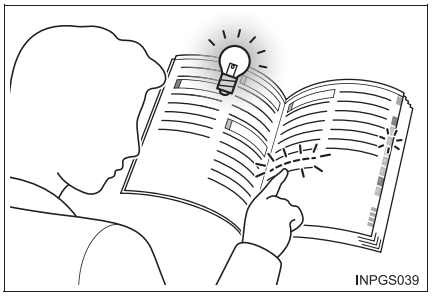
■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

• What to do if... (Troubleshooting).....P. 668



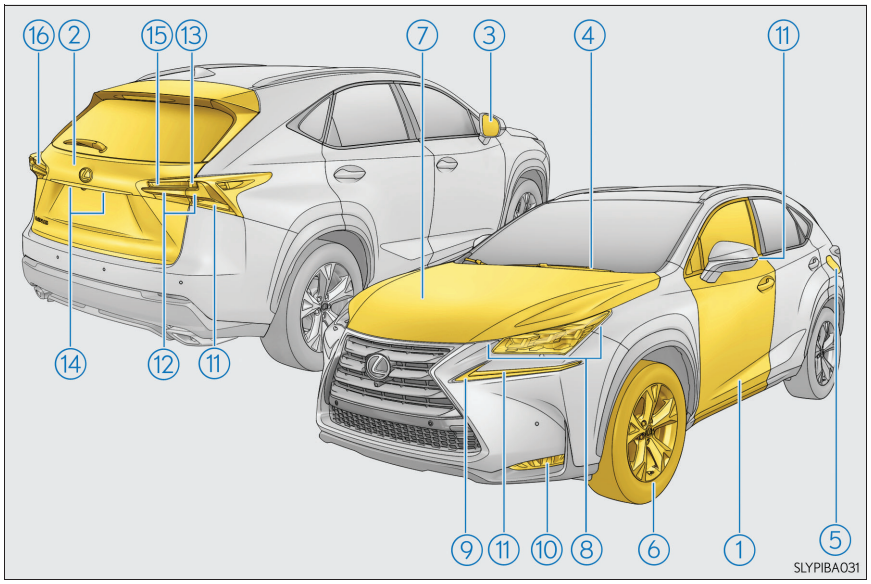
■ **Searching by title**

• Table of contents.....P. 2



Pictorial index

Exterior



The shape of the headlights may differ depending on the grade, etc.

① **Side doors** ..... **P. 130**
Locking/unlocking ..... P. 130
Opening/closing the side windows ..... P. 192
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key ..... P. 625
Warning messages ..... P. 591

② **Back door** ..... **P. 136**
Opening from inside the cabin*1 ..... P. 137
Opening from outside ..... P. 137
Warning messages ..... P. 591

③ **Outside rear view mirrors** ..... **P. 189**
Adjusting the mirror angle ..... P. 189
Folding the mirrors ..... P. 189
Driving position memory*1 ..... P. 178
Defogging the mirrors ..... P. 475

④ **Windshield wipers** ..... **P. 256**
Precautions against winter season ..... P. 370
To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer)*1 ..... P. 476
Precautions against car wash (Rain-sensing windshield wipers)*1 ..... P. 512

⑤ **Fuel filler door** ..... **P. 262**
Refueling method ..... P. 262
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity ..... P. 643

⑥ **Tires** ..... **P. 538**
Tire size/inflation pressure ..... P. 651
Winter tires/tire chain ..... P. 370
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system*1 ..... P. 538
Coping with flat tires ..... P. 594, 607

⑦ **Hood** ..... **P. 522**
Opening ..... P. 522
Engine compartment cover ..... P. 527
Engine oil ..... P. 643
Coping with overheat ..... P. 633
Warning messages ..... P. 591

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P. 560, Watts: P. 653)

⑧ **Headlights** ..... **P. 246**

⑨ **Front position lights/daytime running lights** ..... **P. 246**

⑩ **Front fog lights*1** ..... **P. 254**
Cornering lights*1 ..... **P. 247**

⑪ **Turn signal lights** ..... **P. 239**

⑫ **Tail lights** ..... **P. 246**

⑬ **Stop lights**
Emergency brake signal ..... P. 344

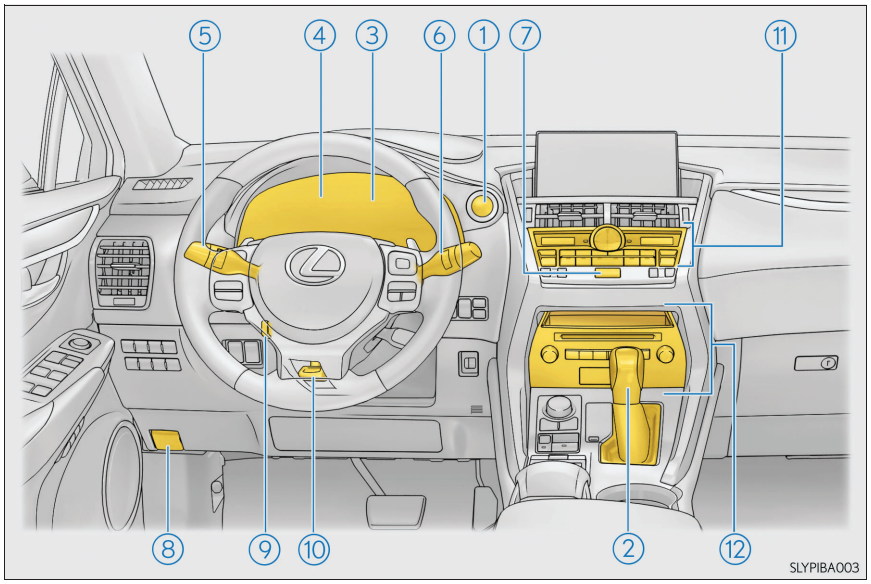
⑭ **License plate lights** ..... **P. 246**

⑮ **Back-up light*2**
Shifting the shift lever to R ..... P. 226, 233

⑯ **Rear fog light*2** ..... **P. 254**

*1: If equipped
*2: They may be located on the opposite side depending on the target region.

Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)



① **Engine switch** ..... **P. 221**
Starting the engine/changing the modes ..... P. 221, 222
Emergency stop of the engine ..... P. 575
When the engine will not start ..... P. 623
Warning messages ..... P. 591

② **Shift lever** ..... **P. 226, 233**
Changing the shift position ..... P. 226, 233
Precautions against towing ..... P. 576
When the shift lever does not move ..... P. 231, 237

③ **Meters** ..... **P. 101**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel light ..... P. 101, 102
Warning lights/indicator lights ..... P. 96
When the warning lights come on ..... P. 584

④ **Multi-information display** ..... **P. 105**
Display ..... P. 105
When the warning messages are displayed ..... P. 591

⑤ **Turn signal lever** ..... **P. 239**
Headlight switch ..... **P. 246**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/license plate lights/ daytime running lights ..... P. 246
Front fog lights*1/rear fog light ..... P. 254

⑥ **Windshield wiper and washer switch** ..... **P. 256, 260**
Usage ..... P. 256, 260
Adding washer fluid ..... P. 537
Warning messages ..... P. 591

⑦ **Emergency flasher switch** ..... **P. 574**

⑧ **Hood lock release lever** ..... **P. 522**

⑨ **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch*1** ..... **P. 185**
Adjustment ..... P. 185
Driving position memory*1 ..... P. 178

⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever*1** ..... **P. 185**
Adjustment ..... P. 185

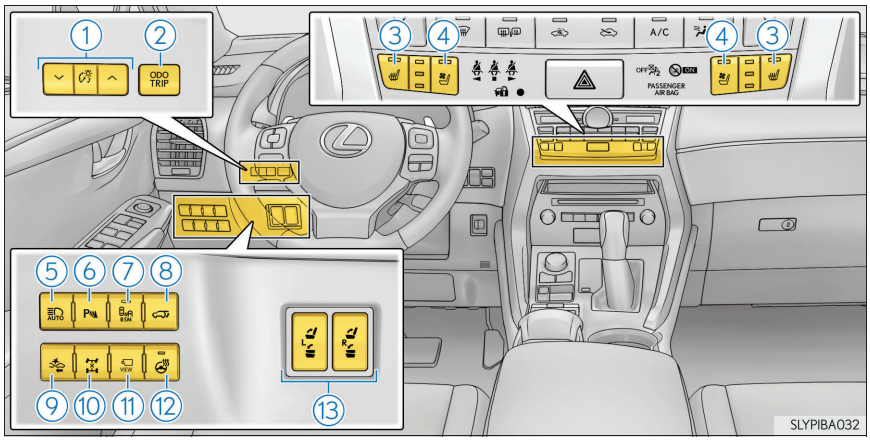
⑪ **Air conditioning system** ..... **P. 470**
Usage ..... P. 470
Rear window defogger ..... P. 475

⑫ **Audio system*1, 2** ..... **P. 380**
Hands-free system ..... P. 433

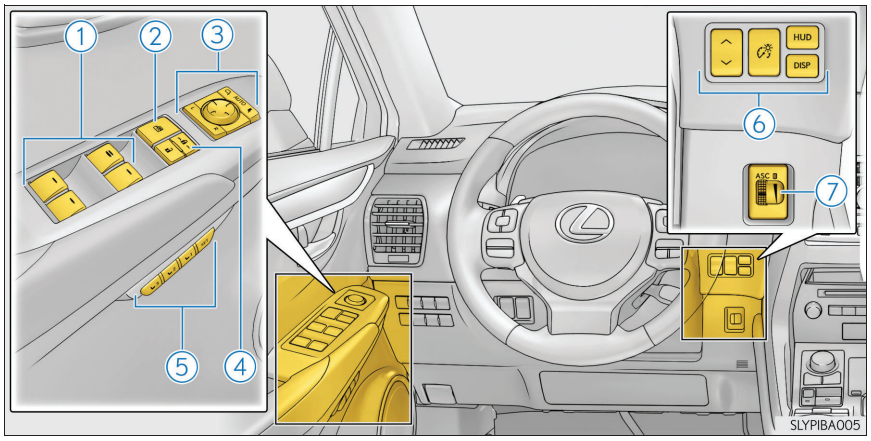
*1: If equipped

*2: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Switches (Left-hand drive vehicles)

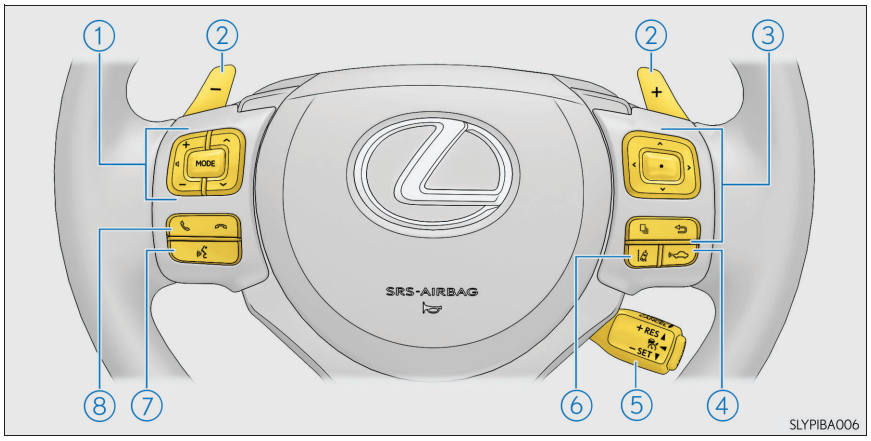


① Instrument panel light control switches..... P. 102
② Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button..... P. 102
③ Seat heater switches*1 .....P. 482
④ Seat ventilator switches*1.....P. 482
⑤ Automatic High Beam switch*1.....P. 250
⑥ Lexus parking assist-sensor switch*1 .....P. 322
⑦ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch*1.....P. 359
⑧ Power back door switch*1 ..... P. 137
⑨ PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch*1..... P. 351
⑩ All-wheel drive lock switch*1 .....P. 349
⑪ Camera switch*1, 2
⑫ Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P. 481
⑬ Rear seat operations switch*1 ..... P. 172



① Power window switches ..... P. 192
② Window lock switch ..... P. 192
③ Outside rear view mirror switches ..... P. 189
④ Door lock switch ..... P. 132
⑤ Driving position memory switches*1 ..... P. 178
⑥ HUD (Head-up display) switches*1 ..... P. 111
⑦ ASC (Active Sound Control) dial*1 ..... P. 245

*1: If equipped
*2: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".



① **Audio remote control switches*1** ..... **P. 386**

② **Paddle shift switches*2** ..... **P. 227, 228, 234, 235**

③ **Meter control switches** ..... **P. 106**

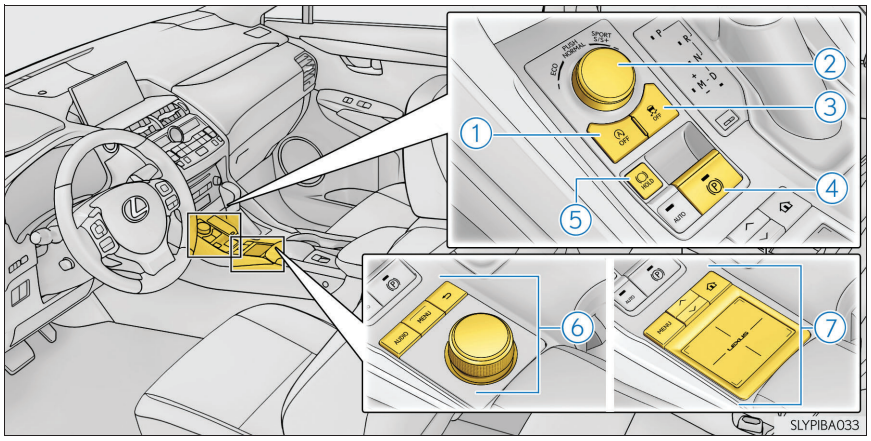
④ **Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button*2** ..... **P. 275, 290**

⑤ **Cruise control switch**
Cruise control*2 ..... P. 300
Dynamic radar cruise control*2 ..... P. 271, 286

⑥ **LDA switch*2**
LDA (Lane Departure Alert)*2 ..... P. 304
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*2 ..... P. 312

⑦ **Talk switch*1** ..... **P. 444**

⑧ **Telephone switches*1** ..... **P. 444**



① Stop & Start cancel switch*2 ..... P. 266

② Driving mode select switch ..... P. 340

③ VSC OFF switch ..... P. 345

④ Parking brake switch ..... P. 240
Applying/releasing ..... P. 240, 241
Precautions against winter season ..... P. 371
Warning buzzer/message ..... P. 586, 591

⑤ Brake hold switch ..... P. 243

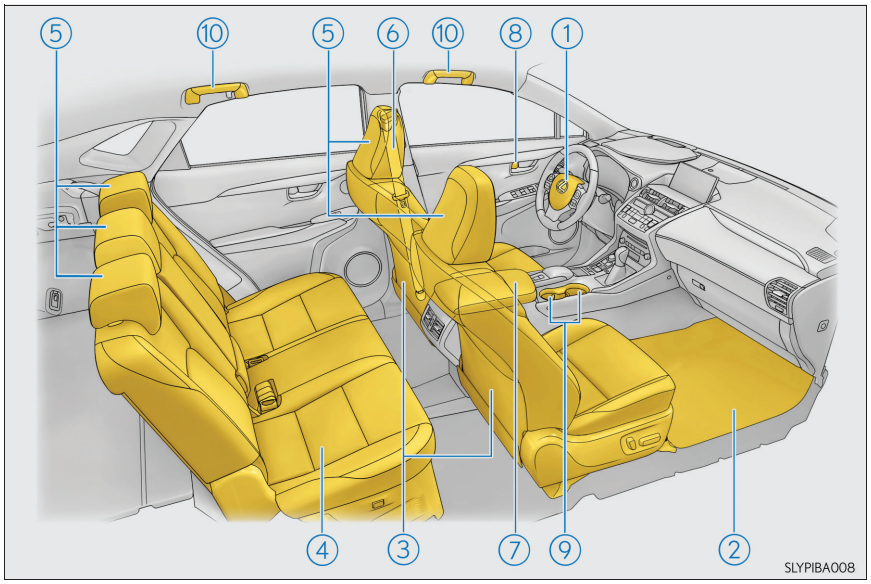
⑥ Lexus Display Audio controller*2 ..... P. 382

⑦ Remote Touch*1, 2

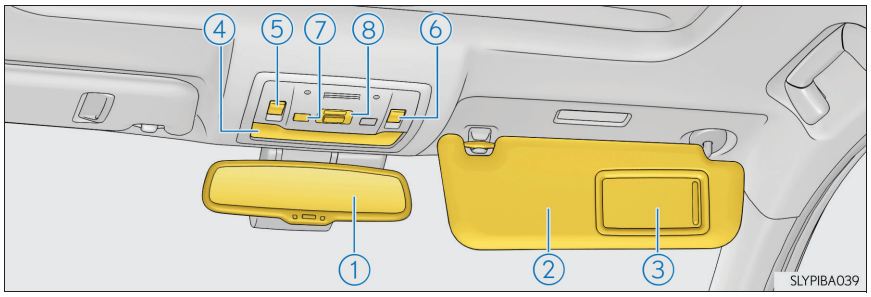
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

*2: If equipped

Interior (Left-hand drive vehicles)



① SRS airbags..... P. 45
② Floor mats ..... P. 34
③ Front seats..... P. 169
④ Rear seats ..... P. 171
⑤ Head restraints..... P. 182
⑥ Seat belts ..... P. 38
⑦ Console box .....P. 487
⑧ Inside lock buttons..... P. 132
⑨ Cup holders ..... P. 488
⑩ Assist grips.....P. 504



① Inside rear view mirror ..... P. 187
② Sun visors*2 ..... P. 497
③ Vanity mirrors ..... P. 497
④ Interior light*3 ..... P. 484
Personal lights ..... P. 484
⑤ Moon roof switches*1 ..... P. 195
⑥ Moon roof switches*1 ..... P. 195
Electronic sunshade switch*1 ..... P. 199
⑦ Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch*1 ..... P. 91
⑧ "SOS" button*1 ..... P. 506

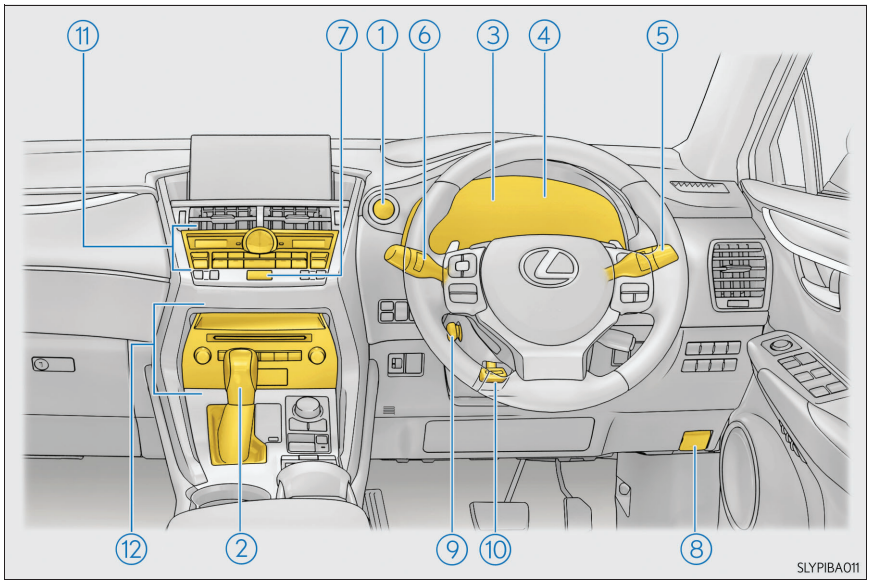
*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 63)



*3: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)



① **Engine switch** ..... **P. 221**
Starting the engine/changing the modes ..... P. 221, 222
Emergency stop of the engine ..... P. 575
When the engine will not start ..... P. 623
Warning messages ..... P. 591

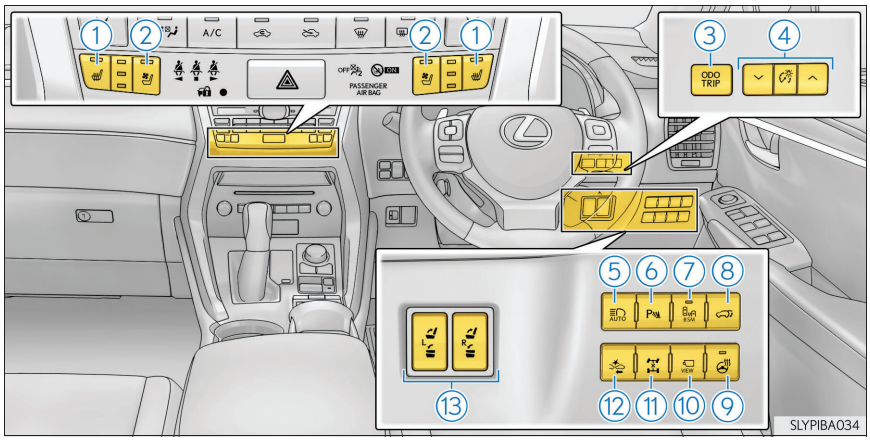
② **Shift lever** ..... **P. 226**
Changing the shift position ..... P. 226
Precautions against towing ..... P. 576
When the shift lever does not move ..... P. 231, 237

③ **Meters** ..... **P. 101**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel light ..... P. 101, 102
Warning lights/indicator lights ..... P. 96
When the warning lights come on ..... P. 584

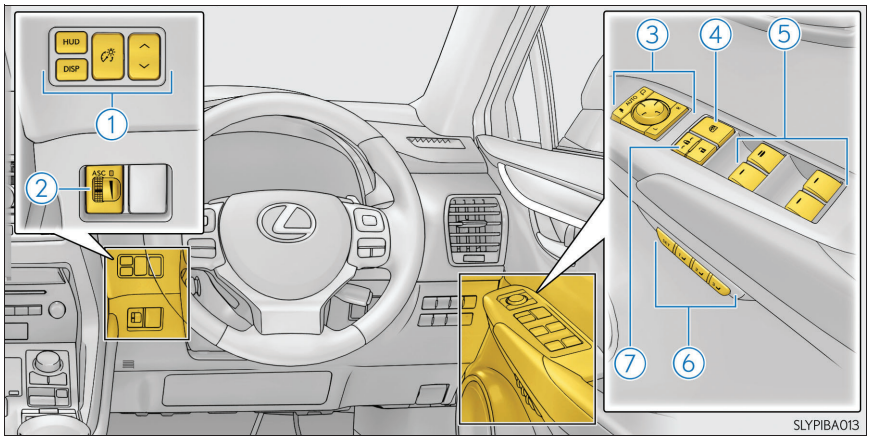
④ **Multi-information display** ..... **P. 105**
Display ..... P. 105
When the warning messages are displayed ..... P. 591
⑤ **Windshield wiper and washer switch** ..... **P. 256, 260**
Usage ..... P. 256, 260
Adding washer fluid ..... P. 537
Warning messages ..... P. 591
⑥ **Turn signal lever** ..... **P. 239**
Headlight switch ..... **P. 246**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/license plate lights/ daytime running lights ..... P. 246
Front fog lights*1/rear fog light ..... P. 254
⑦ **Emergency flasher switch** ..... **P. 574**
⑧ **Hood lock release lever** ..... **P. 522**
⑨ **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch*1** ..... **P. 185**
Adjustment ..... P. 185
Driving position memory*1 ..... P. 178
⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever*1** ..... **P. 185**
Adjustment ..... P. 185
⑪ **Air conditioning system** ..... **P. 470**
Usage ..... P. 470
Rear window defogger ..... P. 475
⑫ **Audio system*1, 2** ..... **P. 380**
Hands-free system ..... P. 433

*1: If equipped
*2: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Switches (Right-hand drive vehicles)

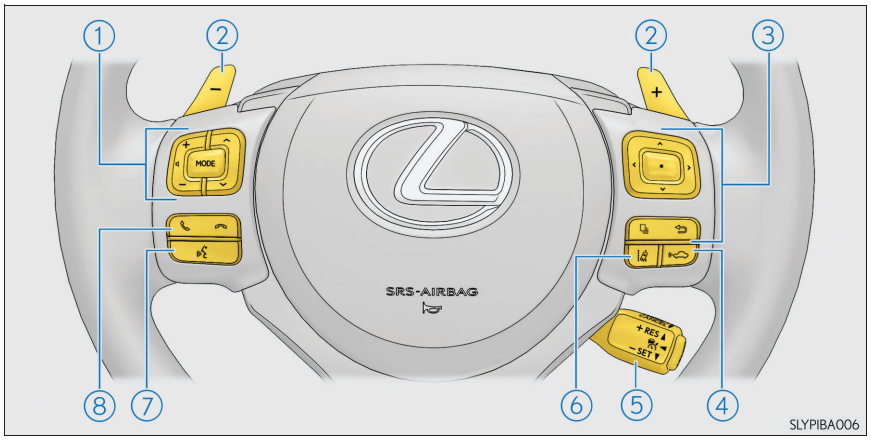


① Seat heater switches*1 ..... P. 482
② Seat ventilator switches*1 ..... P. 482
③ Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button ..... P. 102
④ Instrument panel light control switches ..... P. 102
⑤ Automatic High Beam switch*1 ..... P. 250
⑥ Lexus parking assist-sensor switch*1 ..... P. 322
⑦ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch*1 ..... P. 359
⑧ Power back door switch*1 ..... P. 137
⑨ Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P. 481
⑩ Camera switch*1, 2
⑪ All-wheel drive lock switch*1 ..... P. 349
⑫ PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch*1 ..... P. 351
⑬ Rear seat operations switch*1 ..... P. 172



① HUD (Head-up display) switches*1 ..... P. 111
② ASC (Active Sound Control) dial*1 ..... P. 245
③ Outside rear view mirror switches ..... P. 189
④ Window lock switch ..... P. 192
⑤ Power window switches ..... P. 192
⑥ Driving position memory switches*1 ..... P. 178
⑦ Door lock switch ..... P. 132

*1: If equipped
*2: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".



① **Audio remote control switches*1** ..... **P. 386**

② **Paddle shift switches*2** ..... **P. 227, 228**

③ **Meter control switches** ..... **P. 106**

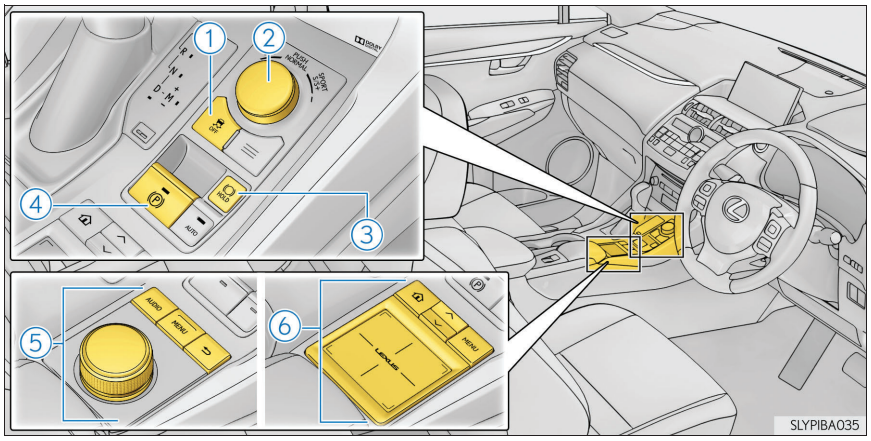
④ **Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button*2** ..... **P. 275, 290**

⑤ **Cruise control switch**
Cruise control*2 ..... P. 300
Dynamic radar cruise control*2 ..... P. 271, 286

⑥ **LDA switch*2**
LDA (Lane Departure Alert)*2 ..... P. 304
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*2 ..... P. 312

⑦ **Talk switch*1** ..... **P. 444**

⑧ **Telephone switches*1** ..... **P. 444**



① VSC OFF switch.....P. 345

② Driving mode select switch .....P. 340

③ Brake hold switch.....P. 243

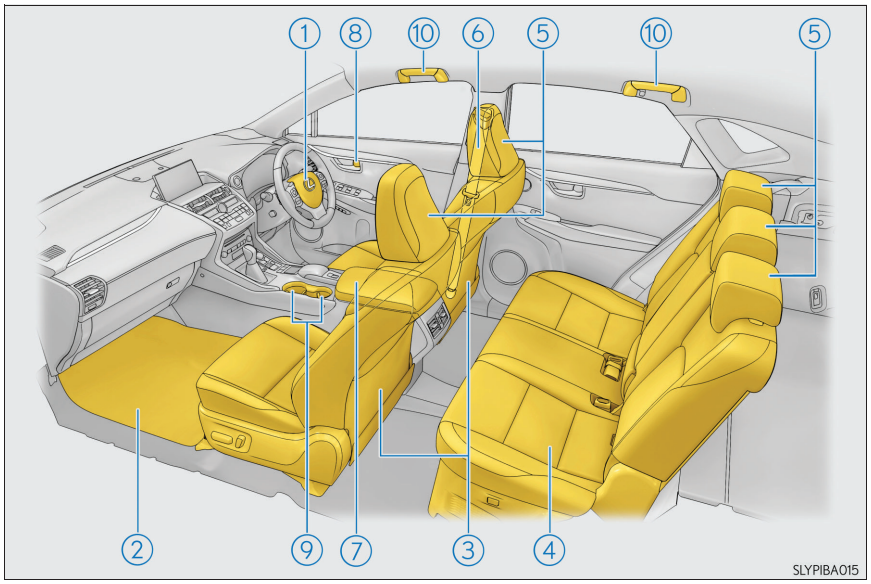
④ Parking brake switch.....P. 240
Applying/releasing..... P. 240, 241
Precautions against winter season..... P. 371
Warning buzzer/message..... P. 586, 591

⑤ Lexus Display Audio controller*2 .....P. 382

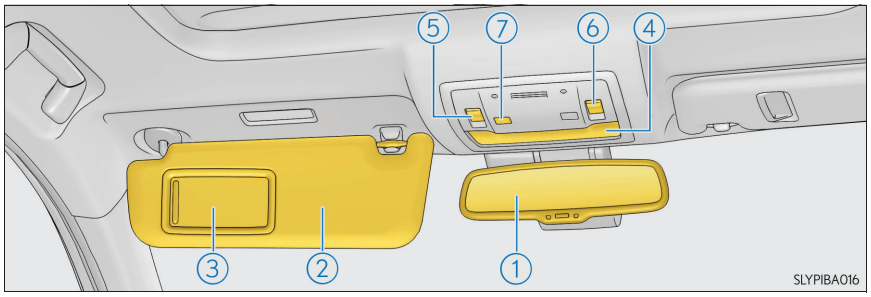
⑥ Remote Touch *1, 2

*1: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".
*2: If equipped

Interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)



① SRS airbags..... P. 45
② Floor mats ..... P. 34
③ Front seats..... P. 169
④ Rear seats ..... P. 171
⑤ Head restraints..... P. 182
⑥ Seat belts ..... P. 38
⑦ Console box .....P. 487
⑧ Inside lock buttons..... P. 132
⑨ Cup holders ..... P. 488
⑩ Assist grips.....P. 504



① Inside rear view mirror ..... P. 187
② Sun visors*2 ..... P. 497
③ Vanity mirrors ..... P. 497
④ Interior light*3 ..... P. 484
Personal lights ..... P. 484
⑤ Moon roof switches*1 ..... P. 195
⑥ Moon roof switches*1 ..... P. 195
Electronic sunshade switch*1 ..... P. 199
⑦ Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch*1 ..... P. 91

*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 63)



*3: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

For safety and security 1

1-1. For safe use

Before driving 34
For safety drive 36
Seat belts 38
SRS airbags 45
Airbag manual on-off system 54
Safety information for children 56
Child restraint systems 57
Exhaust gas precautions 82

1-2. Theft deterrent system

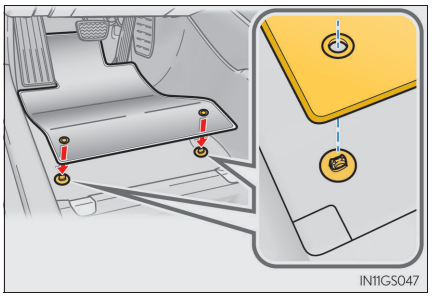
Engine immobilizer system 83
Double locking system 88
Alarm 89

Before driving

Floor mat

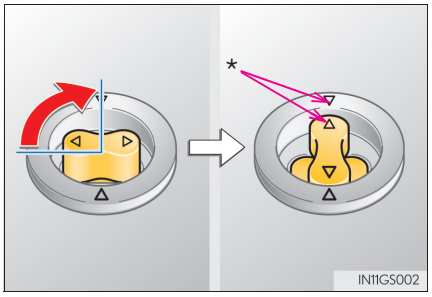
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the △ marks.



The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

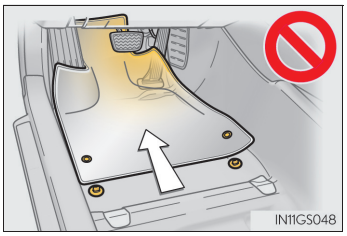
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When installing the driver's floor mat**

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ **Before driving**

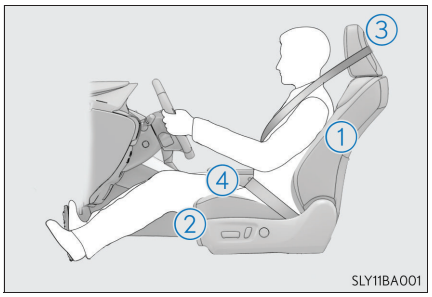
- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.



For safety drive

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



① Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P. 169)

② Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P. 169, 185)

③ Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 182)

④ Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 38)

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P. 38)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 57)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see the rear of the vehicle clearly, by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P. 187, 189)

WARNING

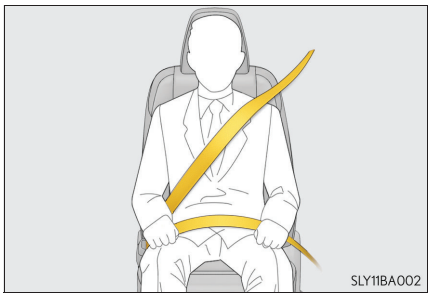
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired. Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Seat belts

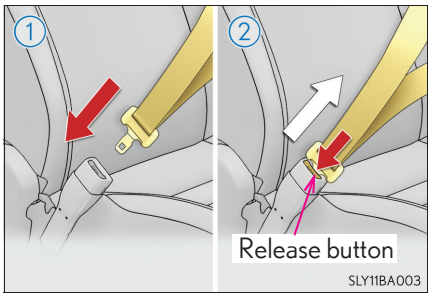
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt (except for the rear center seat)

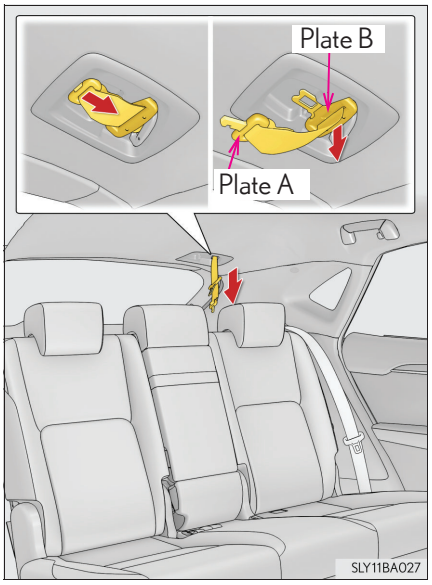


① To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

② To release the seat belt, press the release button.

Fastening the seat belt (for the rear center seat)

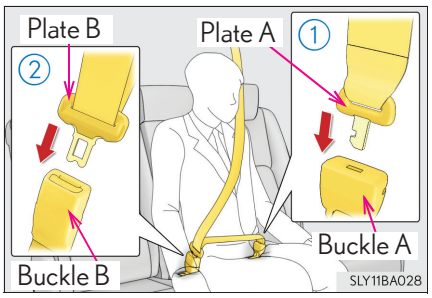
1 Take out the plate.



2 When fixing the belt, in the order of plate A and then plate B, insert the plate into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

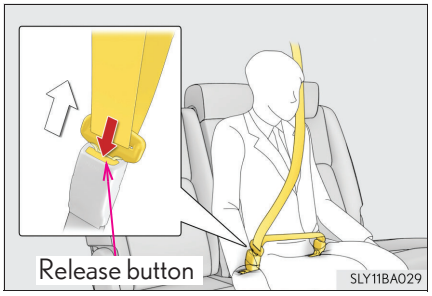
① Plate A, buckle A

② Plate B, buckle B



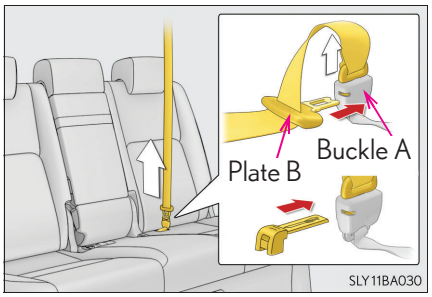
Releasing and stowing the seat belt (for the rear center seat)

1 To release the hooked buckle B, push the buckle release button.



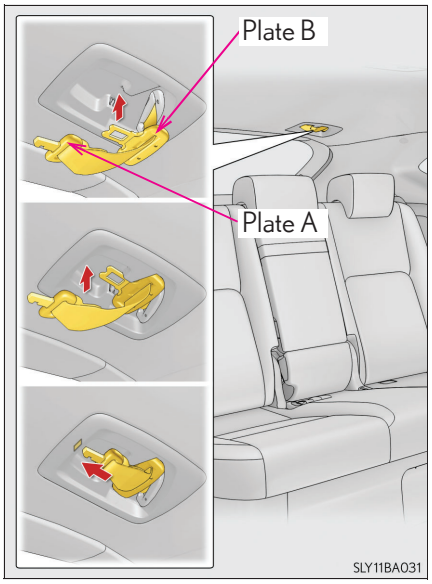
2 Insert the mechanical key (→P. 124) or plate B into the notch of buckle A and remove the belt.

Retract the belt slowly when releasing and stowing the seat belt.

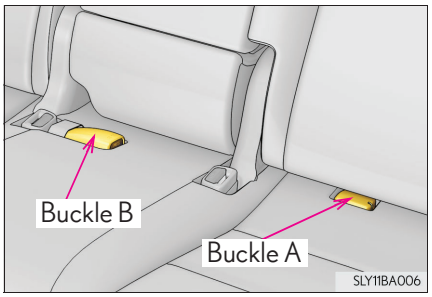


3 Stow in the cover in the order of plate B and then plate A.

In order to securely fix it, firmly insert it to the back.



4 Stow seat belt buckle A and buckle B in the pockets.

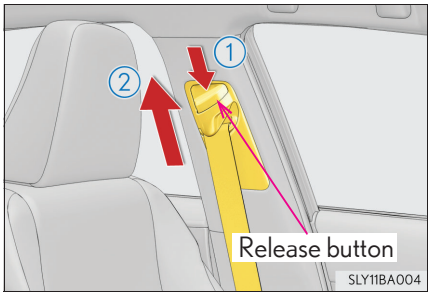


Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

① Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.

② Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

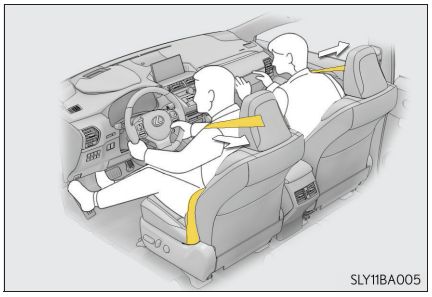
Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.



Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.



■ **Emergency locking retractor (ELR)**

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ **Child seat belt usage**

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 57)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P. 38)

■ **Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ **Seat belt regulations**

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for seat belt replacement or installation.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

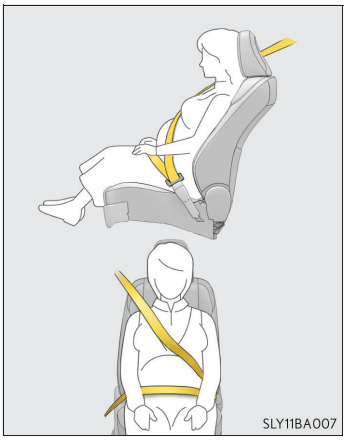
- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 38)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.



■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 38)

⚠ WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt pretensioners

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

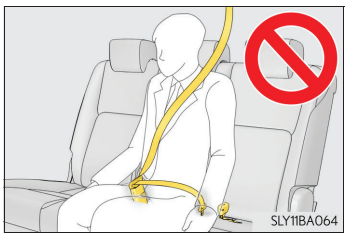
Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 41)

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there's no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

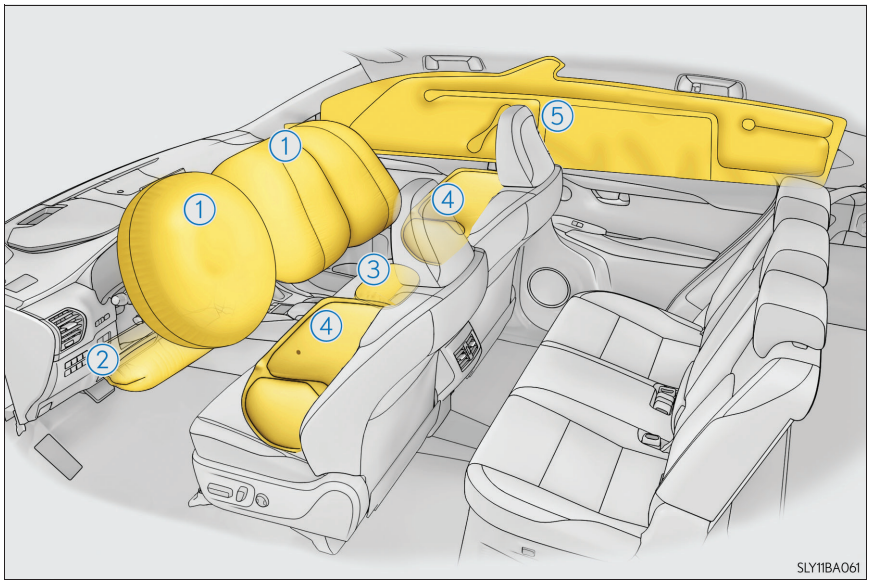
■ When using the rear center seat belt

Do not use the rear center seat belt with either buckle released. Fastening only one of the buckles may result in death or serious injury in case of sudden braking or a collision.



SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



SRS front airbags

① SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

② SRS knee airbag
Can help provide driver protection

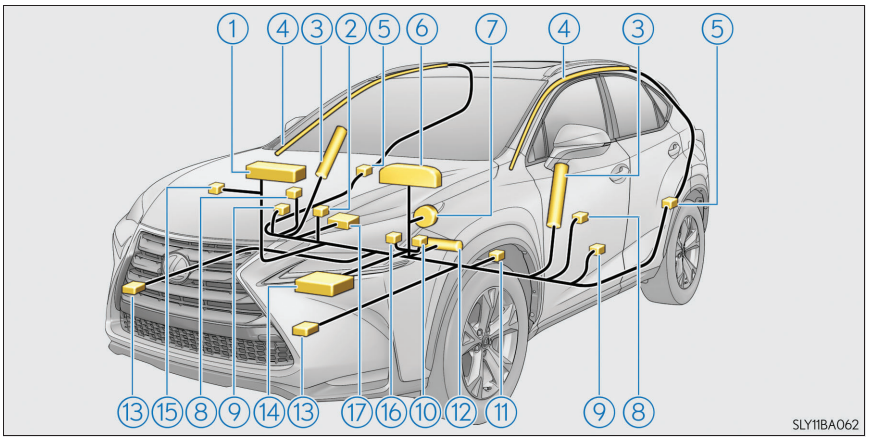
③ SRS seat cushion airbag
Can help restrain the front passenger

SRS side and curtain shield airbags

④ SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso and pelvis of the front seat occupants

⑤ SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

SRS airbag system components



① Front passenger airbag
② "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator
③ Side airbags
④ Curtain shield airbags
⑤ Side impact sensors (rear)
⑥ SRS warning light
⑦ Driver airbag
⑧ Side impact sensors (front)
⑨ Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
⑩ Driver's seat belt buckle switch
⑪ Driver's seat position sensor
⑫ Knee airbags
⑬ Front impact sensors
⑭ Airbag sensor assembly
⑮ Airbag manual on-off switch
⑯ Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
⑰ Passenger seat cushion airbag

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

⚠ WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

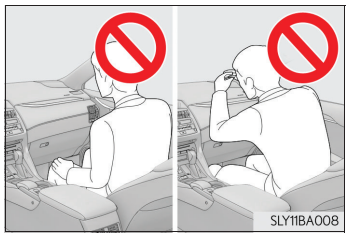
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 57)

⚠ WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



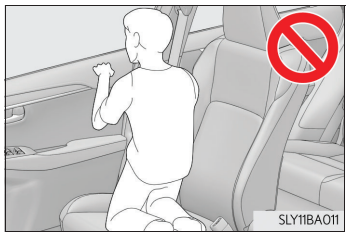
- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



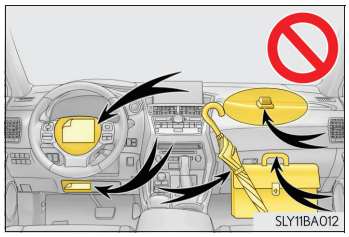
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



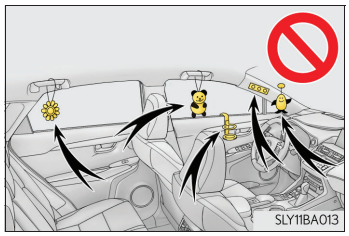
⚠ WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side windows, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip. (Except for the speed limit sticker →P. 615)



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.

WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising, etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- Vehicles with ERA-GLONASS: If the SRS airbags deploy, the system is designed to send an emergency call* to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP), notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 506)

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P. 507)

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.
- The SRS seat cushion airbag on the front passenger seat will not operate if the occupant is not wearing a seat belt.

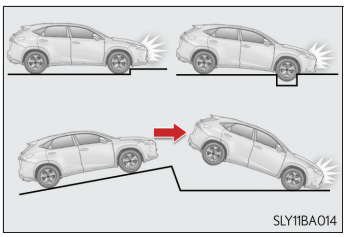
■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags and SRS side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

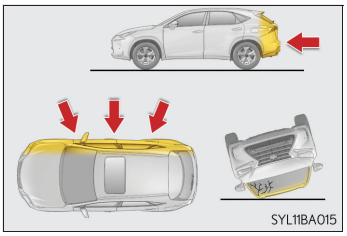
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling


SLY11BA014

■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

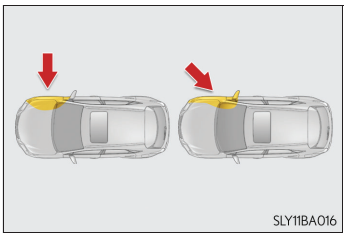
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


SYL11BA015

■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

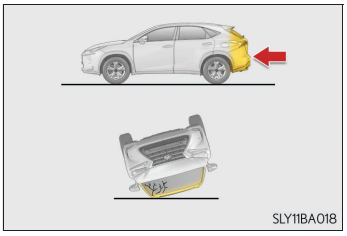
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



The SRS side and curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

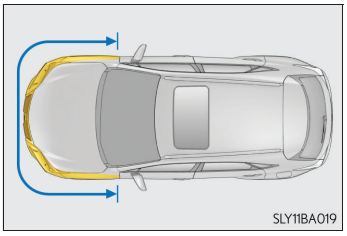
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



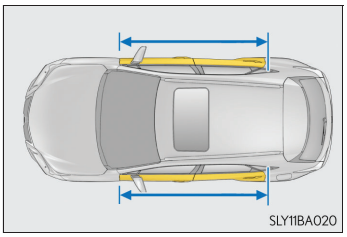
■ **When to contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional**

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

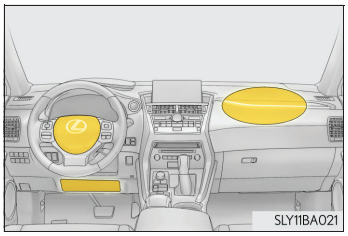
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



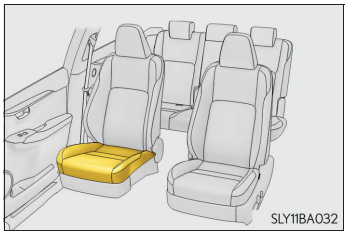
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



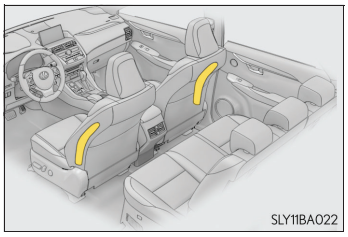
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



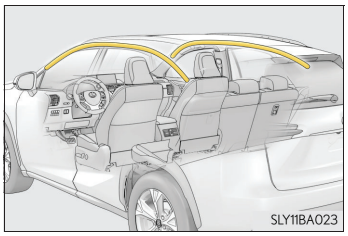
- The front passenger's seat cushion surface is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



Airbag manual on-off system

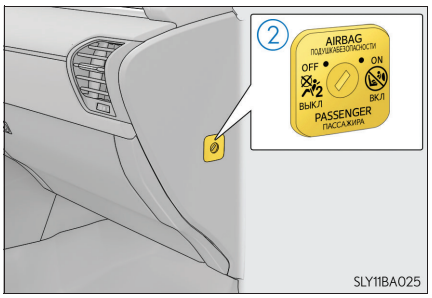
This system deactivates the front passenger airbag and seat cushion airbag and front passenger side airbag.
Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

① "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

The "ON" indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



② Airbag manual on-off switch



Deactivating the airbags for the front passenger

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Neither "ON" nor "OFF" comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install the child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

Safety information for children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally. (→P. 133, 192)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats etc.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof (if equipped) or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

- Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.
- The use of a Lexus genuine child restraint system is recommended, as it is safer to use in this vehicle. Lexus genuine child restraint systems are made specifically for Lexus vehicles. They can be purchased at a Lexus dealer.

Table of contents

Points to remember ..... P. 57
Child restraint system ..... P. 59
When using a child restraint system on a passenger seat ..... P. 62
When using a child restraint system on a rear seat ..... P. 65
Child restraint system installation method
- Fixed with a seat belt ..... P. 66
- Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor ..... P. 72
- Using an anchor bracket (for top strap) ..... P. 80

Points to remember

- Prioritize and observe the warnings, as well as the laws and regulations for child restraint systems.
- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Use a child restraint system suitable for installation in the vehicle which conforms to ECE R44* or ECE R129*.
- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

*: ECE R44 and ECE R129 are U.N. regulations for Child restraint systems.

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.
- Place one child to a child restraint system and then secure the child with the harness of the child restraint system.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P. 66, 72) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

Child restraint system

Install the available child restraint system in vehicle upon confirming the following items.

■ Standards for child restraint systems

Use a child restraint system that conforms to ECE R44*1 or ECE R129*1, 2.

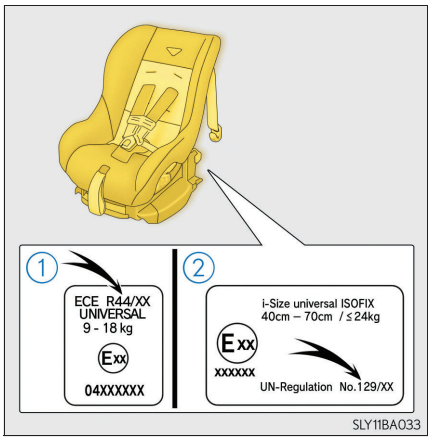
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.

Example of the displayed regulation number

① ECE R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an ECE R44 approval mark is indicated.

② ECE R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an ECE R129 approval mark is indicated.



*1: ECE R44 and ECE R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Mass group (ECE R44 only)

This Mass group table is required when confirming the [Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions]. Confirm in accordance with the [Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions] (→P. 67, 75).

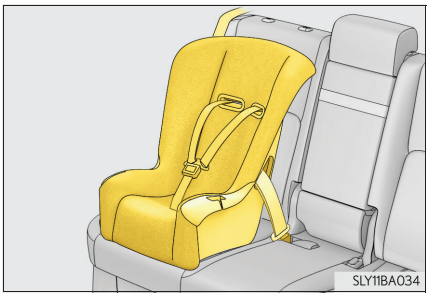
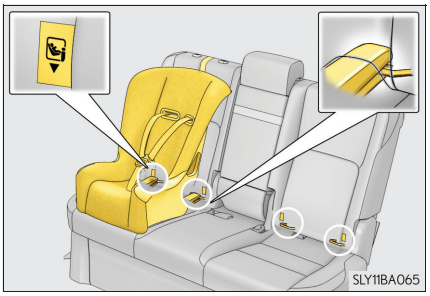
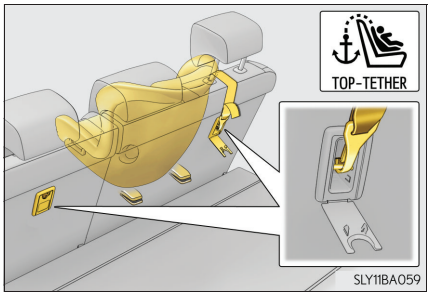
The child restraint system which conforms to the standard of ECE R44 is categorized into 5 groups according to the weight of the child.

Mass group	Child weight	Reference age*
Group 0	until 10 kg (22 lb.)	about 9 months
Group 0+	until 13 kg (28 lb.)	about 1.5 years
Group I	9 - 18 kg (20 - 39 lb.)	from 9 months - about 4 years
Group II	15 - 25 kg (34 - 55 lb.)	from 3 years - about 7 years
Group III	22 - 36 kg (49 - 79 lb.)	from 6 years - about 12 years

*: The age range is a standard approximation. Choose according to the weight of the child.

Types of child restraint system installation methods

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

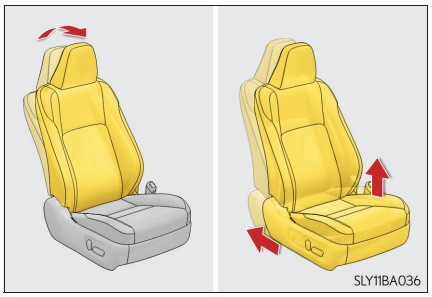
Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment	 SLY11BA034	P. 66
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment	 SLY11BA065	P. 72
Anchor brackets (for top strap) attachment	 SLY11BA059	P. 80

When using a child restraint system on a passenger seat

When installing a child restraint system to a passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to a rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the passenger seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Raise the seatback as much as possible
- Move the seat to the rearmost position
- Raise the seat to the upper most position
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

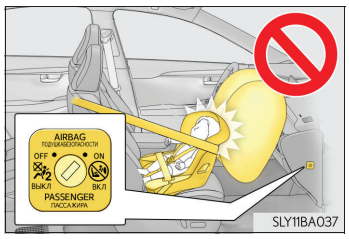


WARNING

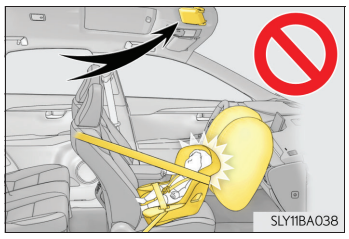
When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following when installing child restraint system to the front passenger seat if it is unavoidable. The front passenger SRS airbag inflates with considerable speed and force that if not observed may lead to death or serious injury to the child.

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 54)
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



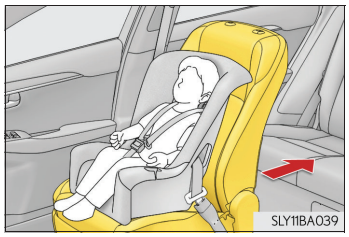
- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat.
  Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.





⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system



- When installing a forward-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat, move the seat to the rearmost position, raise the seat to the upper most position, and then install.
  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.
  If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.

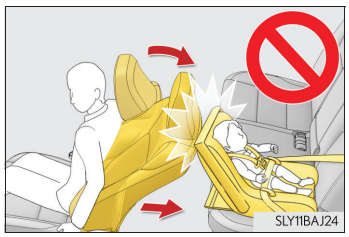
When using a child restraint system on a rear seat

WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.



- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS curtain shield airbag deploys even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS curtain shield airbag inflates, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

■ Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

The child restraint system suitability table (→P. 67), with symbols, displays the types of usable child restraint systems and possible seating position installation for the child restraint system owned by the customer. Also, recommended child restraint systems suited for infants can also be selected. Confirm also in accordance with [Confirming the possible installation seating positions and the Mass Group for the seat belt installation type child restraint systems].

◆ Confirming the possible installation seating positions and the Mass Group for the seat belt installation type child restraint systems.

1 Confirm the corresponding [Mass group] from the weight of the child (→P. 60)

(Ex. 1) When the weight is 12 kg, [Mass group 0+]

(Ex. 2) When the weight is 15 kg, [Mass group I]

2 Confirm and select the appropriate possible seating position for the child restraint system and the corresponding type of system from the [Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions]. (→P. 67)

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (Installed using seat belts)

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

▶ Front passenger seat

Seating position / Mass groups	Airbag manual on-off switch		Recommended Child Restraint Systems
	ON	OFF	
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	X	U*1	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS" "LEXUS MINI"
		L*1	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM"
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	X	U*1	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS" "LEXUS MINI"
		L*1	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM"
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	Rearward-facing – X	U*1	"LEXUS DUO+"
	Forward-facing – UF*1		
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)	UF*1	U*1	"LEXUS KID" "LEXUS KIDFIX"

▶ Rear seat

Seating position / Mass groups	Right-hand	Left-hand	Center	Recommended Child Restraint Systems
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	U*3	U*3	X	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS" "LEXUS MINI"
	L*3	L*3	X	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM"
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	U*3	U*3	X	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS" "LEXUS MINI"
	L*3	L*3	X	"LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM"
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	U*2, 3	U*2, 3	X	"LEXUS DUO+"
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)	U*2, 3	U*2, 3	X	"LEXUS KID" "LEXUS KIDFIX" (Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.)

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

U: Suitable for "universal" category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

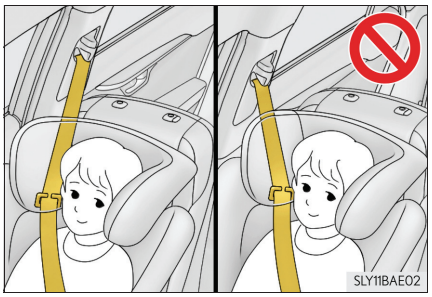
L: Suitable for "specific vehicles", "restricted", or "semi-universal", category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

*1: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. If the passenger seat is equipped with a vertical height adjuster, it must be placed in the upper most position.
Follow these procedures:

- For installing a baby seat with support base
  If the baby seat interferes with the seatback when latching the baby seat into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- For installing a forward-facing child seat
  If there is gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback until good contact is achieved. If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.
- For installing a junior seat
  If the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback to the most comfortable position.

If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



*2: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

*3: When using the rear manual seat:
Adjust the seatback to the 3rd lock position from the most upright position.
When using the rear power seat:
If there is gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback until good contact is achieved.

- When using the left-hand rear seat for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center rear seat.
- Adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.
- Other child restraint systems which are different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer concerned and the seller of those seats.

Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the seatback

▶ When using the front seat or rear power seat

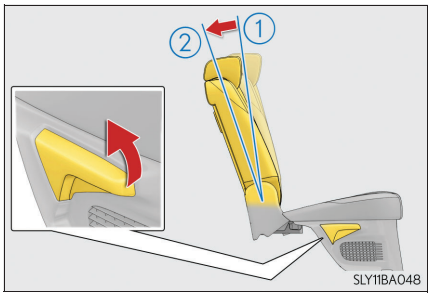
If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback until good contact is achieved.

▶ When using the rear manual seat

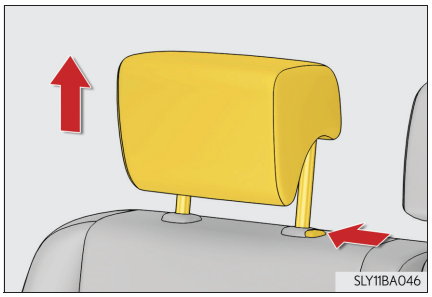
Fold the seatback while pull the lever. Return the seatback (most upright position).
Adjust the seatback to the 3rd lock position.

① Most upright position

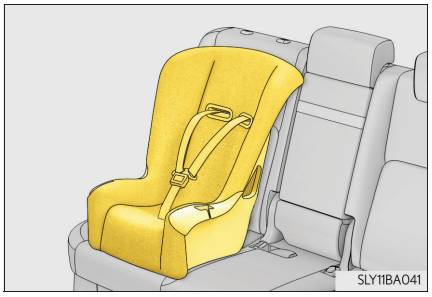
② 3rd lock position



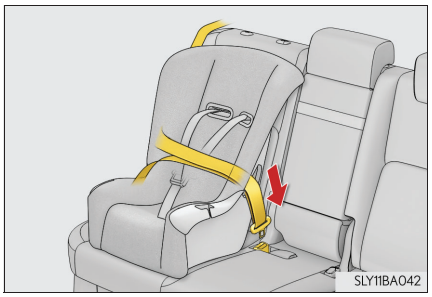
2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. (→P. 183)



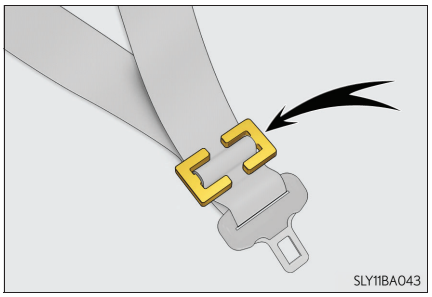
3 Place the child restraint system on the seat.



4 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



5 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



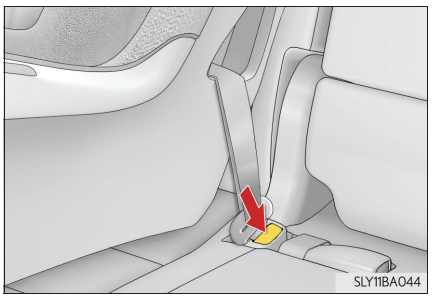
6 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely.

◆ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.



■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional: Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

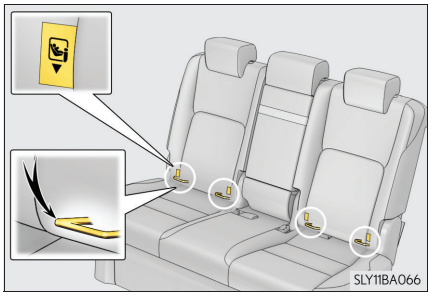
- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When using the left side seat for the child restraint system, do not have the center rear seat occupied. Seat belt function may be impaired, such as being positioned overly high or loose-fitting, which may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor

■ ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Tags displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



■ **Use a child restraint system that conforms to ECE R44* or ECE R129***

Approval marks are displayed on child restraint systems which have conformed. (→P. 59)

*: ECE R44 and ECE R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

■ **Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions**

The child restraint system suitability table (→P. 75), with symbols, displays the types of usable child restraint systems and possible seating position installation for the child restraint system owned by the customer. Also, recommended child restraint systems suited for infants can also be selected.
Confirm in accordance with the listed Size class, Anchor, as well as [Confirming the Mass group and Size class for ECE R44 ISOFIX corresponding child restraint systems].

■ **ECE R44 child restraint system size classes and anchors**

Class Code which represents the child restraint system and the accompanying installation anchor code.

Size class	Anchor	Shape/Size	Directional usage	Child size
A	ISO/F3	Full-Height	Forward-facing	Small child
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-Height	Forward-facing	Small child
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-Height	Forward-facing	Small child
C	ISO/R3	Full-Size	Rearward-facing	Small child
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-Size	Rearward-facing	Small child
E	ISO/R1	–	Rearward-facing	Infant
F	ISO/L1	Carrycot*	Left-facing	Infant
G	ISO/L2	Carrycot*	Right-facing	Infant

*: Carrycot is a seat for babies which can be attached sideways and orientated to allow the infant to sleep. For further details, inquire with the child restraint system manufacturer or dealer.

■ **Confirming the Mass group and Size class for ECE R44 ISOFIX corresponding child restraint systems**

1 Confirm the corresponding [Mass group] from the weight of the child (→P. 60)

(Ex. 1) When the weight is 12 kg, [Mass group 0+]

(Ex. 2) When the weight is 15 kg, [Mass group I]

2 Confirming Size class

Select the Size class corresponding to [Mass group] confirmed in step 1 from the [Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions] (→P. 75)*.

(Ex. 1) When [Mass group 0+], the corresponding size class is [C], [D], [E].

(Ex. 2) When [Mass group I], the corresponding size class is [A], [B], [B1], [C], [D].

*: However, listings that are marked with [X] cannot be selected, despite having the corresponding size class in the suitability table of the [Vehicle ISOFIX position]. Also, select the product designated by [Recommended Child Restraint Systems] (→P. 75), if the listing is marked with [IL].

■ **Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (Installed using ISOFIX [Child restraint system conforms with ECE R44])**

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

▶ Rear seat

Mass groups	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions		Recommended Child Restraint Systems
			Right-hand	Left-hand	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	–
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	–
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	IL	IL	"LEXUS MINI" "LEXUS MIDI"
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	E	ISO/R1	IL	IL	"LEXUS MINI" "LEXUS MIDI"
	D	ISO/R2	IL	IL	
	C	ISO/R3	IL	IL	
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	IL	IL	–
	C	ISO/R3	IL	IL	
	B	ISO/F2	IUF*	IUF*	–
			IL*	IL*	"LEXUS MIDI"
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF*	IUF*	"LEXUS DUO+"
			IL*	IL*	"LEXUS MIDI"
	A	ISO/F3	IUF*	IUF*	–
			IL*	IL*	"LEXUS MIDI"

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the categories for "specific vehicles", "restricted", or "semi-universal", approved for use in this mass group.

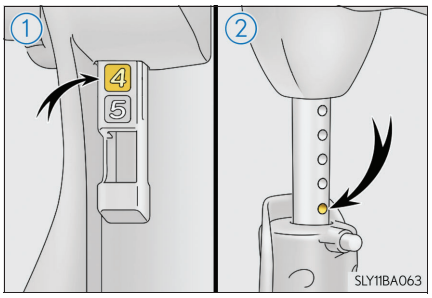
X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

- When using the rear manual seat:
  Adjust the seatback to the 3rd lock position from the most upright position.
  In case of difficulty of locking the ISOFIX, adjust the seatback angle and try again.
- When using the rear power seat:
  If there is gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback until good contact is achieved.
- When using a "LEXUS MINI" or "LEXUS MIDI", adjust the support leg and ISOFIX connectors as follows:

  ① Lock the ISOFIX connectors where numbers 4 can be seen.

  ② Lock the support leg where 5th hole can be seen.



- When using the left-hand rear seat for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center rear seat.
- Adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.
- Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

■ **Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (Installed using ISOFIX [Child restraint system conforms with ECE R129])**

	Seating position			
	Front seat	Rear seat		
	Passenger seat	Right-hand	Left-hand	Center
i-Size child restraint systems	X	i-U	i-U	X

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" child restraint systems forward and rearward facing.

i-UF: Suitable for forward-facing i-Size "universal" child restraint systems only.

X: Seating position not suitable for i-Size "universal" child restraint systems.

- If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
- When using the rear manual seat:
  Adjust the seatback to the 3rd lock position from the most upright position.
  In case of difficulty of locking the ISOFIX, adjust the seatback angle and try again.
- When using the rear power seat:
  If there is gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback until good contact is achieved.
- When using the left-hand rear seat for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center rear seat.
- Adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.

■ **Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX child restraint system)**

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the seatback

▶ When using the rear power seat

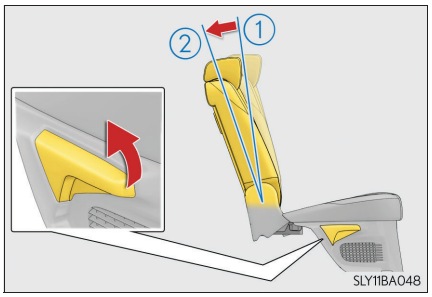
If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback until good contact is achieved.

▶ When using the rear manual seat

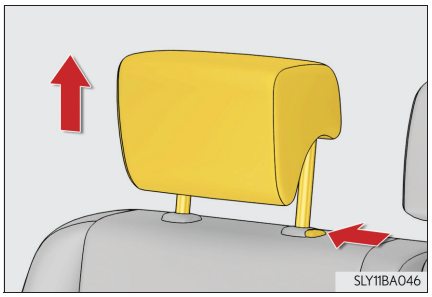
Fold the seatback while pull the lever. Return the seatback (most upright position).
Adjust the seatback to the 3rd lock position.

① Most upright position

② 3rd lock position

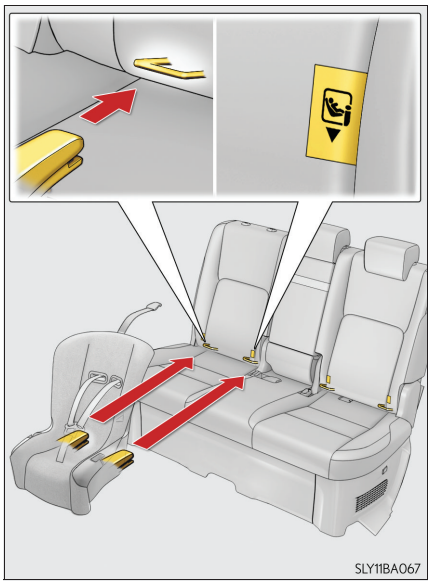


2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. (→P. 183)



3 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely.

⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When using the left side seat for the child restraint system, do not have the center rear seat occupied. Seat belt function may be impaired, such as being positioned overly high or loose-fitting, which may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

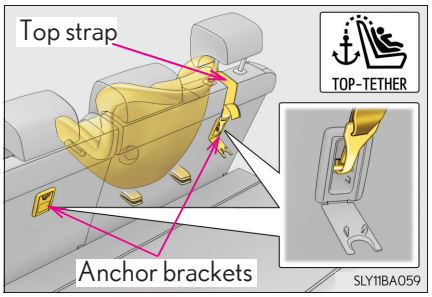


Using an anchor bracket (for top strap)

■ Anchor brackets (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for the outboard rear seat.

Use anchor brackets when fixing the top strap.

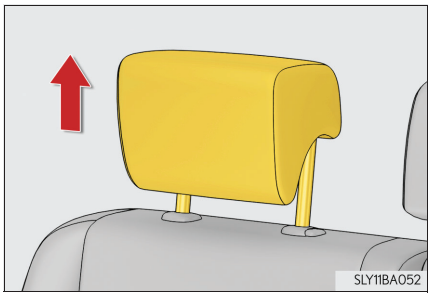


■ Fixing the top strap to the anchor bracket

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

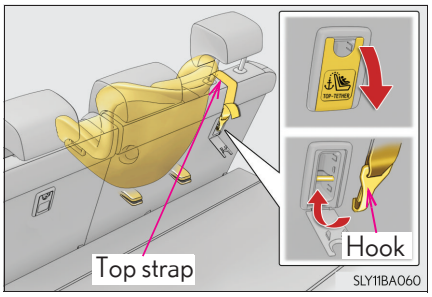
1 Adjust the head restraint to the upmost position.

If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system or top strap installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. (→P. 183)



2 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.
When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath the head restraint.



WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the anchor bracket.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the anchor bracket has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

NOTICE

■ **Anchor brackets (for top strap)**

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body are contained in exhaust gases if inhaled.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases contain harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ **Important points while driving**

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **When parking**

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing.
  If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ **Exhaust pipe**

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Engine immobilizer system

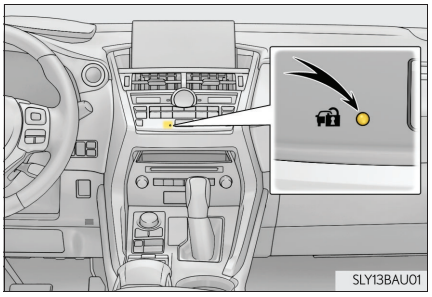
The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

The security indicator flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

■ Certification for the engine immobilizer system

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL :+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: TMIMB-3
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: February 25, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

Hereby, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, declares that this TMIMB-3 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että TMIMB-3 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION dat het toestel TMIMB-3 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil TMIMB-3 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION att denna TMIMB-3 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMIMB-3 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät TMIMB-3 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMIMB-3 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION dichiara che questo TMIMB-3 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION declara que el TMIMB-3 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION declara que este TMIMB-3 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan TMIMB-3 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION seadme TMIMB-3 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a TMIMB-3 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že TMIMB-3 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMIMB-3 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta TMIMB-3 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis TMIMB-3 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION deklarē, ka TMIMB-3 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION oświadcza, że TMIMB-3 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION yfir því að TMIMB-3 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret TMIMB-3 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, декларира, че TMIMB-3 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, declară că aparatul TMIMB-3 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj TMIMB-3 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky TMIMB-3 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je TMIMB-3 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, deklariše da je TMIMB-3 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, bu TMIMB-3 ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

NOTICE

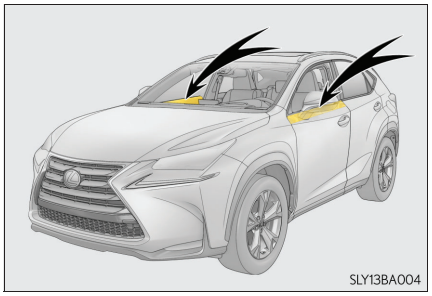
■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Double locking system

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the side window of both front doors.



Setting the double locking system

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

Using the entry function:
Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.
Using the wireless remote control:
Press twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle.
Using the wireless remote control: Press .

WARNING

■ **Double locking system precaution**

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle, because none of the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

Alarm*

The alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

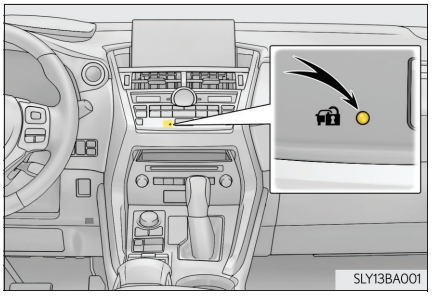
The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- Vehicles with the intrusion sensor: The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.)
- Vehicles with the tilt sensor: The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.
- Vehicles with the glass breakage sensor: Any of the windows are broken.

Setting the alarm system

Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The security indicator changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

*: If equipped

■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ **Items to check before locking the vehicle**

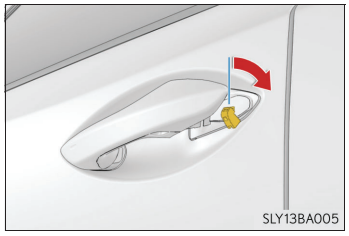
To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof (if equipped) are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

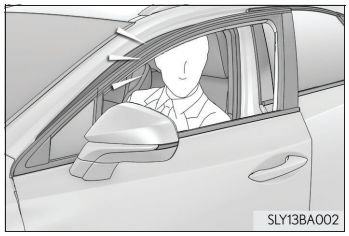
■ **Triggering of the alarm**

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

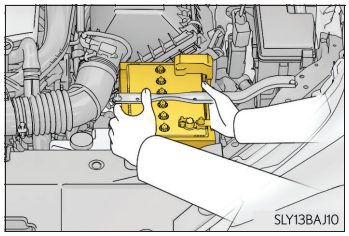
- The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood, or unlocks the vehicle using an inside lock button.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P. 631)



■ **Alarm-operated door lock**

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the battery.

■ Customization

The alarm can be set to deactivate when the mechanical key is used to unlock. (Customizable features: →P. 663)

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (if equipped)

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P. 89)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

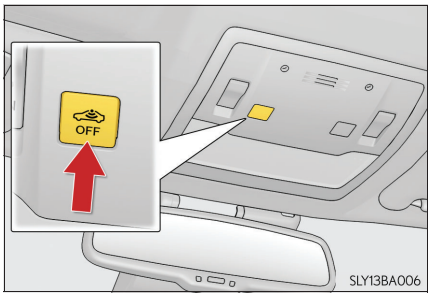
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



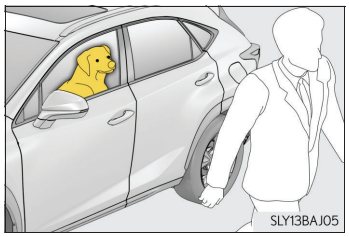
■ **Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor**

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is reactivated.

■ **Intrusion sensor detection considerations**

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

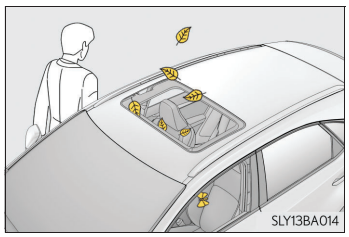
- People or pets are in the vehicle.



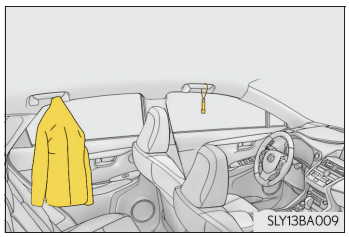
- A window or the moon roof (if equipped) is open.

  In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

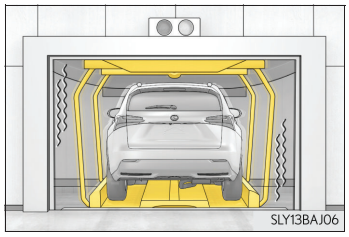
  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle



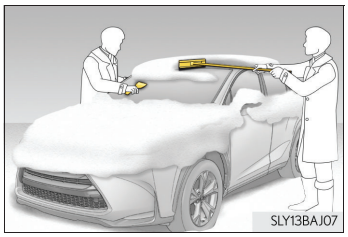
- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

Tilt sensor detection considerations

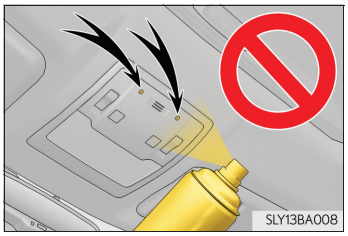
The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from the roof luggage carrier.

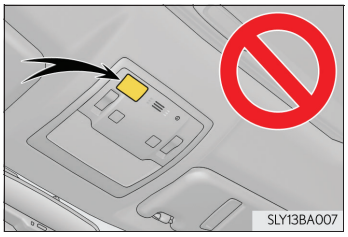
NOTICE

To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly

- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

2. **Instrument cluster**

Warning lights and indicators 96

Gauges and meters 101

Multi-information display 105

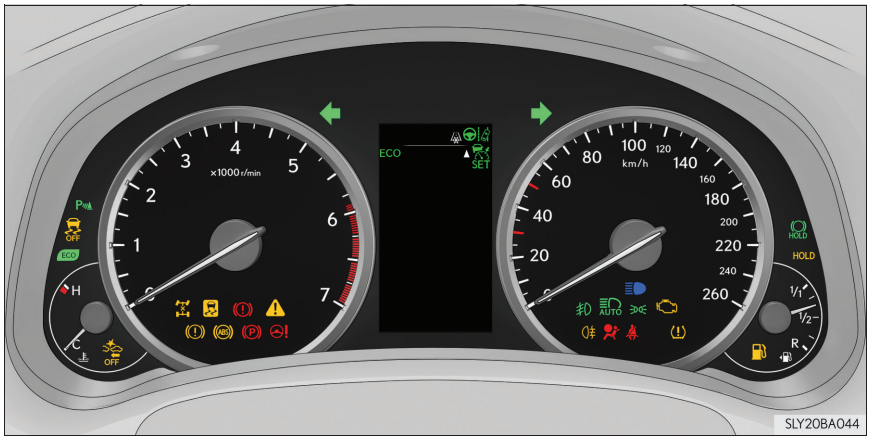
Head-up display 111

Fuel consumption information 118

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.



The units used on the meter may differ depending on the target region.

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems.

*1  Brake system warning light (→P. 584)

*2  Charging system warning light (→P. 584)

*2  Low engine oil pressure warning light (→P. 584)

*2  High coolant temperature warning light (→P. 584)

*1  Brake system warning light (→P. 584)

*1  Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 585)

*1  SRS warning light (→P. 585)

*1  ABS warning light (→P. 585)

*1  Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 585)

*1  Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 585)

*1, 3  (if equipped) PCS warning light (→P. 585)

*1  Slip indicator light (→P. 586)

*1, 3  Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 586)

*3  Parking brake indicator (→P. 586)

 Low fuel level warning light (→P. 586)

 Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P. 586)

*4  Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (→P. 586)

*1  Master warning light (→P. 586)

*1  (if equipped) Tire pressure warning light (→P. 587)

*2  Brake Override System/ Drive-Start Control warning light (→P. 587)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*3: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

*4: This light illuminates on the center panel.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 239)


Tail light indicator (→P. 246)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 246)



(if equipped)
Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 250)


(if equipped)
Front fog light indicator (→P. 254)


Rear fog light indicator (→P. 254)

*1


Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 109)

*8


Eco drive mode indicator (→P. 340)

*8


(if equipped)
"SPORT" indicator (→P. 340)

*8


(if equipped)
"SPORT S" indicator (→P. 340)

*8


(if equipped)
"SPORT S+" indicator (→P. 340)

*8

(if equipped)
Radar cruise control indicator (→P. 271, 286)

*8


(if equipped)
Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P. 271, 286, 300)

*8

(if equipped)
Cruise control indicator (→P. 271, 286, 300)

*8  (if equipped)
LDA indicator (→P. 304, 312)

*8  (if equipped)
Steering control indicator (→P. 312)

 (if equipped)
Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P. 322)

*1, 2 
Slip indicator light (→P. 345)

*1 
VSC OFF indicator (→P. 346)

*1, 3  (if equipped)
PCS warning light (→P. 352)

*8  (if equipped)
Gear Shift Indicator (→P. 229)

*1, 8  (if equipped)
Stop & Start indicator (→P. 266)

*1, 8  (if equipped)
Stop & Start cancel indicator (→P. 266)

*1  (AWD models only)
All-wheel drive lock indicator (→P. 349)


Parking brake indicator (→P. 240, 241)

*1 
Brake hold standby indicator (→P. 243)

*1 
Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 243)

*4, 8 
Low outside temperature indicator (→P. 101)

*5, 6  (if equipped)
BSM outside rear view mirror indicators (→P. 359)

*7 
Security indicator (→P. 83, 89)

*1, 7 
"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator (→P. 54)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to the IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: The light comes on when the system is turned off.

*4: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

*5: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode while the BSM main switch is set to ON.
- When the BSM main switch is set to ON while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds.
If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system.
If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*6: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*7: This light illuminates on the center panel.

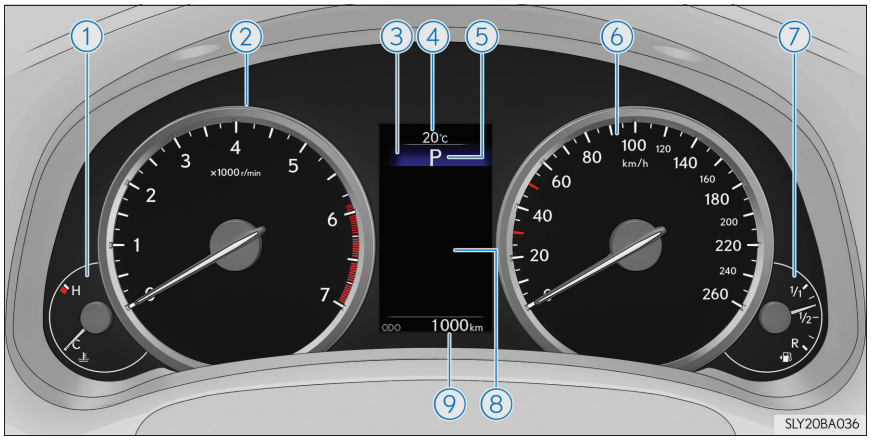
*8: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

WARNING

If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

Gauges and meters



① Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

② Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

③ Background color of drive mode

Background color changes according to the drive mode. (→P. 340)
- Sport mode: Red
- Eco drive mode: Blue

When in Normal mode, the background color is Black.

④ Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

⑤ Shift position and shift range

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 226, 233)

⑥ Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

⑦ Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

⑧ Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P. 105)
Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P. 591)

⑨ Odometer, trip meter and maintenance required information display

Odometer:
Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

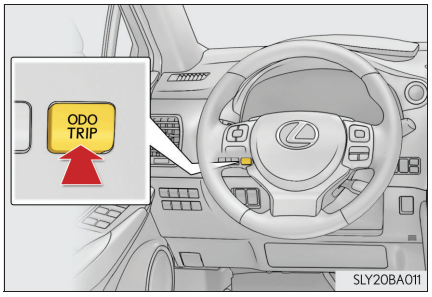
Trip meter:
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Maintenance required information:
Displays the remaining distance until the engine oil should be changed.

- Displays the maintenance required information when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- It can be reset from the "settings display" of the multi-information display. (→P. 105)

Changing the display

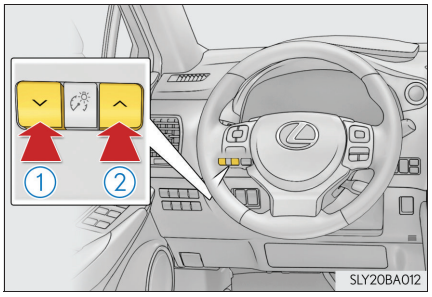
Switches between odometer, trip meter and maintenance required information displays. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.



Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

① Darker
② Brighter



■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Instrument panel brightness adjustment**

The instrument panel brightness levels when the tail lights are on and off can be adjusted individually. However, when the surroundings are bright (daytime, etc.), turning on the tail lights will not change the instrument panel brightness.

■ **Outside temperature display**

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "--" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning.
  Take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Pop-up display**

In some situations, a pop-up display will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display or the odometer/trip meter/maintenance required information screen.
The pop-up display function can be set on/off. (→P. 660)

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ **Customization**

The meter display can be customized on the multi-information display.
(Customizable features: →P. 660)

⚠ WARNING

■ **The information display at low temperatures**

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in personal death or injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H); or "Engine Coolant Temp High" is shown on the multi-information display. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 633)

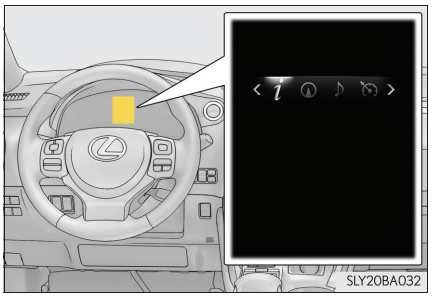
Multi-information display

Display contents

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data.

● Menu icons

Displays the following information when an icon is selected. (→P. 106) Some of the information may be displayed automatically depending on the situation.



Drive information

Select to display various drive data. (→P. 107)

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.
- Route guidance
- Compass display (north-up display/heading-up display)

Audio system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the display using the meter control switches.

Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)/Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)/Cruise control (if equipped)

Select to display the dynamic radar cruise control/dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range/cruise control information, when the system is used. (→P. 271, 286, 300)

The displayed icon changes depending on the system used.

LDA (Lane Departure Alert)/LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (Vehicles without dynamic radar cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, nor cruise control; Vehicles with LDA [Lane Departure Alert] or LDA [Lane Departure Alert with steering control])

If activated, the operational status of the LDA (Lane Departure Alert) or LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) will also be displayed. (→P. 304, 312)

Warning message display

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected. (→P. 591).

Stop & Start System Information (if equipped)

Able to display the operation status of the Stop & Start system.

Settings display

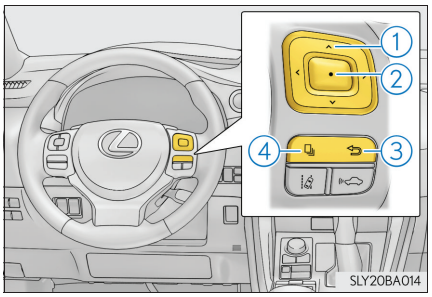
Select to change the meter display settings. (→P. 660)

- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

  Automatically displayed when the system is used. (→P. 322)

Operating the meter control switches

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



① Select an item/change pages

② Enter/Set

③ Return to the previous screen

④ Press:

Displays the screen registered to

When no screen has been registered, the drive information screen will be displayed.

Press and hold:

Registers the currently displayed screen to (→P. 660)

The registration confirmation screen is displayed. If the selected screen cannot be registered, a registration failure message will be shown.

Drive information

Items displayed can be switched by pressing ❮ or ❯ of the meter control switches to select *i* and pressing ^ or v.

■ **Current fuel consumption*1**

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

■ **Average fuel consumption (after reset*2/after start/after refuel)*1**

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset, the engine was started, and the vehicle was refueled, respectively

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ **Average vehicle speed (after reset*2/after start)*1**

Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset and the engine was started, respectively

■ **Elapsed time (after reset*2/after start)*1**

Displays the elapsed time since the function was reset and the engine was started, respectively

■ **Distance (driving range/after start)*1**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining and the distance driven after the engine was started respectively.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
  When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

■ **Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display**

→P. 109

■ **Boost Meter/Oil Temperature Gauge/Oil Pressure Gauge (if equipped)**

Boost Meter:
Displays the boost pressure. The display changes colors when the set pressure is exceeded.

Oil Temperature Gauge:
Displays the temperature of the engine oil. The display flashes when the engine oil exceeds 140°C (284°F).

Oil Pressure Gauge:
Displays the oil pressure for the engine interior. A buzzer sounds and warning message is displayed when the oil pressure gets low. (→P. 591)

Depending on the road conditions, temperature, vehicle speed, etc., the actual vehicle condition on the display screen may differ.
Use the display screen as a reference.

■ **G monitor (if equipped)**

Displays the acceleration forces of the front, back, left and right of the vehicle. Also displays the turning angle of the steering wheel, brake oil pressure, accelerator opening.

- The actual vehicle conditions may differ from those on the display screen, depending on the road conditions, outside temperature, vehicle speed, etc.
  Use the display screen as a reference.
- If a battery terminal is disconnected and reconnected, the steering amount display may be disabled temporarily. After driving the vehicle for a while, the display will be enabled.

■ **Display off**

A blank screen is displayed

*1: Displayed when the item is set in "Drive Info 1" or "Drive Info 2". (→P. 660)

*2: The function can be reset by pressing the  of the meter control switches for longer than 1 second when the item to reset is displayed.
If there is more than one item that can be reset, the item selection screen will appear.

Stop & Start system information (if equipped)

Stop & Start Settings

→P. 266

Idling Stop Time

Displays the current idling stop time (Engine stop time due to the Stop & Start system)

Idling Stop Time (after reset/after start)

Displays the total idling stop time (engine stop time via the Stop & Start system) after resetting and engine startup.

Idling Stop Time fuel savings (after reset/after start)

Displays the fuel savings (reference) during idling stop time after resetting and engine startup.

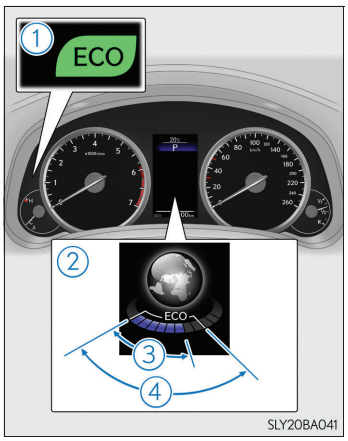
Eco Driving Indicator

① Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

② Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

③ Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate.
When this happens, the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

④ Zone of Eco driving



Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- Neither normal mode nor Eco drive mode is selected. (→P. 340)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Settings of the display and non-display of the Eco Driving Indicator Light can be changed.

■ **Suspension of the settings display**

In the following situations, the settings display using the meter control switches will be suspended.

- When a warning message appears on the multi-information display
- When the vehicle begins to move

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals**

The drive information will be reset.

■ **Liquid crystal display**

→P. 103

⚠ WARNING

■ **Cautions during setting up the display**

As the engine needs to be operating during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **The multi-information display at low temperatures**

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

■ **During setting up the display**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is operating while setting up the display features.

Head-up display*

Summary of functions

The head-up display can be used to project vehicle speed and other information onto the windshield.

① Head-up display

Display brightness will change automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding area.

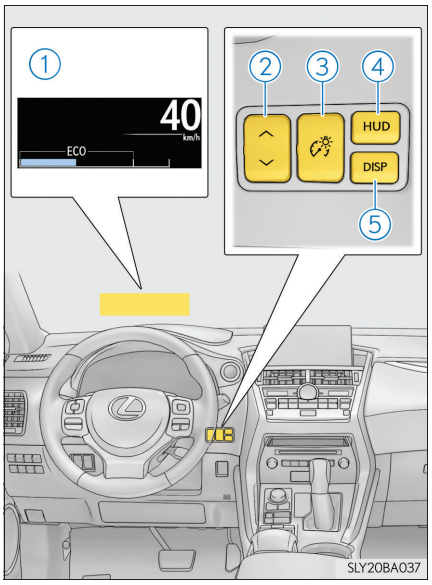
② Display position adjustment switch

③ Display brightness adjustment switch

Display brightness can be adjusted to the desired level.

④ "HUD" button

⑤ "DISP" button



*: If equipped

Head-up display contents

- Vehicle speed
- Eco Driving Indicator (→P. 115, 233)
- Tachometer
- Shift position and shift range

  Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 226)
- Audio display

  Displays audio information for approximately 3 seconds when the audio system is operated
- Route guidance display (vehicles with navigation system) (→P. 115)

  When approaching an intersection while the navigation system is giving route guidance, an arrow will automatically be displayed to indicate the direction of travel.
- Lane departure warning display (LDA [Lane Departure Alert]/LDA [Lane Departure Alert with steering control]) (if equipped) (→P. 305, 313)
- Approach warning display (dynamic radar cruise control) (if equipped) (→P. 276, 292)
- Pre-crash warning message (pre-crash safety system) (if equipped) (→P. 350)

Switching the head-up display

"HUD" button

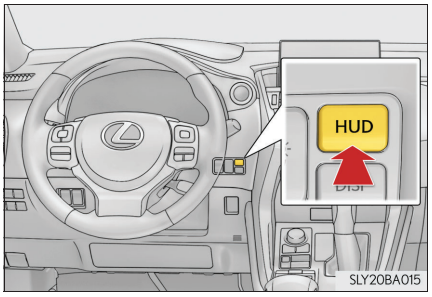
Pressing the button turns the head-up display on/off and changes the vehicle speed display units as follows:

- Type A

OFF → ON (km/h) → OFF

- Type B

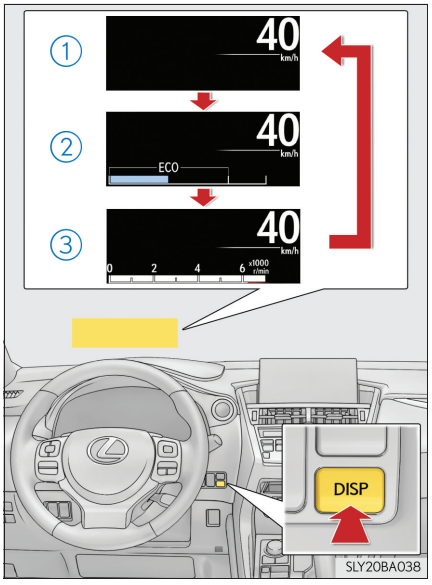
OFF → ON (mph) → ON (km/h) → OFF



"DISP" button

Pressing the button changes the display items (except vehicle speed).

① Off
② Eco Driving Indicator
③ Tachometer

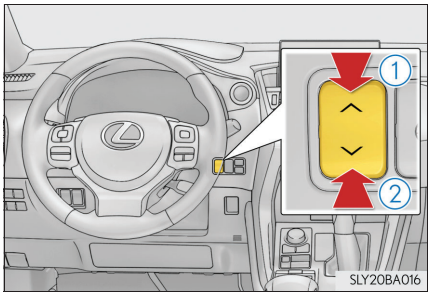


Making the display easier to see

■ Adjusting the display position

① Higher

② Lower

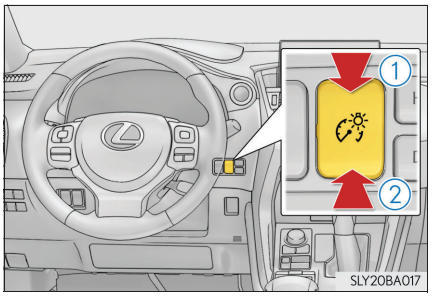


■ Setting the brightness

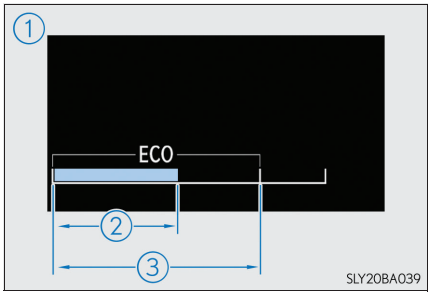
The brightness of the display is automatically adjusted in accordance with the brightness of the surrounding environment. However, the brightness can also be manually adjusted in 9 stages.

① Brighter

② Darker



Eco Driving Indicator



① Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

② Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate.

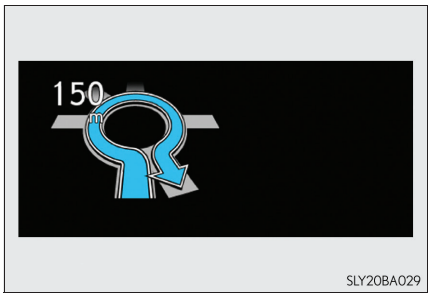
③ Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- Neither normal mode nor Eco drive mode is selected. (→P. 340)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Route guidance display (vehicles with navigation system)

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the direction the vehicle should go is guided by the arrow. When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the route guidance will start and the distance* to the intersection will also be displayed.



*: The distance indication will disappear when the vehicle passes through the intersection.

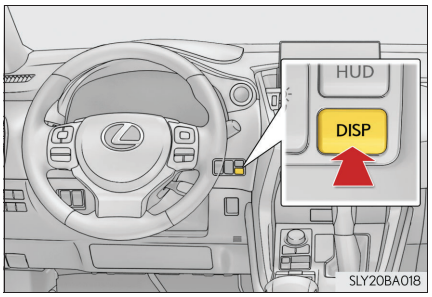
Display customization

The audio display can be shown or hidden.

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.

1 Press and hold the "DISP" button until the screen changes.

Customization can be performed when the head-up display is on.



2 Press the "DISP" button to switch between on and off.

On and off will be switched between each time the button is pressed.

If the button is left alone without being operated for a short time, setting will be finished automatically.

Head-up display

- The head-up display may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses.
  Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.
- When the head-up display is turned off, it will not display anything until it is turned on again.

When the battery is disconnected

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

WARNING

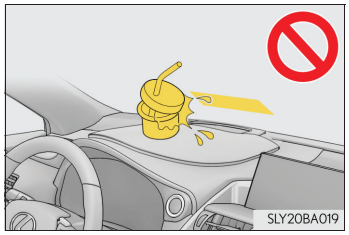
■ **Before using the head-up display**

Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to components**

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.
- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector.
  Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector.
  Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.



Fuel consumption information

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the navigation system (if equipped)/Lexus Display Audio system (if equipped).

① Navigation system screen/Lexus Display Audio screen (if equipped)

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

② "MENU" button

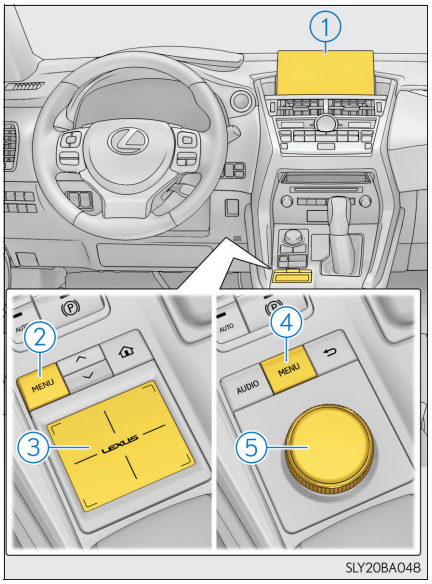
③ Touchpad*

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

④ "MENU" button

⑤ Lexus Display Audio controller (→P. 382)

*: For use of the Remote Touch, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

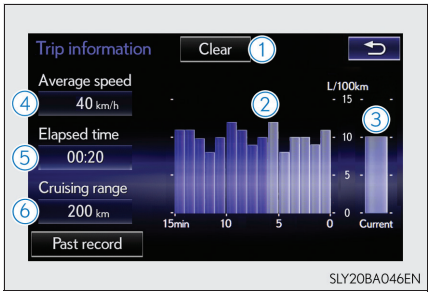


Trip information

▶ Navigation system screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, and then select  on the "Menu" screen.

If the "Past record" screen is displayed, select "Trip information".



① Resetting the consumption data

② Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

③ Current fuel consumption

④ Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

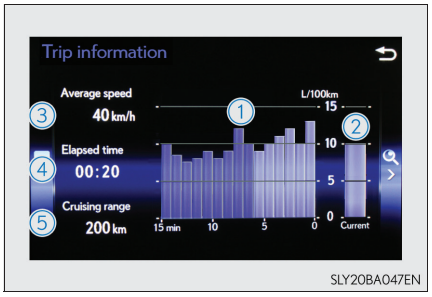
⑤ Displays the elapsed time since the engine was started.

⑥ Cruising range (→P. 122)

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen

Press the “MENU” button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, and then select  on the “MENU” screen.

If the “Trip information” screen does not appear, move the controller to the right and select “Trip information”.



① Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

② Current fuel consumption

③ Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

④ Displays the elapsed time since the engine was started.

⑤ Cruising range (→P. 122)

Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

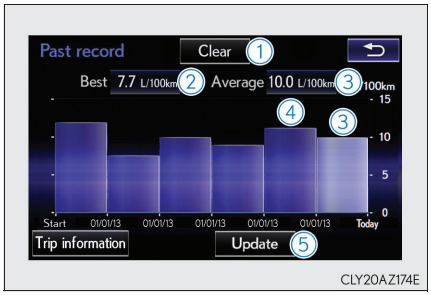
Past record

▶ Navigation system screen

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, and then select on the “Menu” screen.

If the “Trip information” screen is displayed, select “Past record”.

① Resetting the past record data
② Best recorded fuel consumption
③ Average fuel consumption
④ Previous fuel consumption record
⑤ Updating the average fuel consumption data



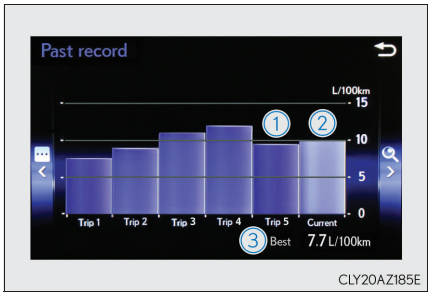
CLY20AZ174E

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen

Press the “MENU” button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, and then select on the “MENU” screen.

If the “Past record” screen does not appear, move the controller to the right and select “Past record”.

① Previous fuel consumption record
② Current fuel consumption
③ Best recorded fuel consumption



CLY20AZ185E

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ **Updating the past record data**

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Update the average fuel consumption by selecting “Update” to measure the current fuel consumption again.

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

Update the average fuel consumption by moving the controller to the left and select “Update” to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting “Clear”.

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by moving the controller to the left and select “Clear”.

■ **Cruising range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

Operation of each component

3

3-1. Key information
Keys 124
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 130
Back door 136
Smart entry & start system 148
3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 169
Rear seats 171
Driving position memory 178
Head restraints 182
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 185
Inside rear view mirror 187
Outside rear view mirrors 189
3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 192
Moon roof 195
Electronic sunshade 199

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.

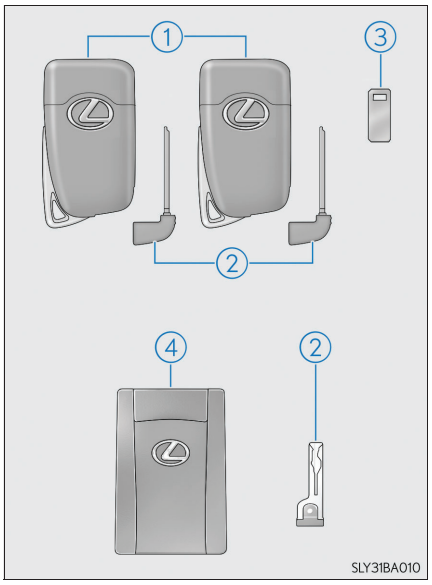
① Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (if equipped) (→P. 148)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

② Mechanical keys

③ Key number plate

④ Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 148)



Wireless remote control

① Locks all the doors (→P. 130)

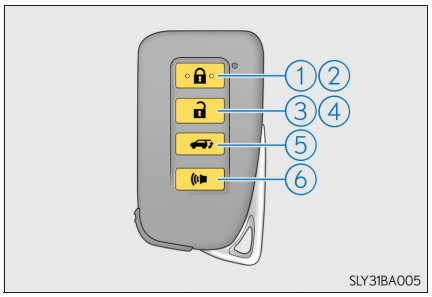
② Closes the windows and moon roof*1, 2 (→P. 130)

③ Unlocks all the doors (→P. 130)

④ Opens the windows and moon roof*1, 2 (→P. 130)

⑤ Opens and closes the power back door*1 (→P. 136)

⑥ Sounds the alarm*1 (→P. 125)



*1: If equipped

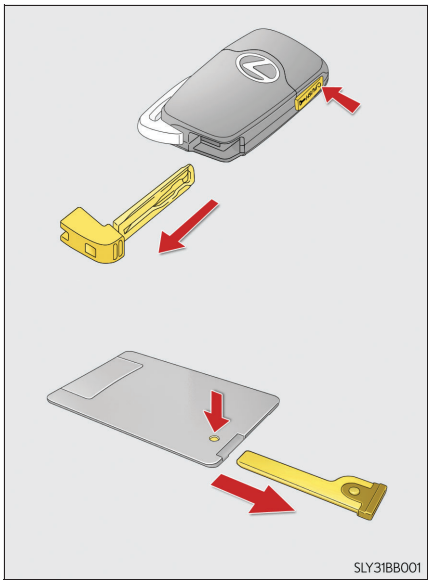
*2: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

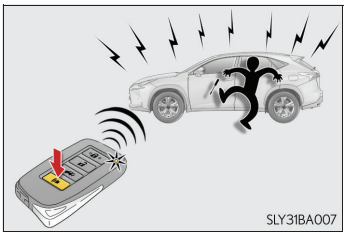
After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 625)



Panic mode (if equipped)

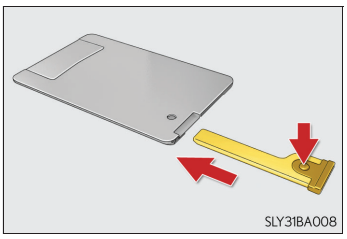
When is pressed for longer than about 1 second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

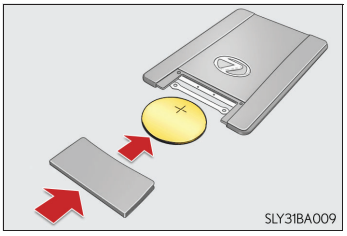


■ **Card key (if equipped)**

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the release button using a pen tip, etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin, etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



- The card key is not waterproof.

■ **When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant**

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 487)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ **If you lose your mechanical keys**

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

■ **When riding in an aircraft**

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag, etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops.
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 554)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Induction cookers
  - Table lamps

■ **Replacing the battery**

→P. 554

■ **Confirmation of the registered key number**

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

■ **If a wrong key is used**

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer, etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key, to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that were provided with your vehicle.

NOTICE

■ Handling the card key

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc., is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery.
  Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

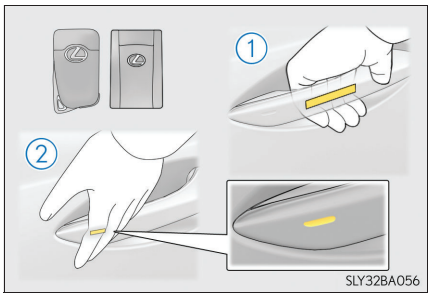
Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

Locking and unlocking the doors from the outside

◆ Smart entry & start system (vehicles with entry function)

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



① Grip the door handle to unlock the doors.*

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

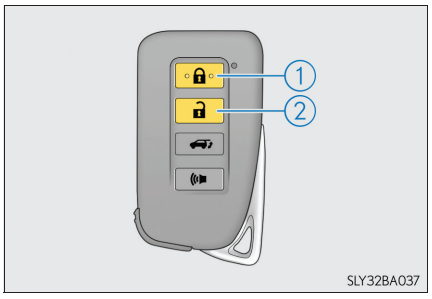
The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed. (→P. 134, 658)

② Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the surface of the door handle) to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

◆ Wireless remote control



① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

Press and hold to close the windows and moon roof.*1, 2

② Unlocks all the doors

Press and hold to open the windows and moon roof.*1, 2

*1: If equipped

*2: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Operation signals**

Doors:
The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows:
A buzzer sounds to indicate that all windows are opening/closing.

■ **Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

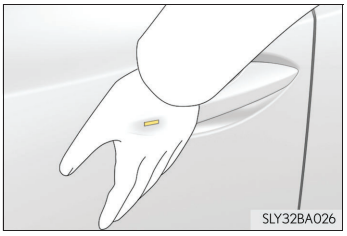
■ **Welcome light illumination control**

The front position, tail and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the "AUTO" position.

■ **When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle (vehicles with entry function)**

When the door cannot be locked even if the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle is touched by a finger, touch the lock sensor with the palm.

When gloves are being worn, remove the gloves.



■ **Door lock buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Setting the alarm (if equipped)**

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 89)

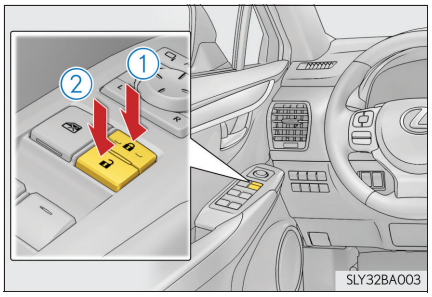
■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

- Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P. 625)
- Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P. 554)

Locking and unlocking the doors from the inside

Door lock switch

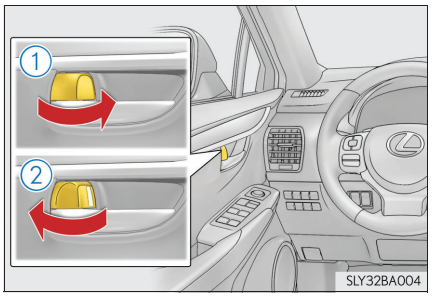
① Locks all the doors
② Unlocks all the doors



Inside lock buttons

① Locks the door
② Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.



Locking the doors from the outside without a key

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.
2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

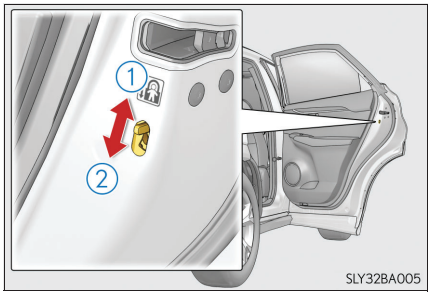
Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

① Unlock

② Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.



Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P. 656.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when shifting the shift lever out of P.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened.

■ **Switching the door unlock function**

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (if equipped) (→P. 91)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
 (Left-hand drive vehicles)  (Right-hand drive vehicles)	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once
	Holding any of the passenger door handles unlocks all the doors.	
	Holding a door handle unlocks all the doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once

For vehicles with an alarm: To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 89)

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 625)

■ **Open door warning buzzer**

If the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph), the master warning light flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that door(s) or the hood in not fully closed.
The open door(s) or hood is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control**

→P. 150

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 657)

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.

  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

■ **When opening or closing a door**

Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or moon roof (if equipped)**

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened/closed by the following procedures.

Locking and unlocking the back door

◆ Smart entry & start system (vehicles with entry function)

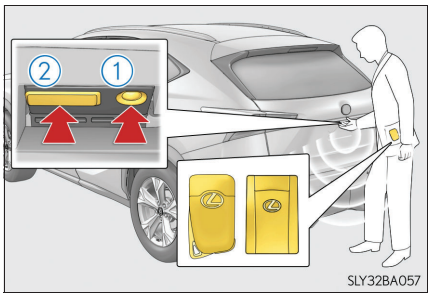
Carry the electronic key to enable this function.

① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.



◆ Wireless remote control

→P. 124

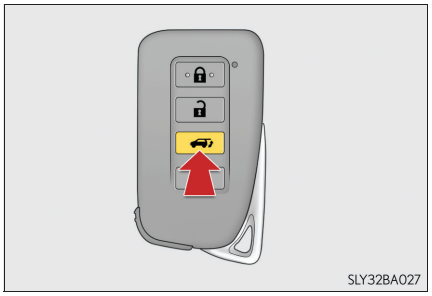
◆ Door lock switch

→P. 132

Opening/closing the back door with the wireless remote control (vehicles with a power back door)

Press the switch for 1 second.

It can be made to operate when unlocking the back door.



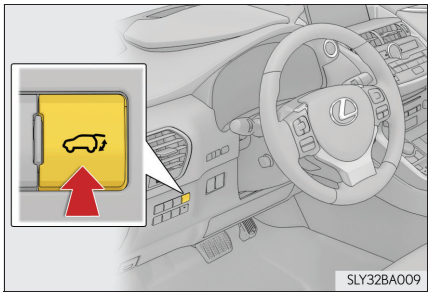
Opening/closing the back door from inside the vehicle (vehicles with a power back door)

Press the switch for 1 second.

A buzzer sounds and the back door automatically opens and closes.

Pressing the switch while the back door is opening/closing stops the operation.

When the switch is pressed again for 1 second during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.



Opening the back door from outside the vehicle

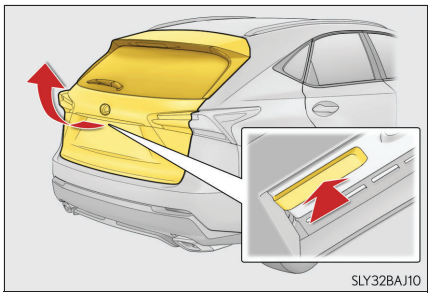
■ Back door opener

▶ Vehicles without a power back door

Raise the back door while pressing up the back door opener switch.

▶ Vehicles with a power back door

Unlock the back door and press the back door opener switch.



A buzzer sounds and the back door automatically opens.

Pressing the switch while the back door is opening stops the operation.

■ Wireless remote control (vehicles with a power back door)

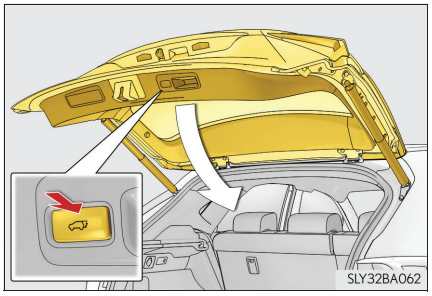
→P. 136

Closing the back door from outside the vehicle (vehicles with a power back door)

Pressing the switch.

A buzzer sounds and the back door automatically closes.

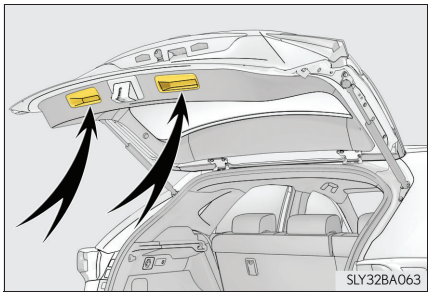
Pressing the switch while the back door is closing stops the operation.
Pressing the switch again will reverse the operation.



When closing the back door

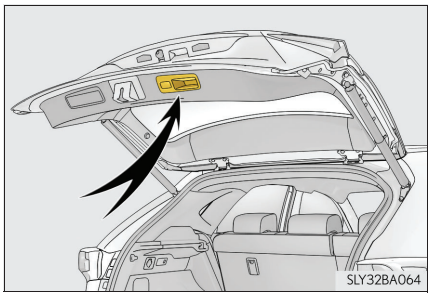
- Vehicles without a power back door

Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.



- Vehicles with a power back door

Lower the back door using the back door handle, then a buzzer sounds and the back door automatically closes.



Canceling the power back door system (vehicles with a power back door)

ON (operate) and OFF (stop) can be switched between by the "settings display" (→P. 105) of the multi-information display.

1 Pressing ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches (→P. 106), selects .

2 ON and OFF will be switched over with presses of on the meter control switch.

When OFF is selected and the operations of the power back door is made to stop, select and turn ON from the "settings display" of multi-information display, and unless it is put in a system operating state, the operation of the power back door will not return. (No return in the engine switch operation)

Adjusting the open position of the back door (vehicles with a power back door)

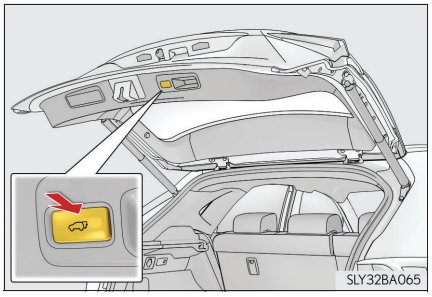
The open position of the power back door can be adjusted.

▶ When setting with the switch

1 Stop the back door in the desirable position. (→P. 137, 138)

2 Press and hold the power back door switch on the back door for 2 seconds.

- When the settings are completed, the buzzer sounds 4 times.
- When opening the back door the next time, the back door will stop at that position.



▶ When setting by the navigation system

The opening position can be set with the navigation system. (→P. 664)

Priority for the stop position is given to the last position set by either the switch or with navigation system.

To return the adjusted open position to the initial settings position. (→P. 143)

■ **Power back door operating conditions (vehicles with a power back door)**

With the power back door operations set to ON, it can automatically open and close for the following conditions:

- When the back door is unlocked
- When the engine switch is in IGNITON ON mode during opening operations, the back door unlocks and operates for any of the following conditions:
  - Parking brake is engaged
  - The brake pedal is depressed
  - The shift lever is in P

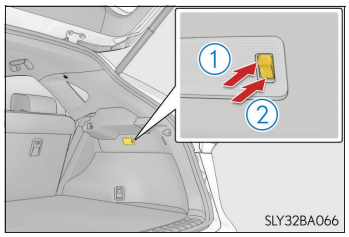
■ **Luggage compartment light**

The luggage compartment light turns on when the back door is opened with the luggage compartment light switch on.

① Off

② On

When the engine switch is turned off, the light will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

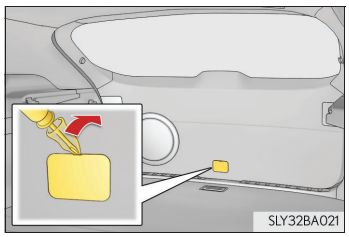


■ **If the back door opener is inoperative (vehicles without a power back door)**

The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

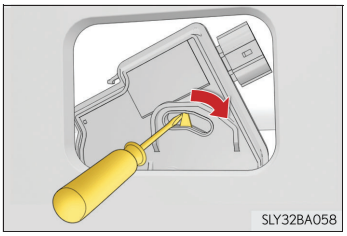
1 Remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and the cover as shown in the illustration.



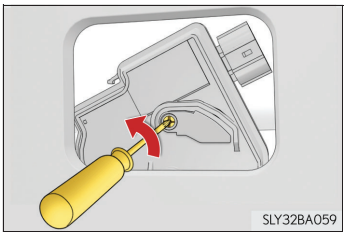
▶ Type A

2 Move the lever.

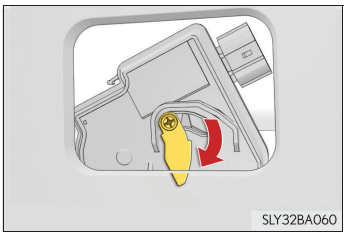


▶ Type B

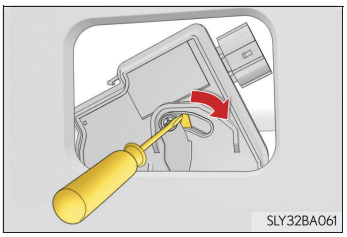
2 Loosen the bolt.



3 Turn the cover.



4 Move the lever.

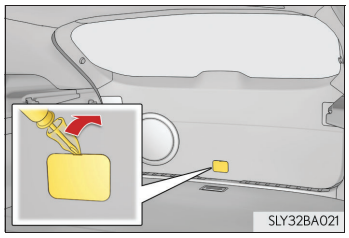


■ **If the back door opener is inoperative (vehicles with a power back door)**

The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

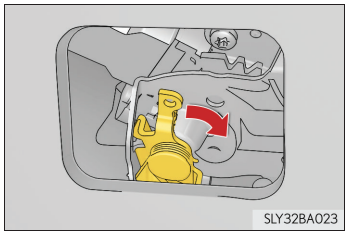
1 Remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and the cover as shown in the illustration.

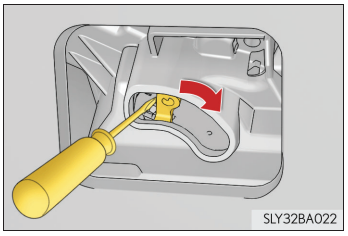


2 Move the lever.

▶ Type A



▶ Type B



■ **Back door closer (vehicles with a power back door)**

In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.
Whatever the state of the engine switch, the back door closer operates.

■ **Operation of the power back door (vehicles with a power back door)**

- A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash twice to indicate that the back door is opening/closing.
- When the power back door operations are OFF, the power back door does not operate but it can be opened and closed by hand.
- When the power back door automatically opens, if an abnormality due to people or objects is detected, operation will stop.

■ **Back door reserve lock function (vehicles with a power back door)**

This function is a function which reserves locking of all doors, beforehand, when the back door is open. When the follow is done, all the doors except the back door are locked and then back door will also be locked at the same time it is closed.

1 Close all doors, except the back door.

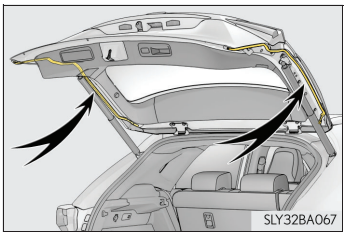
2 Push the wireless lock button during the automatic closing operation of the back door.

■ **When reconnecting the battery (vehicles with a power back door)**

To enable the power back door to operate properly, close the back door manually.

Jam protection function (vehicles with a power back door)

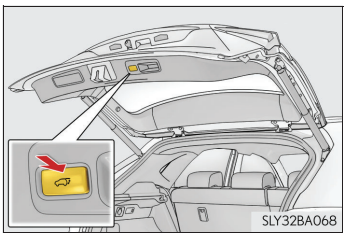
Sensors are installed in the right and left sides of the power back door. When the door is automatically closing and the sensors are pushed due to an object being clamped, etc., the jam protection function operates.
From that position the door automatically moves a little in the opposite direction and then the function stops.



Returning the back door automatic stop position to the initial settings (vehicles with a power back door)

Press and hold the power back door switch on the back door for 7 seconds.

After the buzzer sounds 4 times, it sounds twice more. When the power back door does the opening operation the next time, the door will open to the initial settings position.



Customization (vehicles with a power back door)

Settings (e.g. back door automatic open and stop position) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 664)

WARNING

Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit nearby objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

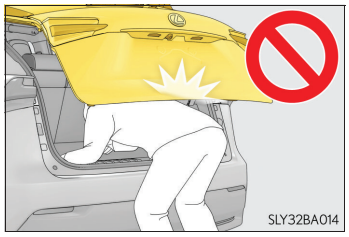
- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

⚠ WARNING

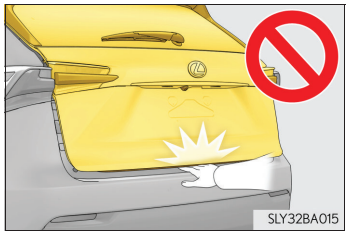
■ Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- Vehicles without a power back door: The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secured before using the luggage compartment.



- Vehicles with a power back door: The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully, while on a steep incline.
  Make sure that the back door is secured before using the luggage compartment.
- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers, etc., from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.



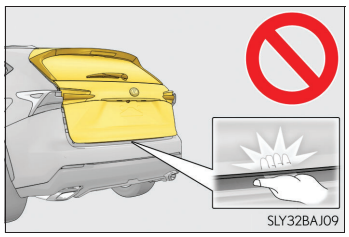
- Do not pull on the back door damper stay (vehicles without a power back door) (→P. 146) or back door spindle (vehicles with a power back door) (→P. 147) to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay (vehicles without a power back door) or back door spindle (vehicles with a power back door).
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay (vehicles without a power back door) or back door spindle (vehicles with a power back door) to break, causing an accident.

WARNING

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

■ Back door closer (vehicles with a power back door)

- In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is canceled.

■ Power back door (if equipped)

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is canceled while the back door is operating during automatic operation, the back door stops operating. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close suddenly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the back door may move abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may suddenly shut after it opens automatically. Make sure the back door is secured.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped back door may suddenly open or close, causing an accident.
  - When the back door contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation

WARNING

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, the power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may move slightly in the closing direction after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

Jam protection function (vehicles with a power back door)

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

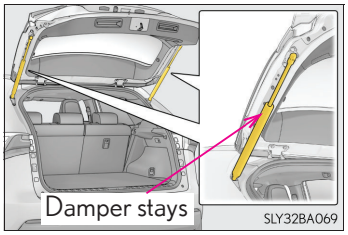
NOTICE

Back door damper stays (vehicles without a power back door)

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.

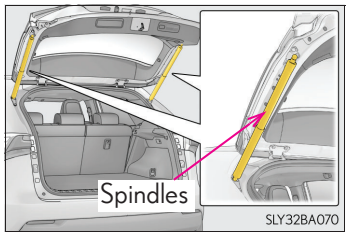
- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.



NOTICE

■ **Back door spindles (vehicles with a power back door)**

The back door is equipped with spindles that hold the back door in place.
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door spindle, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the spindle rod.
- Do not touch the spindle rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach heavy accessories to the back door. When attaching, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not place your hand on the spindle or apply lateral forces to it.

■ **To prevent back door closer malfunction (vehicles with a power back door)**

Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating.

■ **To prevent damage to the power back door (if equipped)**

- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not close automatically.

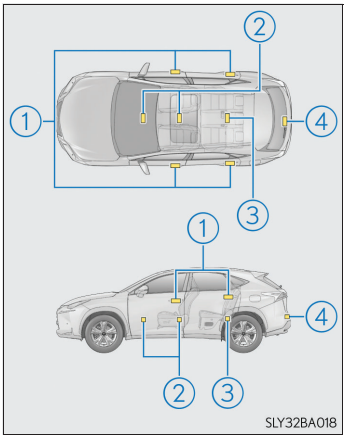
Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (vehicles with entry function) (→P. 130)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (vehicles with entry function) (→P. 136)
- Starts and stops the engine (→P. 221)

Antenna location

① Antennas outside the cabin (vehicles with entry function)
② Antennas inside the cabin
③ Antenna inside the luggage compartment
④ Antenna outside the luggage compartment (vehicles with entry function)



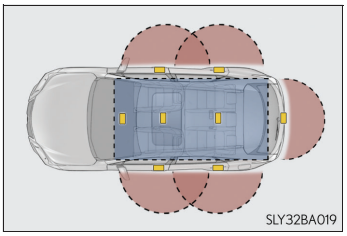
■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**

When locking or unlocking the doors (vehicles with entry function)

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.



■ **Alarms and warning messages**

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning message on the multi-information display. (→P. 591)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds (vehicles with entry function)	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm pings repeatedly	The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (The driver's door was opened when the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.

■ **When "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Battery-saving function (vehicles with entry function)**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

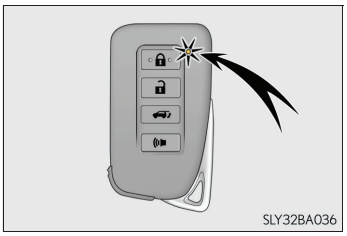
- In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
  - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
  - The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ Electronic Key battery-Saving Function

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system use weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly.
(Ways of coping: →P. 625)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage room, floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 150)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**

- Vehicles with entry function: To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 658)

■ **To operate the system properly**

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not operate.)

■ **If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 625)
- Starting the engine: →P. 627

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 658)

■ **If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting**

- Locking and unlocking the doors:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P. 130, 625)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P. 627
- Stopping the engine: →P. 222

■ Certification for the smart entry & start system

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL.:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF12-4
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: October 3, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

Hereby, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, declares that this TMLF12-4 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että TMLF12-4 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION dat het toestel TMLF12-4 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil TMLF12-4 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION att denna TMLF12-4 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF12-4 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät TMLF12-4 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMLF12-4 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION dichiara che questo TMLF12-4 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION declara que el TMLF12-4 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION declara que este TMLF12-4 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan TMLF12-4 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION seadme TMLF12-4 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF12-4 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že TMLF12-4 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF12-4 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta TMLF12-4 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF12-4 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION deklarē, ka TMLF12-4 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION oświadcza, że TMLF12-4 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION yfir því að TMLF12-4 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF12-4 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, декларира, че TMLF12-4 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, declară că aparatul TMLF12-4 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF12-4 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky TMLF12-4 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je TMLF12-4 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, deklariše da je TMLF12-4 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION, bu TMLF12-4 ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

Hereby, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., declares that this BG1EW is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directives 1999/5/EC.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että BG1EW tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. dat het toestel BG1EW in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil BG1EW est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. att denna BG1EW står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BG1EW overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät BG1EW in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BG1EW ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo BG1EW è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. declara que el BG1EW cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. declara que este BG1EW está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan BG1EW jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. seadme BG1EW vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a BG1EW megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že BG1EW spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BG1EW je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta BG1EW v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis BG1EW atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka BG1EW atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że BG1EW jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. yfir því að BG1EW er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret BG1EW er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., декларира, че BG1EW е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul BG1EW este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj BG1EW je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., deklaroj qe ky BG1EW eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je BG1EW u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., deklariše da je BG1EW u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., bu BG1EW ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

Hereby, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., declares that this BA2KP is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directives 1999/5/EC.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että BA2KP tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. dat het toestel BA2KP in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil BA2KP est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. att denna BA2KP står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BA2KP overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät BA2KP in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BA2KP ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo BA2KP è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. declara que el BA2KP cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. declara que este BA2KP está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan BA2KP jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. seadme BA2KP vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a BA2KP megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že BA2KP spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BA2KP je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta BA2KP v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis BA2KP atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka BA2KP atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że BA2KP jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. yfir því að BA2KP er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret BA2KP er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., декларира, че BA2KP е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul BA2KP este în conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj BA2KP je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., deklaroj qe ky BA2KP eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je BA2KP u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., deklariše da je BA2KP u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., bu BA2KP ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

Hereby, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., declares that this BC2UM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directives 1999/5/EC.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että BC2UM tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. dat het toestel BC2UM in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil BC2UM est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. att denna BC2UM står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BC2UM overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät BC2UM in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BC2UM ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo BC2UM è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. declara que el BC2UM cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. declara que este BC2UM está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan BC2UM jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. seadme BC2UM vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a BC2UM megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že BC2UM spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BC2UM je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta BC2UM v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis BC2UM atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka BC2UM atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że BC2UM jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. yfir því að BC2UM er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret BC2UM er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., декларира, че BC2UM е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul BC2UM este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj BC2UM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., deklaroj qe ky BC2UM eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je BC2UM u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., deklariše da je BC2UM u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile TOKAI RIKA CO.,LTD., bu BC2UM ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

CE

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14CCB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 14CCB tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 14CCB in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 14CCB est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 14CCB står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 14CCB overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 14CCB in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 14CCB ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 14CCB è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 14CCB cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 14CCB está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 14CCB jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 14CCB vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 14CCB megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 14CCB spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 14CCB je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja; da je ta 14CCB v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 14CCB atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 14CCB atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 14CCB jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 14CCB er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 14CCB er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 14CCB е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 14CCB este în conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 14CCB je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 14CCB u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 14CCB u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky 14CCB eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 148)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

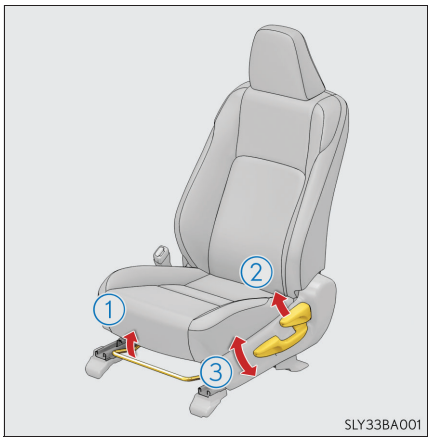
Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details on disabling the entry function.

Front seats

Adjustment procedure

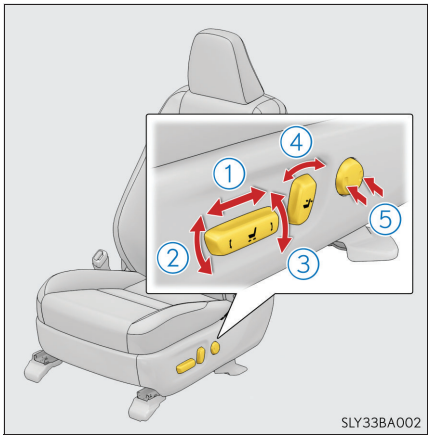
▶ Manual seat

① Seat position adjustment lever
② Seatback angle adjustment lever
③ Vertical height adjustment lever



▶ Power seat

① Seat position adjustment switch
② Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch
③ Vertical height adjustment switch
④ Seatback angle adjustment switch
⑤ Lumbar support adjustment switch (for driver's side)



■ **Power easy access system**

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 178)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When adjusting the seat position**

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

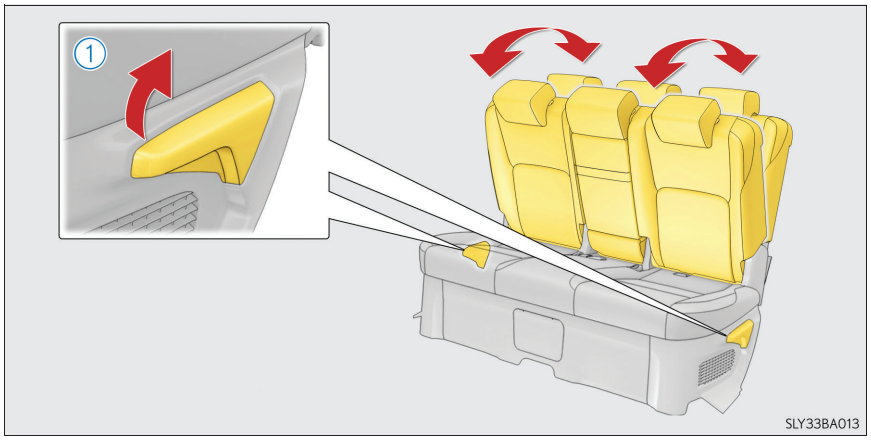
■ **Seat adjustment**

- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
  Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- After adjusting the seat, make sure that the seat is locked in position. (manual seat)

Rear seats

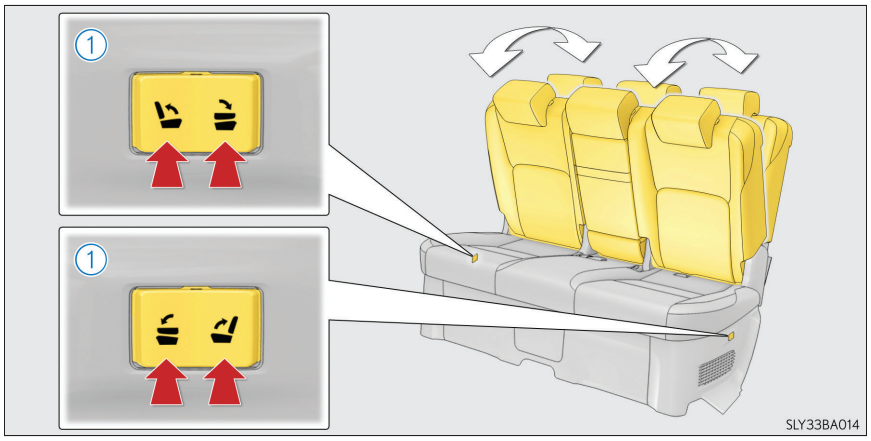
Adjustment procedure

▶ Manual seat



① Reclining adjustment

▶ Power seat



① Reclining adjustment (only rear seat switch)

Folding down the rear seatbacks

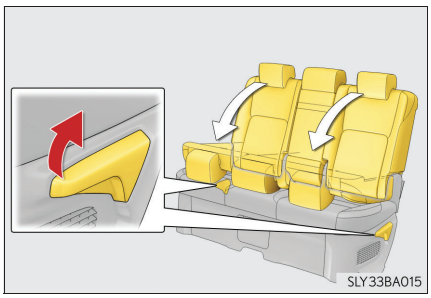
■ Before folding down the rear seatbacks

1 Stow the rear center seat belt and seat belt buckles. (→P. 40)

2 Lower the head restraint of the rear seat. (→P. 182)

■ Folding down rear seatbacks (manual seat)

Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever and fold down the seatback.



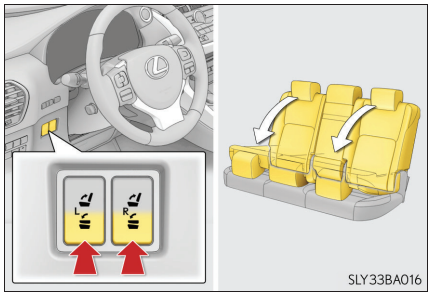
■ Folding down rear seatbacks (power seat)

Press and hold the switch to fold down the seatback.

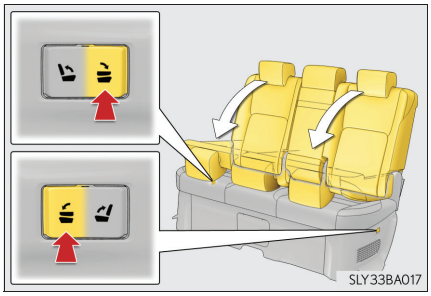
The buzzer sounds and operations start. The buzzer sounds again when the operation is complete.

To stop the operation of a seat partway, press either seat operation switch for that seat, once more. Switches for that seat in other locations can be used to stop the operations. (buzzer sounds depending on stopping position of the seatback)

▶ Instrument panel switch

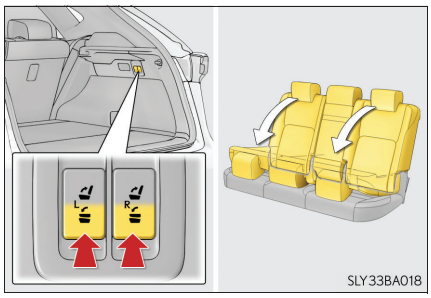


▶ Rear seat switch



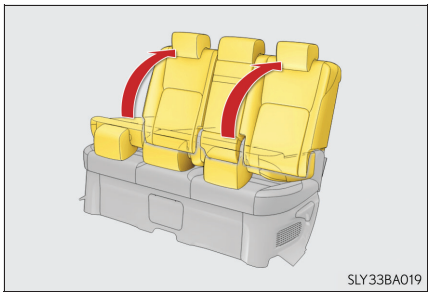
When the seatback is collapsed to the rear, put the seatback in the most upright position and press the switch once again.

▶ Luggage room switch



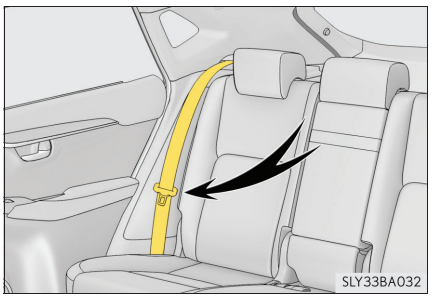
■ Returning the rear seatbacks (manual seat)

1 Raise the rear seatback until it locks.



2 Check that the plate for the seat belt is on the front side of the seat.

When using the seat belt for the rear center seat (→P. 39)



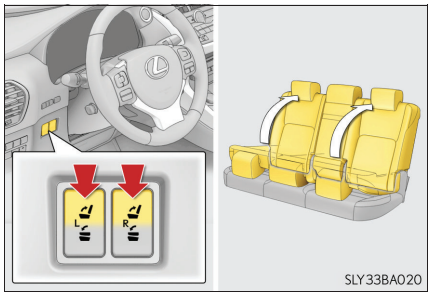
■ Returning the rear seatbacks (power seat)

1 Press and hold the switch to return the seatback.

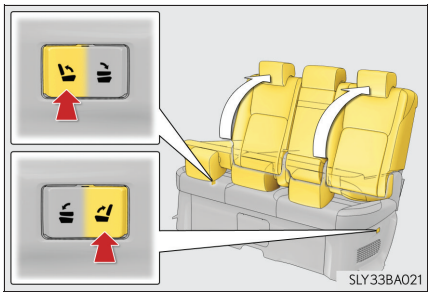
The buzzer sounds and operations start. The buzzer sounds again when the operation is complete.

To stop the operation of a seat partway, press either seat operation switch for that seat, once more. Switches for that seat in other locations can be used to stop the operations. (buzzer sounds depending on stopping position of the seatback)

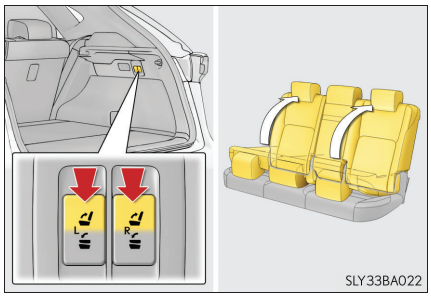
▶ Instrument panel switch



▶ Rear seat switch

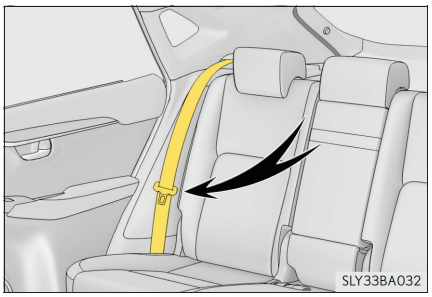


▶ Luggage room switch



2 Check that the plate for the seat belt is on the front side of the seat.

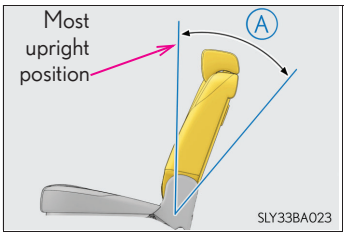
When using the seat belt for the rear center seat (→P. 39)



■ **Operating conditions for reclining adjustment (power seat)**

When the following conditions are met, switch operations are possible.

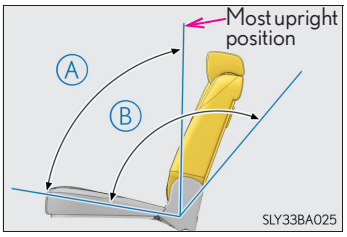
- When the seatback position is within the range of illustration A.
- When the operating switches for the seat to be operate are not being pressed.



■ **Operating conditions for folding down the seatback (power seat)**

When the following conditions are met, switch operations are possible.

- When operating the rear seat switch: The seatback position is within the range of illustration A.
- When operating the instrument panel switch or luggage compartment switch: The seatback position is within the range of illustration B.
- When operating the rear seat switch: When the rear door for the seat to be operated is open.



- When operating the luggage compartment switch: When the back door is open.
- When the operating switches for the seat to be operate are not being pressed.

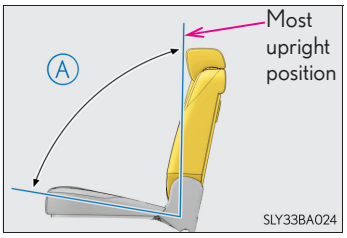
When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, in addition to the above, the power seat operates for any of the following conditions:

- Parking brake is engaged
- The brake pedal is depressed
- The shift lever is in P

■ **Operating conditions for returning the seatback (power seat)**

When the following conditions are met, switch operations are possible.

- When operating the rear seat switch: When the seatback position is within the range of illustration A.
- When operating the rear seat switch: When the rear door for the seat to be operated is open.
- When operating the luggage compartment switch: When the back door is open.



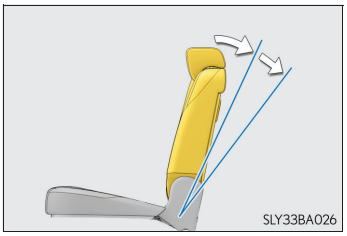
- When the operating switches for the seat to be operate are not being pressed.

When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, in addition to the above, the power seat operates for any of the following conditions:

- Parking brake is engaged
- The brake pedal is depressed
- The shift lever is in P

■ **Reclining adjustment (power seat)**

Stop the seatback partway. To set the seatback to the rearmost position, press the button again.



■ **Power seat operations (if equipped)**

If the seat has a cover or seat cushion, it may not operate properly. Also, when folding down the seat, check that there is nothing on the rear seat that would interfere with the operation.

■ **Seatback jam protection function (power seat)**

When folding down the seatback, if a foreign object is perceived between the seatback and seat cushion, the seatback will reverse operations and then stops operations.
The buzzer sounds intermittently during reverse operations and sounds continuously when operations are stopped.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When folding the rear seatbacks down and after folded**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

■ **When operating the seatback**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Keep other passengers from being hit with the seatback.
- Do not bring your hands close to the moving parts or between the seats, as well as do not let any part of your body get caught.
- Vehicles with a power seat: Do not let children operate the seatback as other passengers may get caught in seat.
- Vehicles with a power seat: Check that there are no passengers sitting in the seat before folding that seat forward. Also, do let other passengers sit in the seat while the seat is forward folding.

WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment**

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ **After returning the rear seatback to the upright position**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure that the seatback is securely locked in position by lightly pushing it back and forth.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

■ **Jam protection function (vehicles with a power seat)**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the seatback is fully folded forward. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

NOTICE

■ **Stowing the seat belts**

The seat belts and buckles for the rear center seat, as well as the armrest, must be stowed before you fold down the rear seatbacks. (→P. 40)

Driving position memory*

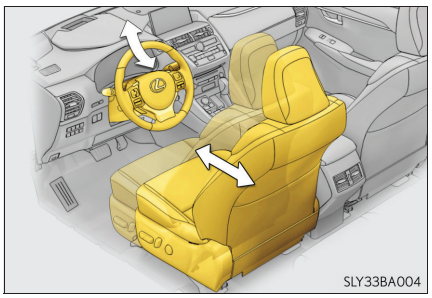
This feature automatically adjusts the front seats, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Power easy access system

The seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.


SLY33BA004

When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

Operation of the power easy access system

When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.

Customization

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized. (Customizable features: →P. 662)

*: If equipped

Driving position memory

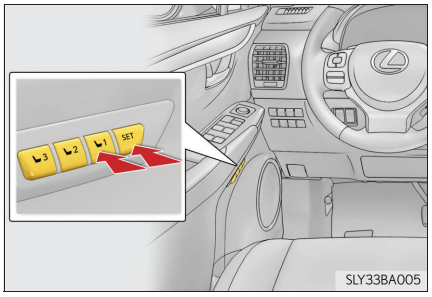
Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be recorded and recalled by pressing a button.

Three different driving positions can be recorded into memory.

Recording procedure

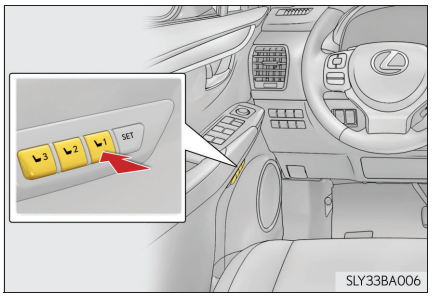
1. Check that the shift lever is in P.
2. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
3. Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.
4. While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

   If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



Recall procedure

1. Check that the shift lever is in P.
2. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
3. Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



■ **To stop the position recall operation part-way through**

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

■ **Seat positions that can be memorized (→P. 169)**

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off**

Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

■ **In order to correctly use the driving position memory function**

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

Memory recall function

Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

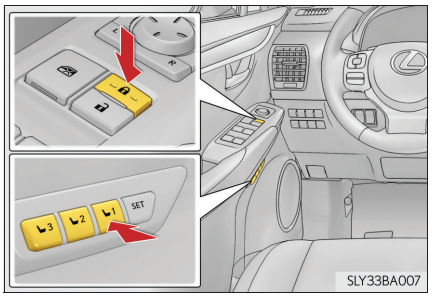
■ **Registering procedure**

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.
If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

1. Check that the shift lever is in P.
2. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
3. Recall the driving position that you want to record.
4. While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

   If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



■ Recall procedure

1 Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel). However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat and steering wheel will move to the recorded position.

■ Cancelation procedure

Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.
If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

2 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If it could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ Customization

The unlock door settings of the memory recall function can be customized.
(Customizable features: →P. 662)

WARNING

■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

Front seats

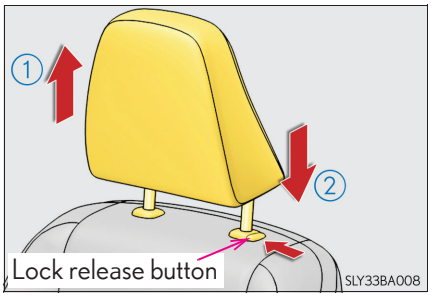
▶ Vertical adjustment

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

② Down

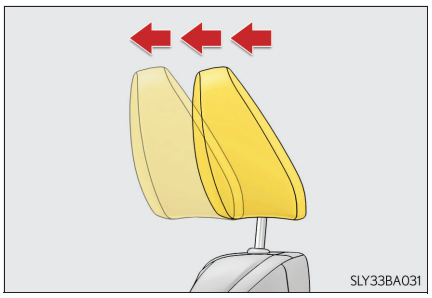
Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



▶ Angle adjustment (if equipped)

The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.



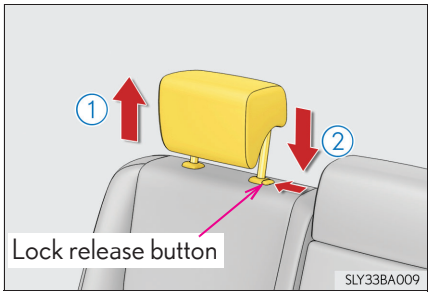
Rear seats

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

② Down

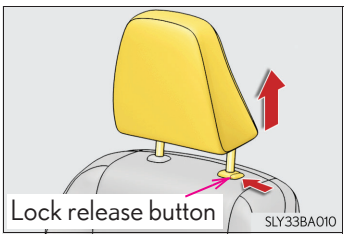
Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



Removing the head restraints

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

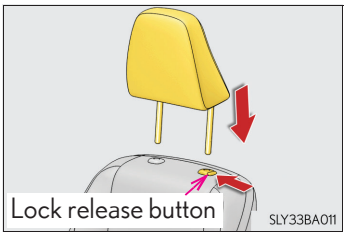
If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P. 169, 171)



Installing the head restraints

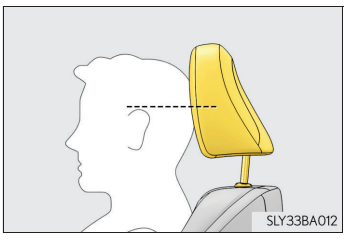
Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.



Adjusting the height of the head restraints (front seats)

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



Adjusting the rear seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

WARNING

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

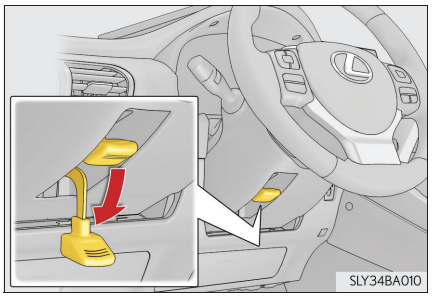
- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

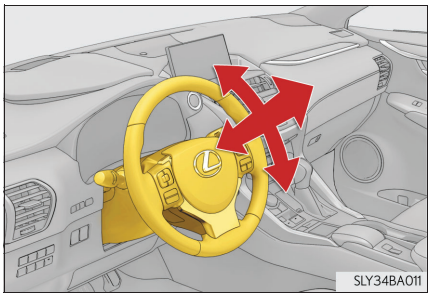
▶ Manual type

1 Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.



2 Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel horizontally and vertically.

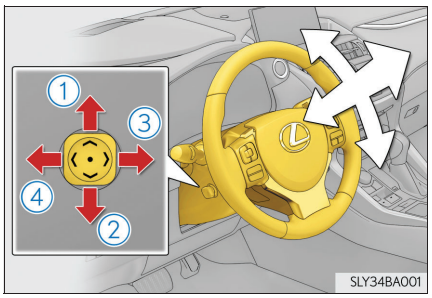
After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.



▶ Power type

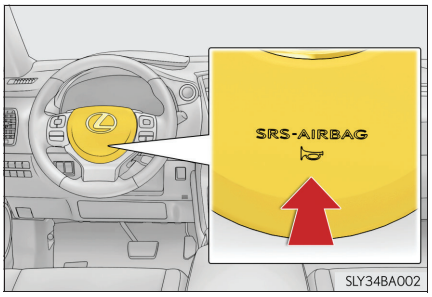
Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:

① Up
② Down
③ Toward the driver
④ Away from the driver



Horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



■ **The steering wheel can be adjusted when (power type)**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the steering position (if equipped)**

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P. 178)

■ **Power easy access system**

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 178)

■ **After adjusting the steering wheel (manual type)**

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.
The horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **After adjusting the steering wheel (manual type)**

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.
Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, and resulting in death or serious injury.

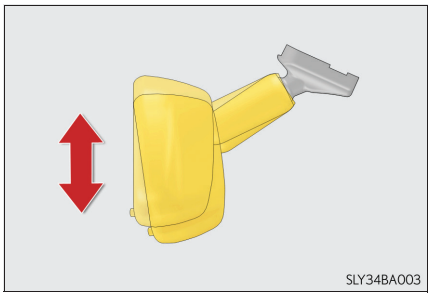
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

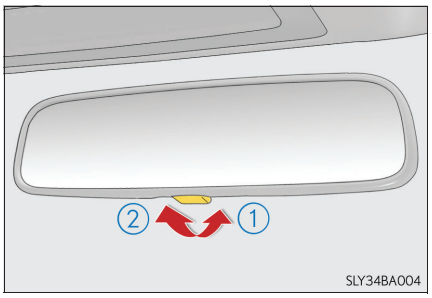


Anti-glare function

▶ Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror

① Normal position

② Anti-glare position



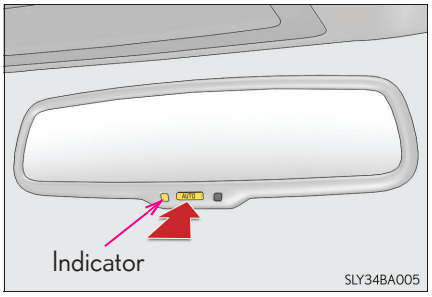
▶ Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Changing automatic anti-glare function mode

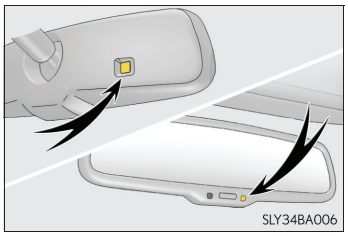
On/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator illuminates. The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error (vehicles with auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

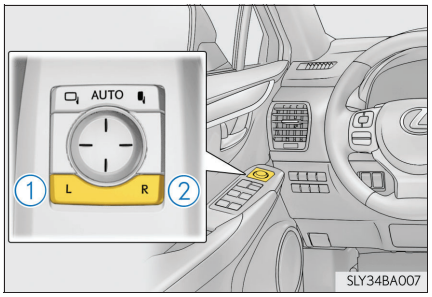
Outside rear view mirrors

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

① Left

② Right



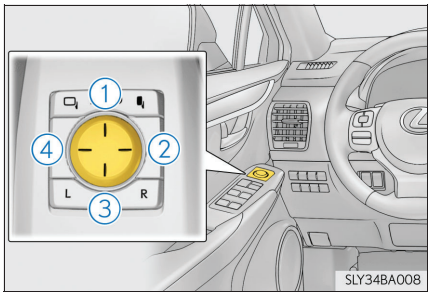
2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

① Up

② Right

③ Down

④ Left

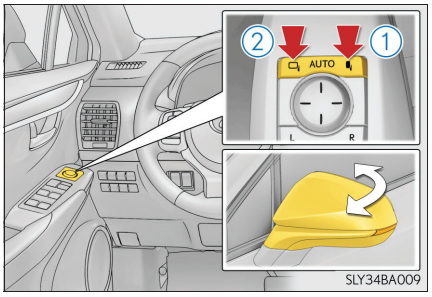


Folding and extending the mirrors

① Folds the mirrors

② Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors to automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.



Linked mirror function when reversing (vehicles with driving position memory)

When the mirror select switch is in the "L" or "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between "L" or "R")

■ **Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing**

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position.

The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.
When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

■ **Mirror angle can be adjusted when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When the mirrors are fogged up**

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 475)

■ **Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 178)

■ **Auto anti-glare function (if equipped)**

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 187)

■ **When using in cold weather**

- When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this event, after removing any ice and snow from the door mirror, operate the mirror using manual mode or move it by hand.
- Vehicles with driving position memory: When used in cold weather during reverse driving, the door mirror could be frozen and may not automatically point the mirror surface downward. In this event, remove any ice and snow from the mirror surface.

■ **Customization**

The automatic mirror folding and extending operation can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 663)

WARNING

■ **When driving the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ **When a mirror is moving**

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ **When the mirror defoggers are operating**

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Power windows

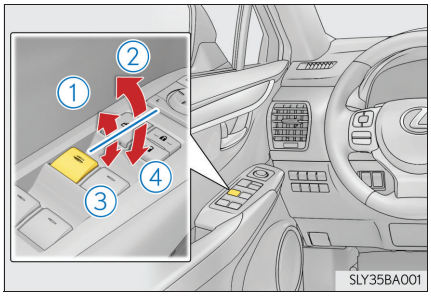
Opening and closing procedures

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:

① Closing
② One-touch closing*
③ Opening
④ One-touch opening*

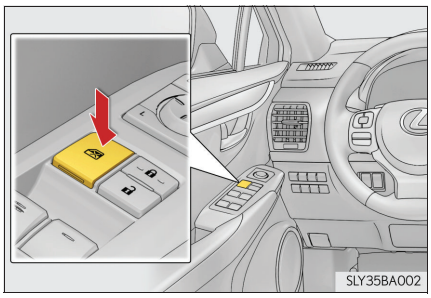
*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.



Window lock switch

Press the switch down to lock the passenger window.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.



■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the engine off**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the window frame while the window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **Catch protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ **When the window cannot be opened or closed**

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the door window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the door window can be opened and closed.
- If the door window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
2. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the door window.
3. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.
4. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the door window is completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
5. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.
6. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the door window is completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Door lock linked window operation**

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P. 626)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P. 130)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Power windows open warning buzzer**

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

■ **Customization**

Setting (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 661)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Closing the windows**

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 192)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ **Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

■ **Catch protection function**

- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

Moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Opening and closing

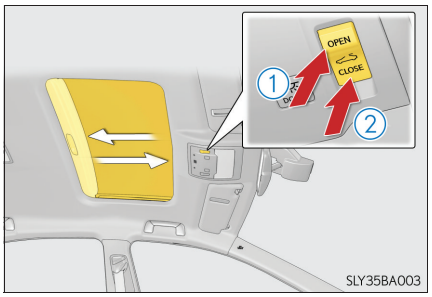
① Opens the moon roof

Press and hold the "OPEN" switch. The moon roof tilts up and then fully opens automatically.*

② Closes the moon roof

Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch. The moon roof fully closes automatically.*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.



Tilting up and down

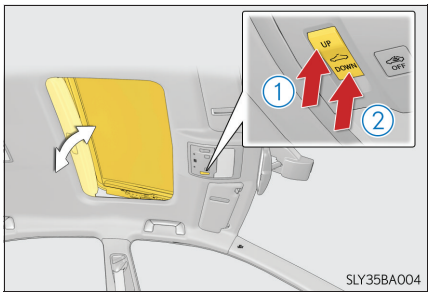
① Tilts the moon roof up

Press and hold the "UP" switch. It automatically opens until the tilt up stop position.*

② Tilts the moon roof down

Press and hold the "DOWN" switch. The moon roof full close automatically.*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.



■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

*: If equipped

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P. 626)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P. 130)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **When the moon roof does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

- If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again and tilt down. Finally it will stop.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof completely stops and then release the switch.

- If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "DOWN" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will close again. Finally it will stop.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof has completely stopped and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, perform the moon roof initialization by referring to "When tilt up/down or moon roof opening and closing can be done but automatic full opening and closing cannot be done" on P. 197.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **When the moon roof does not move normally**

When the opening and closing operation or automatic opening function of the moon roof does not move normally, perform the following initialization procedures.

1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

2 Operate the moon roof.
The initialization method changes depending on the contents that can be operated.

● If only the tilt up operations can be done when the moon roof is closed

3 Press and hold the "DOWN" or "CLOSE" switch.
Open until the tilt up stop position. After that the moon roof opens and completely closes.
After that tilt up once again and stop at the completely closed position.

4 Confirm that moon roof has completely stopped and release the switch.

● If the moon roof can only be closed when the moon roof is partially opened

3 Press and hold the "DOWN" or "CLOSE" switch.
Fully close the moon roof, tilt up and open it close to the fully open position. After that, fully close the moon roof and tilt up once again, then stop the moon roof in the fully closed position.

4 Confirm that moon roof has completely stopped and release the switch.

● When tilt up/down or moon roof opening and closing can be done but automatic full opening and closing cannot be done

3 Press the "OPEN" switch and fully open.

4 Press the "CLOSE" switch and fully close.

5 Press the "UP" switch and tilt up until the tilt up stop position.

6 Press the "DOWN" switch and tilt down.

If the switch is released before any step is completes, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.
If the opening and closing operations or automatic opening function does not move as normal, even after performing the above mentioned operations, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Moon roof open warning buzzer**

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ **Customization**

Setting (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 661)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ **Opening the moon roof**

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ **Closing the moon roof**

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations.
  In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

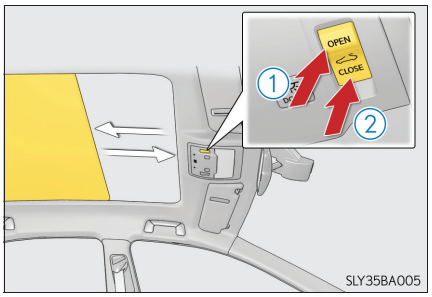
■ **Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the moon roof switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

Electronic sunshade*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the electronic sunshade.

Opening and closing



① Opens the electronic sunshade

Press and hold the "OPEN" switch. The electronic sunshade fully opens automatically.*

② Closes the electronic sunshade

Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch. The electronic sunshade fully closes automatically.*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ The electronic sunshade can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Jam protection function

- If an object is detected between the electronic sunshade and the frame while the electronic sunshade is closing, travel is stopped and the electronic sunshade opens slightly.
- When the jam protection function has operated, even if the "CLOSE" side of the switch is pressed again, the electronic sunshade will not move in the close direction until the reverse operation has stopped completely.
- Depending on the driving conditions and the surroundings, the electronic sunshade may collide with something and operate in reverse.

■ When the automatic opening and closing function does not work

Perform the following initialization procedure.

1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.
It closes until it is near the fully closed position and then stops. After that, it and operates in the opening direction then closes to the fully closed position.

If the switch is released before completion, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.
If the automatic opening and closing function does not work as normal, even after performing the above mentioned operations, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: If equipped

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ **Closing the electronic sunshade**

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic sunshade is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the electronic sunshade.
  Closing the electronic sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ **Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the electronic sunshade fully closes.

■ **To prevent burns or injuries**

Do not touch the gaps between the under side of the roof and the electronic sunshade. Your hand may get caught and you could injure yourself. Also, if the vehicle is left in direct sunlight for a long time, the under side of the roof could become very hot and could cause burns.

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle....202
Cargo and luggage....211
Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)....213
Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package)....214

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch....221
Automatic transmission....226
Multidrive....233
Turn signal lever....239
Parking brake....240
Brake Hold....243
ASC (Active Sound Control)....245

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch....246
Automatic High Beam....250
Fog light switch....254
Windshield wipers and washer....256
Rear window wiper and washer....260

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap....262

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Stop & Start system....266
Dynamic radar cruise control....271
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....286
Cruise control....300
LDA (Lane Departure Alert)....304
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)....312
Lexus parking assist-sensor....322
Rear view monitor system....330
Driving mode select switch....340
Driving assist systems....343
All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models)....349
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)....350
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....359

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips....370
Utility vehicle precautions....374

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the engine

→P. 221

Driving

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 226, 233)

2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 241)

If the parking brake is in automatic mode, the parking brake is released automatically when shifting the shift lever to any position other than P. (→P. 240)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake. (→P. 241)

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 226, 233)

Parking the vehicle

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake (→P. 241), and shift the shift lever to P (→P. 226, 233).

3 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

4 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

Starting off on an uphill

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 226, 233)

2 Pull the parking brake switch and parking brake is set manually. (→P. 241)

3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

4 Press the parking brake switch and parking brake is released manually. (→P. 241)

■ **When starting off on an uphill**

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P. 343)

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Engine speed while driving**

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while sport mode is selected

■ **Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)**

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

- When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.
  - When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
  - When the accelerator pedal is depressed too while the vehicle is in reverse.
- While Drive-Start Control is being activated, your vehicle may have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow. In such case, deactivate TRC (→P. 345) to cancel Drive-Start Control so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

● For the first 300 km (200 miles):
Avoid sudden stops.

● For the first 2000 km (1200 miles):

- Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
- Avoid sudden acceleration.
- Do not drive continuously in low gears.
- Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

▶ Vehicles with towing package

● For the first 800 km (500 miles):

Do not tow a trailer.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 643)

■ **Idling time before engine stop (NX200t)***

To prevent damage to the turbocharger, immediately after high speed driving or hill climbing, if the engine is to be stopped by operating the engine switch, stop the engine after allowing it to idle.

Driving condition	Idling time
Normal city driving	Not necessary
High-speed driving (Constant speed of approx. 100 km/h [62 mph])	Approximately 1 minute
Steep hill driving or continuous driving at 100 km/h (62 mph) or more (race track driving etc.)	Approximately 2 minutes

*: Except Stop & Start system operation

■ **Eco-friendly driving**

→P. 109

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ **When driving the vehicle**

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 575
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill. Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 226, 233)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.
- AWD models: Do not drive the vehicle off-road.
  This is not an AWD vehicle designed for off-road driving. Proceed with all due caution if it becomes unavoidable to drive off-road.
- Do not drive across a river or through other bodies of water.
  This may cause electric/electronic components to short circuit, damage the engine or cause other serious damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ **When shifting the shift lever**

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Shifting the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
  Shifting the shift lever to any position other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)**

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Front brakes only: Moderate levels of brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced front braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not race the engine.
  If the shift lever is in any position other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always shift the shift lever to P, apply the parking brake, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift lever in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When taking a nap in the vehicle**

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ **When braking**

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ **If the vehicle becomes stuck (AWD models)**

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, the engine output may be restrained.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always set the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- NX200t: Make sure to idle the engine after high speed driving or hill climbing, if the engine is to be stopped by the engine switch. Stop the engine only after the turbocharger has cooled down.
  Failure to do so may cause damage to the turbocharger.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 594, 607)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain, etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transaxle, transfer (AWD models), differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft (AWD models), bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ **Storage precautions**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ **Load and distribution**

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.

  Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ **When using a roof luggage carrier (vehicles with roof rails)**

Observe the following precautions:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P. 640)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 80 kg (176.3 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

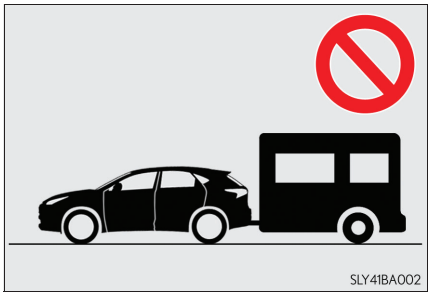
NOTICE

■ **When loading cargo (vehicles with moon roof or panoramic roof)**

Do not set luggage on the moon roof and panoramic roof. Failure to observe so may lead to cause damage.

Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package)

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. Your safety and satisfaction depend on the proper use of correct equipment and cautious driving habits. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Ask your local authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details before towing, as there are additional legal requirements in some countries.

◆ Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible draw bar load before towing. (→P. 640)

◆ Towing hitch/bracket

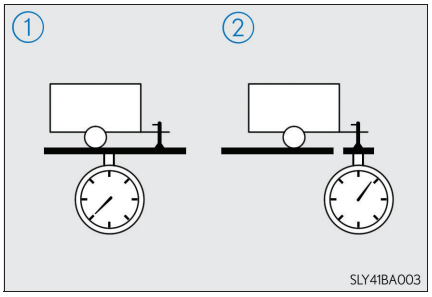
Lexus recommends the use of the Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

Connecting trailer lights

Please consult at any authorized dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

Important points regarding trailer loads

■ Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load



① Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P. 640)

When towing a trailer, use a friction coupler or friction stabilizer (sway control device).

② Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P. 640)

■ Information tag (manufacturer's label)

① Gross vehicle mass

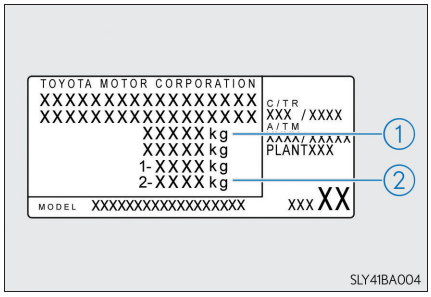
The combined weight of the driver, passengers, luggage, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

② Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

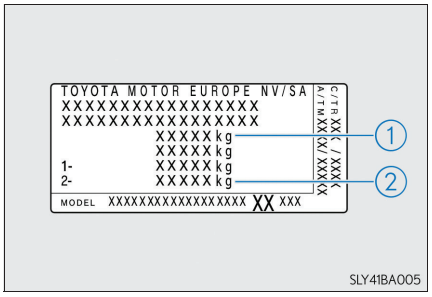
The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

▶ Type A



▶ Type B



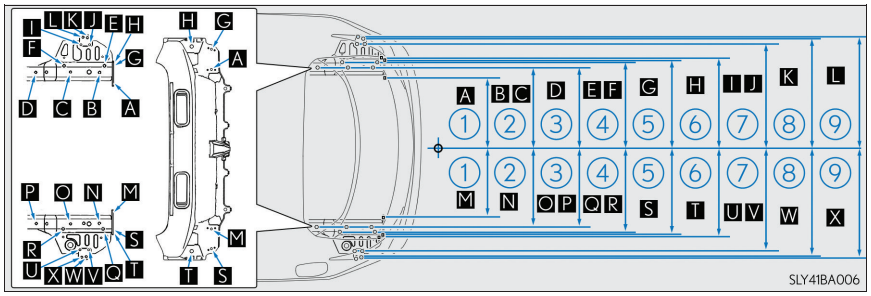
WARNING

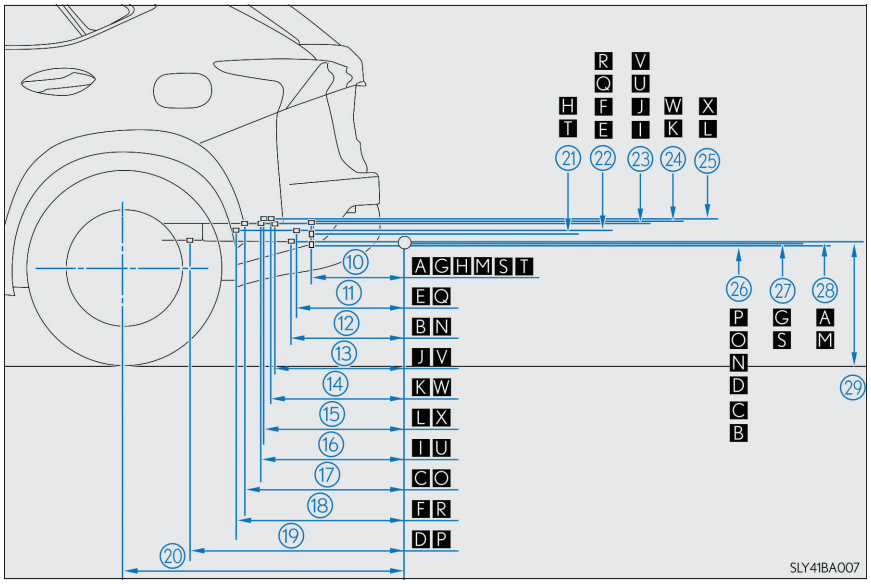
■ **When the gross vehicle mass or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded**

Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Add an additional 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) to the recommended tire inflation pressure value. (→P. 651)
- Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is lower.

Installation positions for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball





① 484 mm (19.1 in.)
② 546 mm (21.5 in.)
③ 551 mm (21.7 in.)
④ 583 mm (23.0 in.)
⑤ 604 mm (23.8 in.)
⑥ 617 mm (24.3 in.)
⑦ 713 mm (28.1 in.)
⑧ 757 mm (29.8 in.)
⑨ 767 mm (30.2 in.)
⑩ 355 mm (14.0 in.)
⑪ 413 mm (16.3 in.)
⑫ 434 mm (17.1 in.)
⑬ 496 mm (19.5 in.)
⑭ 512 mm (20.2 in.)
⑮ 539 mm (21.2 in.)
⑯ 549 mm (21.6 in.)
⑰ 610 mm (24.0 in.)
⑱ 643 mm (25.3 in.)
⑲ 818 mm (32.2 in.)
⑳ 1070 mm (42.1 in.)
㉑ 32 mm (1.3 in.)
㉒ 43 mm (1.7 in.)
㉓ 69 mm (2.7 in.)
㉔ 75 mm (3.0 in.)
㉕ 78 mm (3.1 in.)
㉖ 2 mm (0.1 in.)
㉗ 6 mm (0.2 in.)
㉘ 9 mm (0.4 in.)
㉙ 371 mm (14.6 in.)

■ **Tire information**

- Increase the tire inflation pressure to 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) greater than the recommended value when towing. (→P. 651)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ **Trailer lights**

Check that the turn signal lights and stoplights are operating correctly every time you hitch up the trailer. Directly wiring up to your vehicle may damage the electrical system and stop the lights from functioning correctly.

■ **Break-in schedule**

Lexus recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ **Safety checks before towing**

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that the total load exerted on the vehicle is within the range of the weight limits. (→P. 215)
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ Maintenance

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

■ **Checking connections between trailer and lights**

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

■ **Practicing driving with a coupled trailer**

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

■ **Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance**

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

■ **Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering**

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

■ **Important points regarding turning**

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

■ **Important points regarding stability**

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong cross-winds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

■ **Passing other vehicles**

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

■ **Transmission information**

To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance, when using engine braking, do not use the transmission in D. If in the M mode, the transmission shift range position must be in 4 or lower. (→P. 226, 233)

■ **If the engine overheats**

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P. 633)

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

WARNING

Follow all the instructions described in this section.
Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Trailer towing precautions**

When towing, make sure that none of the weight limits are exceeded.
(→P. 215)

■ **To avoid accident or injury**

- Vehicles with a compact spare tire:
  Do not tow a trailer when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.
- Vehicles with the emergency tire puncture repair kit:
  Do not tow a trailer when the tire installed is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.
- Do not use the following systems when trailer towing.
  - Cruise control (if equipped)
  - Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
  - Dynamic cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)

■ **Vehicle speed in towing**

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ **Before descending hills or long declines**

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

■ **Operation of the brake pedal**

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time.
Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

NOTICE

■ **Do not directly splice trailer lights**

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

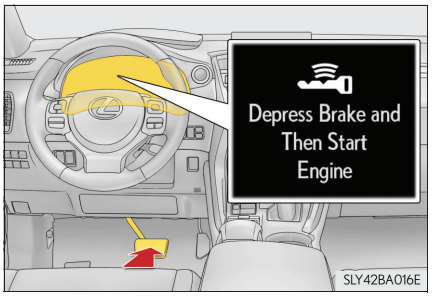
1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.



4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

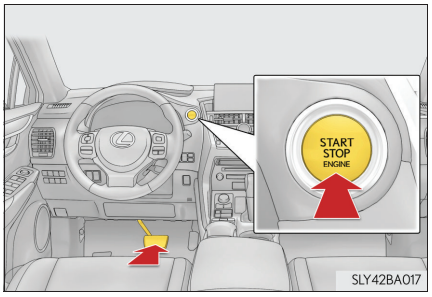
When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough.

It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



Stopping the engine

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 Set the parking brake (→P. 241), and shift the shift lever to P (→P. 226, 233).

3 Press the engine switch.

4 Release the brake pedal and check that the display on the instrument cluster is off.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)

① Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

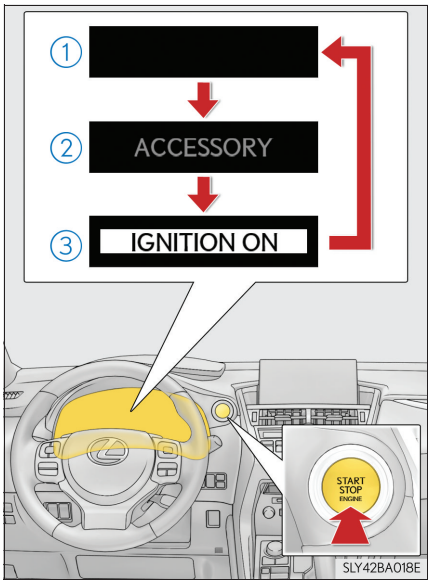
② ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.
"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

③ IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.
"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.



When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" is displayed on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.

4 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" on the multi-information display is off.

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 127

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 150

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P. 151

■ **If the engine does not start**

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 83) Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P. "To Start Vehicle, Put Shift Lever into P" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

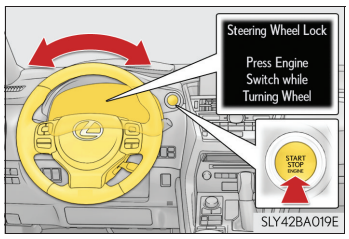
■ **Steering lock**

After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**

A message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Check that the shift lever is in P. Press the engine switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.



■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, operation of the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from running the engine. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **When "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

→P. 554

■ **Operation of the engine switch**

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ **If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated by a customized setting**

→P. 627

WARNING

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Caution while driving**

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. The steering lock function will activate and this may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 575)
However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running on.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the multi-information display while the engine is not running, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

■ **When starting the engine**

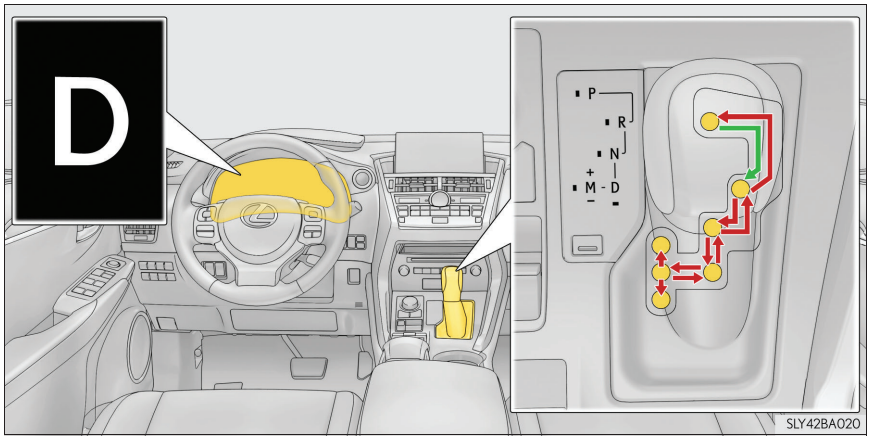
- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch**

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Automatic transmission

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
M	M mode driving*2 (→P. 228)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, shift the shift lever to D for normal driving.

*2: Any gear range can be fixed when driving in M mode.

Selecting the driving mode

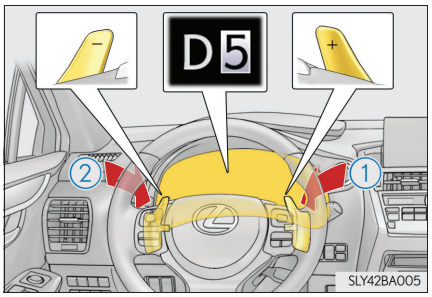
→P. 340

Selecting shift ranges in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" paddle shift switch while the shift lever in D. Changing the shift range enables the level of engine braking force to be selected. The shift range can then be selected by operating the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches.

① Upshifting

② Downshifting



The selected shift range, from 1 to 6, will be displayed on the multi-information display.

The initial shift range when the "-" paddle shift switch is operated is automatically set to 2, 3, 4 or 5 according to the vehicle speed.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Shift ranges and their functions

Meter display	Function
D2 - D6	A gear in the range between 1 and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	1st gear is set

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

Selecting gears in the M position

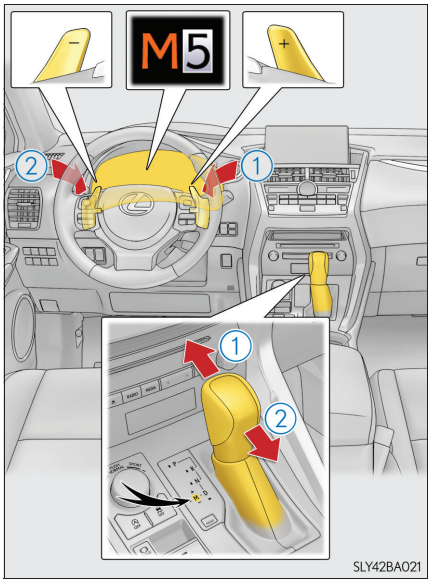
To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choice. The gear can be selected by operating the shift lever or the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches (if equipped).

① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from 1 to 6, will be fixed and displayed on the multi-information display.



When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

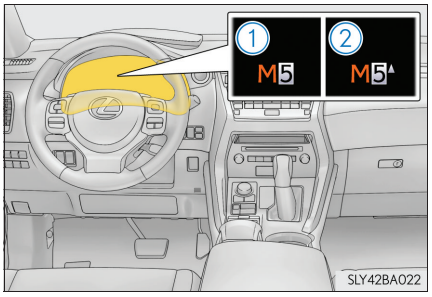
However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed further, while driving (downshift only).
- When the needle of the tachometer is in the red zone (the range which exceeds the allowable revs of the engine).

Gear Shift Indicator (if equipped)

The Gear Shift Indicator display is a guide to help the driver achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions within limits of engine performance.

① When not in operation
② Shift-up indicator



Gear Shift Indicator function

- This function automatically operates during M mode.
- By following the Shift-up indicator and shifting up accordingly, it is possible to achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions.
- The Gear Shift Indicator does not have a similar function for downshifting.
- Depending on the driving conditions, the Gear Shift Indicator may not display the Shift-up indicator while driving in M mode.

When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated with the shift lever in the D position

A shift range will be automatically selected. The highest gear of the first shift range will be one gear lower than the gear in use during normal D position driving.

Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D

To protect the automatic transmission

"Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display and a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range when the fluid temperature is high. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When driving with cruise control (if equipped), dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) activated**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

- While driving in D position, downshifting to 5 or 4. (→P. 227)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P. 340)

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed too while the vehicle is in reverse.

■ **If the "M" indicator does not come on or the "D" indicator is displayed even after shifting the shift lever to M**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

■ **AI-SHIFT**

- The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
  The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the drive mode select switch is set to normal mode with the shift lever in the D position. (The function will be canceled, if the drive mode select switch is set to sport mode or shift lever is put in the M position.)
- The G AI-SHIFT is automatically changed to a suitable gear step while running in sport mode according to the driving operations and running conditions.
  The G AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the drive mode select switch is set to sport mode with the shift lever in the D position. (The function will be canceled, if the drive mode is select switch is set to normal mode or shift lever is put in the M position.)

■ **Shift lock system**

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.

The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal is being depressed.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.
If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

1 Set the parking brake.

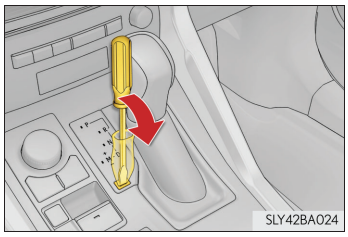
2 Turn the engine switch off.

3 Depress the brake pedal.

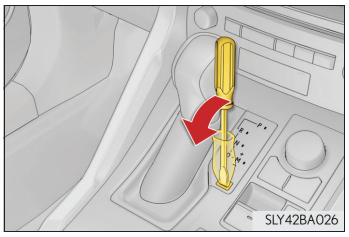
4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



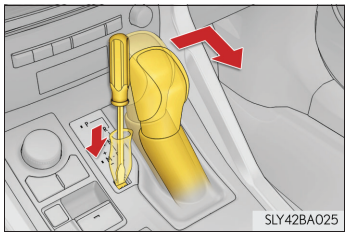
▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



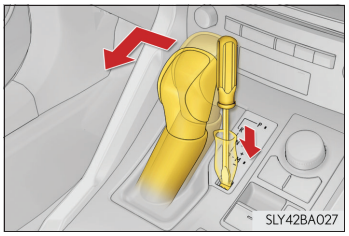
5 Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



WARNING

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

■ **To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock**

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.

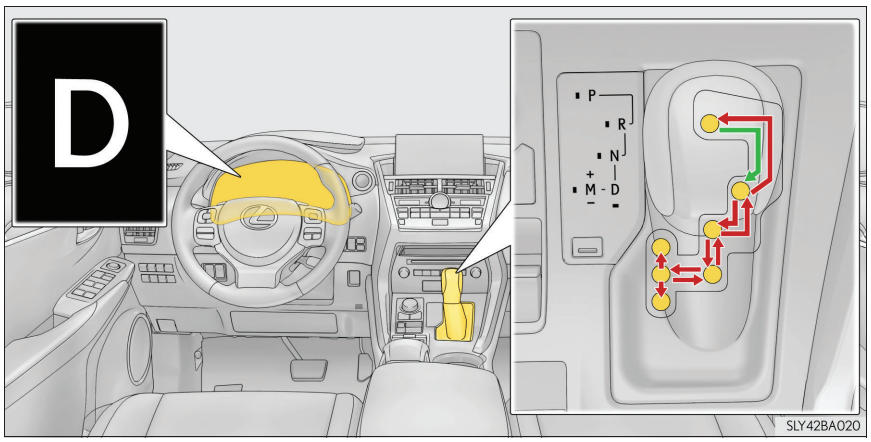
If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Gear Shift Indicator display (if equipped)**

For safety, the driver should not look only at the display. Refer to the display when it is safe to do so while considering actual traffic and road conditions.
Failure to do so may lead to an accident.

Multidrive

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
M	8-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode driving*2 (→P. 235)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, shift the shift lever to D for normal driving.

*2: By selecting gear steps using M position, you can control accelerating force and engine braking force.

Selecting the driving mode

→P. 340

Selecting gear steps in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)

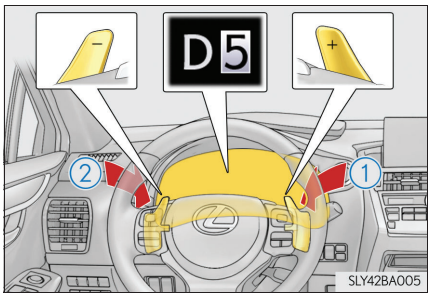
To drive using temporary gear step selection, operate the paddle shift switch while the shift lever in D. Changing the gear step enables the level of engine braking force to be selected. The gear step can then be selected by operating the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches.

① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The selected gear step, from 1 to 8, will be displayed on the multi-information display.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.



Gear steps and their functions

- You can choose from 8 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower gear step will provide greater engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine revolutions will also increase.

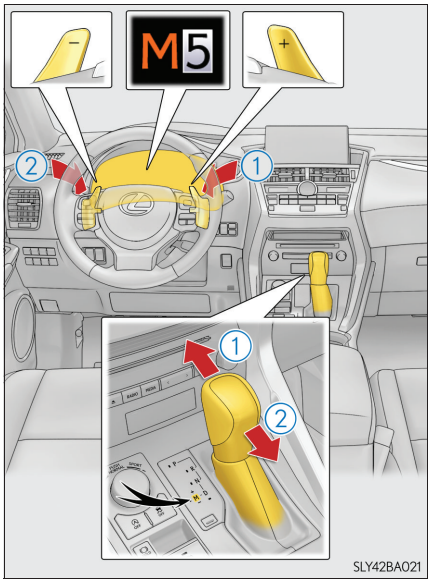
Changing gear steps in the M position

To enter 8-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gear steps can be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches (if equipped), allowing you to drive in the gear step of your choice. The gear step can be selected by operating the shift lever or the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches (if equipped).

① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The selected gear step, from 1 to 8, will be displayed on the multi-information display.



However, even when in the M position, the gear steps will be automatically changed if the engine speed is too high, or too low.

Gear steps and their functions

- You can choose from 8 levels of accelerating force and engine braking force.
- A lower gear step will provide greater accelerating force and engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine revolutions will also increase.
- If you accelerate while in gear step 1 to 7, the gear step may automatically shift up in accordance with the engine speed.
- When vehicle speed drops, the gear step will be automatically downshifted unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches (if equipped) are operated.
- When the vehicle speed and engine speed are too low, the gear step may not change even when the shift lever is operated.

■ **When the vehicle comes to a stop with the shift lever in the M position**

- The transmission will automatically downshift to M1 once the vehicle is stopped.
- After a stop, the vehicle will start off in M1.
- When the vehicle is stopped, the transmission is set at M1.

■ **Automatic deactivation of gear step selection in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)**

Gear step selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time at a gear step
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D
- Automatically selects a higher gear step before the engine speed becomes too high.

■ **To protect the transmission**

"Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display and a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher gear ratio when the fluid temperature is high. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer (when driving in 8-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode)**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When driving with cruise control activated (if equipped)**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control will not be canceled.

- While driving in D position or 8-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode, downshifting to 7, 6, 5 or 4. (→P. 234)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P. 340)

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed too while the vehicle is in reverse.

■ **If the "M" indicator does not come on or the "D" indicator is displayed even after shifting the shift lever to M**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

AI-SHIFT

AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

Shift lock system

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.

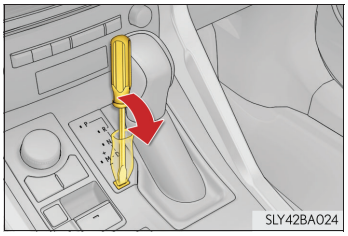
The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal is being depressed.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

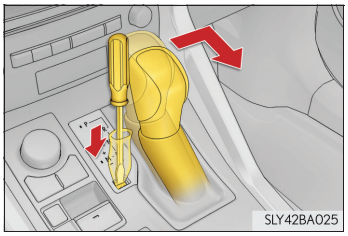
First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.
If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the engine switch off.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.
   To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



5. Press the shift lock override button.
   The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



WARNING

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

■ **To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock**

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.

If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

① Right turn

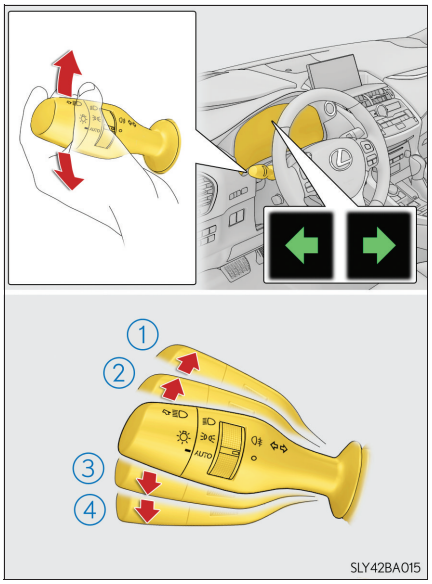
② Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

③ Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

④ Left turn



■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicator flashes faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **Customization**

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable feature →P. 662)

Parking brake

A selections can be made as desired from the following modes.

Automatic mode

The parking brake is set or released automatically according to shift lever operation.

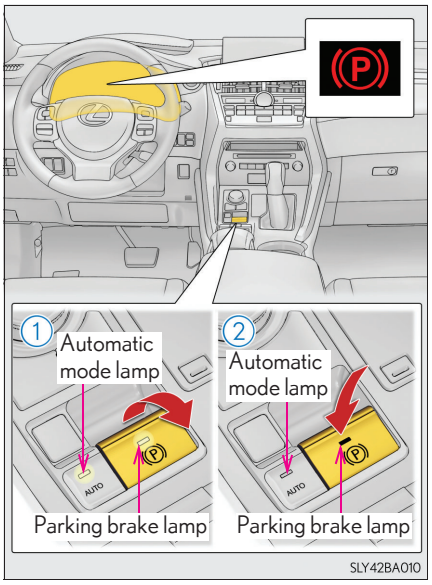
Even when in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set and released manually. (→P. 241)

① Turns automatic mode on (while the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until the automatic mode lamp turns on)

- When the shift lever is moved out of P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn off.
- When the shift lever is moved into P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn on.

Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

② Turns automatic mode off (while the vehicle is stopped, press and hold the parking brake switch until the automatic mode lamp turns off)



Manual mode

The parking brake can be set and released manually.

① Sets the parking brake

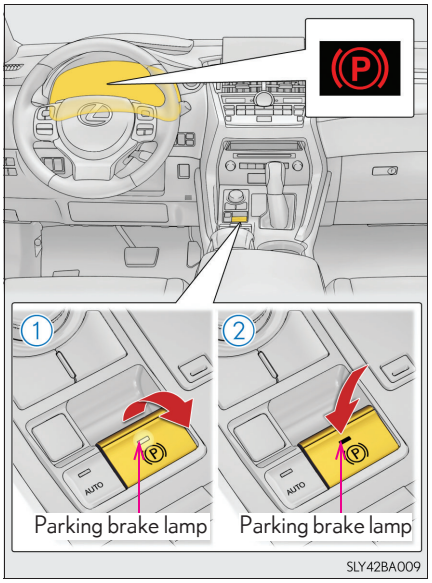
The parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will turn on.

Pull and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

② Releases the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn off.

If the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp flashes, operate the switch again. (→P. 586)



■ **Parking brake operation**

- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ **If "Parking Brake Overheated Parking Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ **Parking brake operation sound**

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp**

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will turn on and stay on as described below:

  IGNITION ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in IGNITION ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Changing the mode**

When changing the automatic mode on/off, the message will be shown on the multi-information display and the buzzer sounds.

■ **Parking the vehicle**

→P. 202

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "Release Parking Brake" is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake system warning light comes on**

→P. 584

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P. 371

⚠ WARNING

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

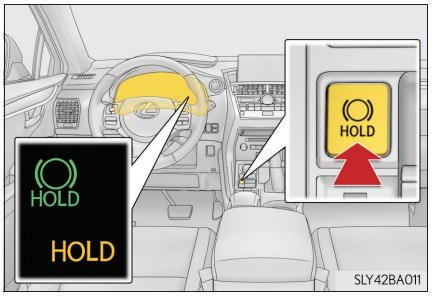
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Have the vehicle inspected by contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, M or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator (green) comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) comes on.



■ **Brake hold system operating conditions**

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The back door or hood is not closed.
- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ **Brake hold function**

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes**

With the brake pedal depressed, release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch, making sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P. 240)

■ **If "Brake Hold Fault Depress Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**

→P. 586

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

When using the brake hold system on a steep incline exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle in such a situation.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.

ASC (Active Sound Control)*

The ASC system is an electronic sound system that generates engine sound, conveying the kinetic situations of the vehicle's acceleration and deceleration to the driver through the speakers inside the instrument panel.
The vehicle's response to the driver's acceleration behavior and shift operations are also conveyed in sound.
When sport mode is selected, the sound conveyed to the driver will be louder.

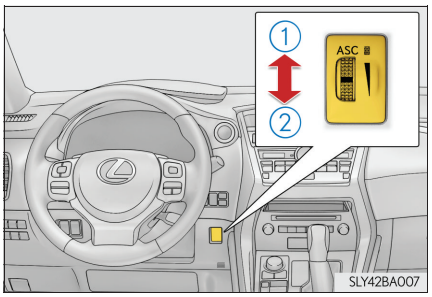
Controlling volume

① Louder

② Lower

The indicator comes on when the ASC system is on.

When the dial is turned to the lowest volume, the ASC system will be turned off and the indicator will go off.



The ASC system can be operated when

The driving mode select switch is in normal mode or sport mode.

Temporary cancelation of the ASC system functions

The ASC system may be temporarily canceled depending on the driving conditions, such as when the tires slip due to sudden acceleration.

*: If equipped

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

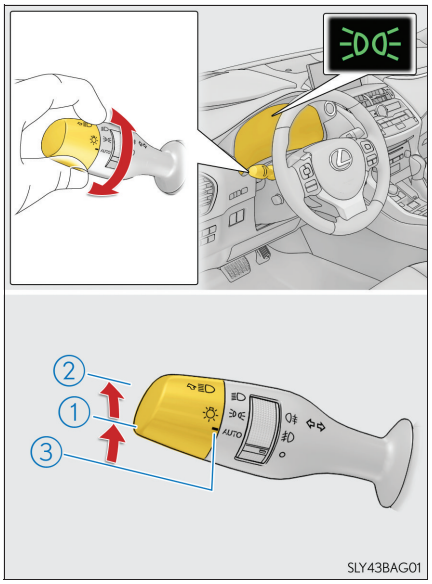
Operating instructions

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:

① The front position, tail, license plate, instrument panel and switch lights turn on.

② The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

③ AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P. 248) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically (when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



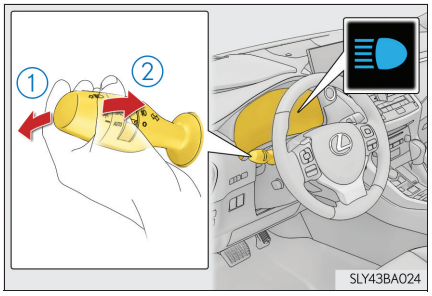
Turning on the high beam headlights

① With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

② Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

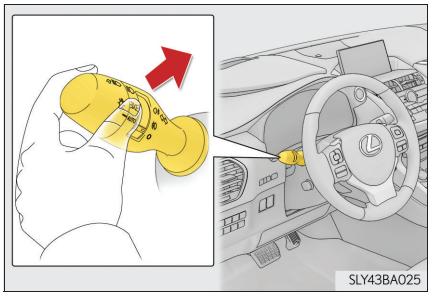


Follow me home system

This system allows the headlights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch is in AUTO after turning the engine switch off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.



Cornering lights (vehicles with front fog lights)

When the following conditions are met, while the headlights (low beam) are on, the cornering lights will additionally turn on and light up the direction of movement for the vehicle. This is to ensure excellent visibility when either driving at intersections or parking at night.

- The steering wheel is operated
- The turn signal lever is operated
- The shift lever is in R

However, when vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or above, the cornering lights do not turn on.

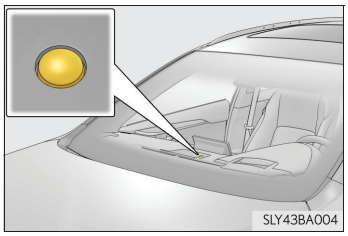
When the cornering lights are on for more than 30 minutes, they will automatically turn off.

■ **Daytime running light system**

- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch in the "AUTO" position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.
- If a turn signal light is in use, the daytime running light, on the same side, is turned off. For emergency flashers, both are turned off.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

- When the light switch is in the or position: The headlights and front fog lights (if equipped) turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.
- When the light switch is in the AUTO position: The headlights and all lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch to the AUTO position once and then back to the or position.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ **Battery-saving function**

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the light switch is in the position when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes. When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the battery-saving function will be disabled.
When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 659)

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

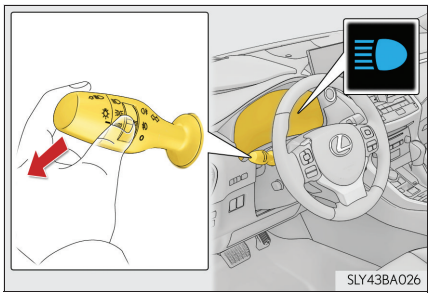
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

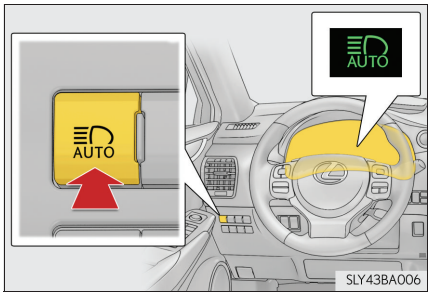
Activating the Automatic High Beam system

1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in AUTO or position.



2 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.



*: If equipped

High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on:

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

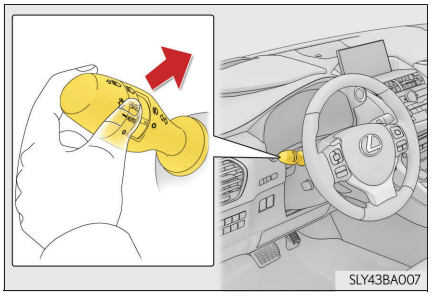
Turning the high beam on/off manually

Switching to low beam

Pull the lever to original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

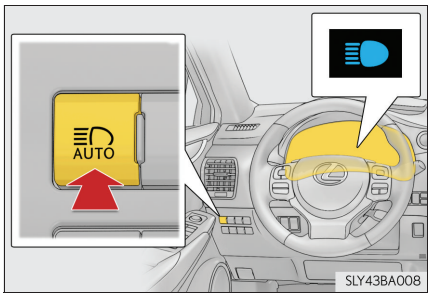


Switching to high beam

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



■ **The Automatic High Beam can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another
  - When oncoming or preceding vehicles are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - The movement and direction of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle only has operational lights on one side
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.
- In the situations below, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.
  - The system is not able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam.
  - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
  - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
  - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
  - The camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
  - The camera sensor temperature is extremely high.
  - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
  - Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or are not aimed properly.
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
  - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks, etc.).
  - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
  - There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
  - The back of a vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
  - The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
  - The vehicle is listing or titling, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
  - The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

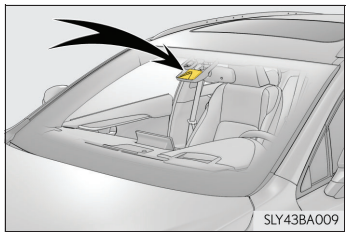
Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

NOTICE

■ Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not touch the camera sensor.
- Do not subject the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquids onto the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.



- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- Do not replace windshield with non-genuine windshield.
  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Fog light switch

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

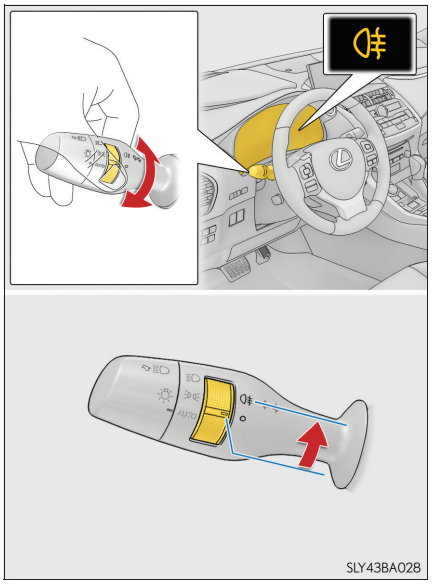
Operating instructions

▶ Rear fog light switch

Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to O .

Operating the switch ring again turns the rear fog light off.



▶ Front and rear fog light switch

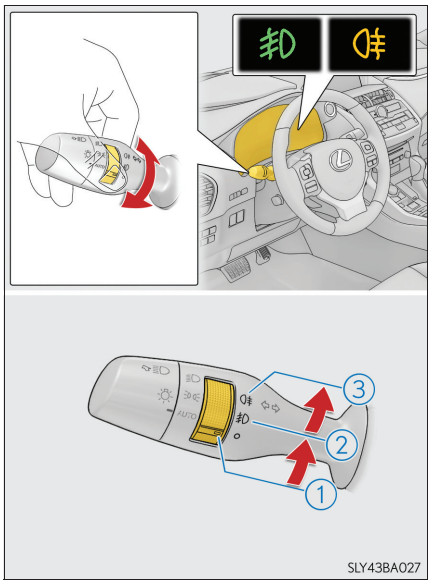
① Turns the front and rear fog lights off

② Turns the front fog lights on

③ Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog light off.



■ **Fog lights can be used when**

▶ Vehicles with a rear fog light only

The headlights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with a front and rear fog light

Front fog lights: The front position lights are turned on.
Rear fog light: The front fog lights are turned on.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

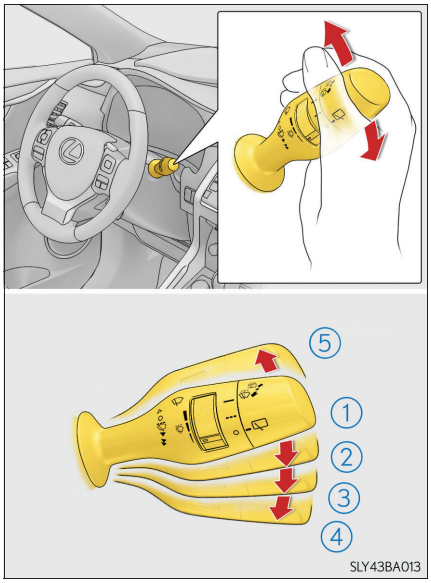
Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the wiper lever

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows.

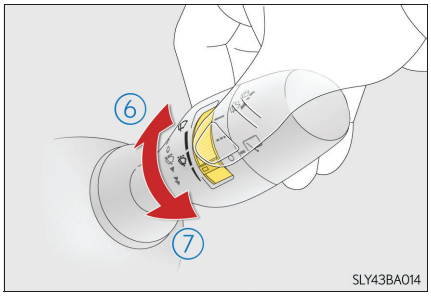
▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster

① ○ Off
② Intermittent operation
③ Low speed operation
④ High speed operation
⑤ Temporary operation



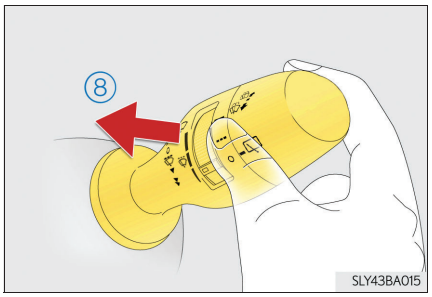
Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.

⑥ Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
⑦ Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



⑧ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

① ○ Off

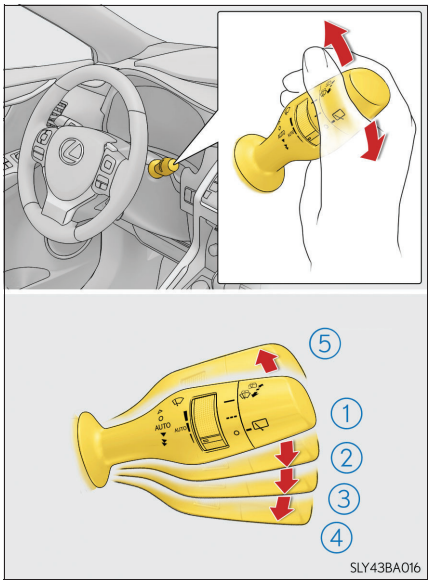
② AUTO Rain-sensing operation

③ ▼ Low speed operation

④ ▼▼ High speed operation

⑤ △ Temporary operation

When "AUTO" is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

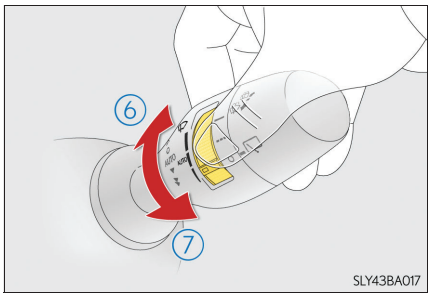


4 Driving

The sensor sensitivity can be adjusted when "AUTO" is selected.

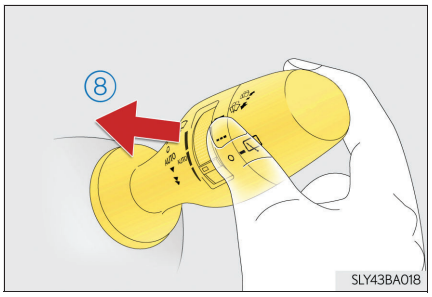
⑥ Increases the sensitivity

⑦ Decreases the sensitivity



⑧ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



■ **The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Dripping prevention wiper sweep (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, this function will not operate while driving.

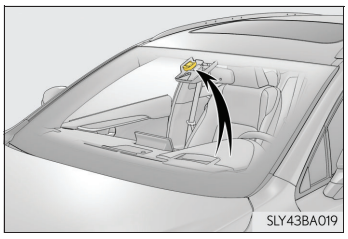
■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Vehicle speed affects the Intermittent wiper interval.

■ **Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

● The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs, etc. are present on the windshield.



● If the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.

● If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO mode.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked, if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid tank.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers, etc. do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ **Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

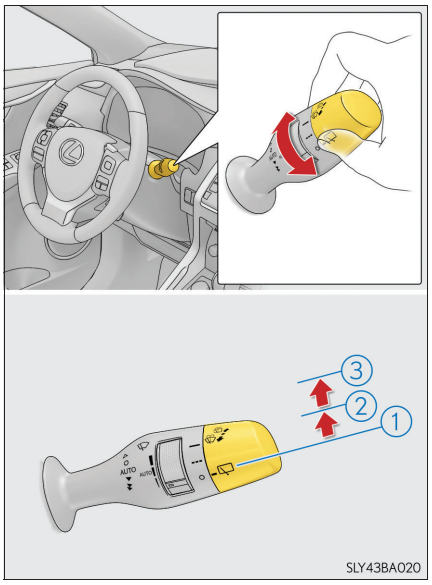
Do not leave the wipers on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Rear window wiper and washer

Operating the wiper lever

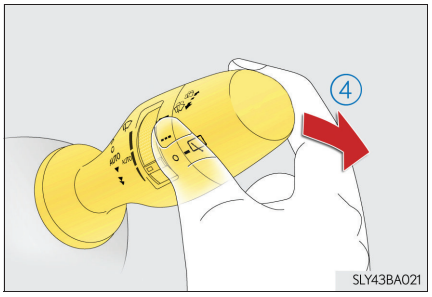
Turning the end of the lever turns on the rear window wiper and washer.

① ○ Off
② - - - Intermittent operation
③ — Normal operation



④ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

NOTICE

■ **When the rear window is dry**

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the wipers on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the engine switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

→P. 654

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

WARNING

■ **When refueling the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ **When refueling**

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

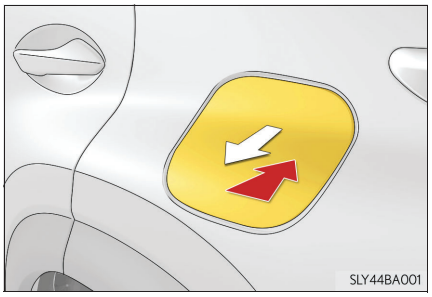
■ **Refueling**

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally, damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

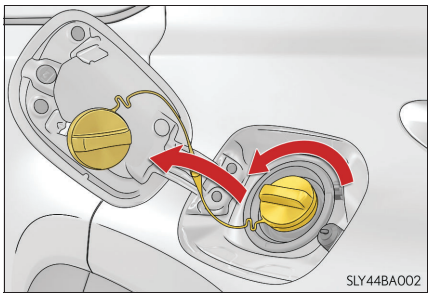
Opening the fuel tank cap

1 With the doors unlocked, press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Push inward and take your hand away to slightly open the fuel filler door. Then open the door fully by hand.



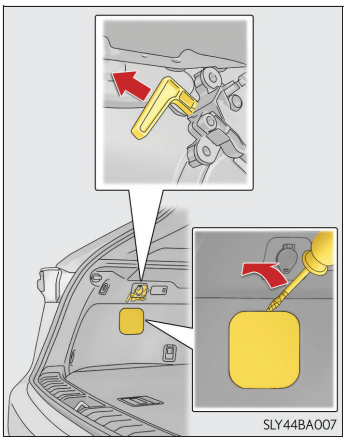
2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open and put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.



When the fuel filler door cannot be opened

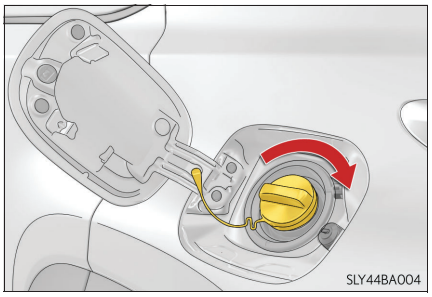
Remove the cover inside the luggage compartment by inserting a screwdriver. After removing the cover, pull the lever to unlock the fuel filler door and it will be ready to open as usual.

When removing the cover, to prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a tape.



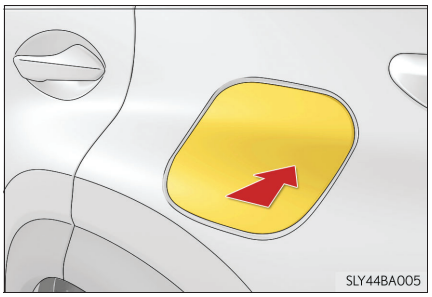
Closing the fuel tank cap

1 After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



2 Close the fuel filler door, and press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

When you lock the doors, the fuel filler door will lock also.



Fuel filler door lock condition

The fuel filler door may not be locked even when the vehicle's doors are locked in the following conditions:

- When operating the door lock button inside the vehicle
- When the automatic door locking system is operated (→P. 133)
- When the fuel filler door is closed after the vehicle's doors are locked

WARNING

When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

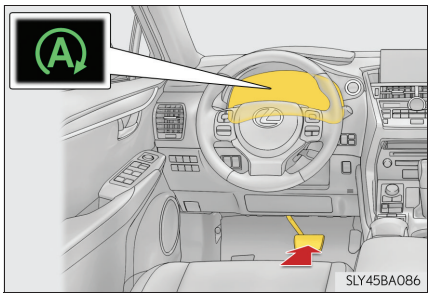
Stop & Start system*

The Stop & Start system stops and restarts the engine according to the brake pedal for stopping and starting the vehicle.

Stopping the engine

While driving in D or M, depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

The engine will stop and the Stop & Start indicator will come on.



Restarting the engine

Release the brake pedal.

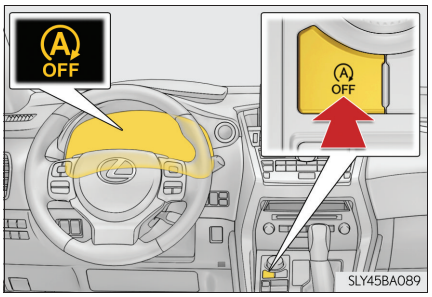
The engine will restart. The Stop & Start indicator will go off.

Disabling the Stop & Start system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on.

Pressing the switch again to re-enable the Stop & Start system.



*: If equipped

■ **If the Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed while the vehicle is stopped**

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will restart the engine. From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after Stop & Start system has been turned off), the engine will not be stopped.
- With the Stop & Start system disabled, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will re-enable the system but not stop the engine. From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after Stop & Start system has been turned on), the engine will be stopped.

■ **Operating conditions**

- The Stop & Start system is operational when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The engine is adequately warmed up.
  - The battery is sufficiently charged.
  - The driver's door is closed.
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened.
  - The hood is closed.
  - The accelerator pedal is not being depressed.
  - The shift lever is in D or M.
  - When the outside temperature is -5 °C (23 °F) or higher
  - When the steering wheel is not being operated
  - When the brake pedal is being depressed firmly
- In the following circumstances the engine may not be stopped by the Stop & Start system. This is not a malfunction of the Stop & Start system.
  - Engine coolant temperature or transmission fluid temperature is too low or too high.
  - The air conditioning system is being used when the vehicle interior temperature is extremely high such as after the vehicle was parked under the hot sun.
  - The battery is not sufficiently charged, or is undergoing a periodic recharge.
  - Due to traffic or other circumstances the vehicle is stopped repeatedly, resulting in the amount of time the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system to become excessively high.
  - The brake pedal is not depressed firmly.
  - The vehicle is stopped on a steep hill.
  - The brake booster vacuum is low.
  - A large amount of electricity is being used.
  - At high altitude.
  - When the outside temperature is low
  - When the steering wheel is being operated
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The hood is opened.

- In the following situations, the engine may start even without the brake pedal being released.
  - The brake pedal is pumped or strongly depressed.
  - The air conditioning system is being used or turned on.
  - The battery is not sufficiently charged.
  - The vehicle starts to roll on an incline.
  - The accelerator pedal is depressed.
  - A large amount of electricity is being used.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
  - When the steering wheel is being operated.
- In the following situations, it may take longer than normal for the Stop & Start system to activate.
  - The battery is discharged.
  - After the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected.
  - After a battery replacement.
  - The engine coolant temperature is low.

■ **Automatic reactivation of the Stop & Start system**

Even if the Stop & Start system is disabled by the Stop & Start cancel switch, the Stop & Start system will be automatically re-enabled by turning the engine switch off, waiting for 3 seconds or longer and then turning it to IGNITION ON mode.

■ **The Stop & Start system protection feature**

- When an excessively loud sound is being projected by the audio system, the audio system may be automatically cut off in order to maintain power for the Stop & Start system function. If it occurs, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or longer and then turn it to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode to re-enable the audio system.
- The audio system may not be activated when the battery terminals are disconnected and then reconnected. If it occurs, turn the engine switch off and then repeat the following operation twice to activate the audio system normally.
  - Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then to OFF.

■ **Hood**

If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine cannot be restarted by the Stop & Start system or by the automatic engine start function. Restart the engine with the engine switch operation. (→P. 221)

■ **Hill-start assist control**

- On a steep uphill grade, the vehicle may roll backward after hill-start assist control is released. In this situation, apply the parking brake and operate the brake pedal when putting the vehicle in motion.
- This system operates on flat surfaces as well as steep grades.
- When the engine is stopped due to Stop & Start system operation, the force required to depress the brake pedal may change, but this is not a malfunction.

■ **When to use the Stop & Start system**

Use the Stop & Start system when stopping the vehicle temporarily at red lights, intersections, etc. When stopping the vehicle for a longer period of time, turn off the engine completely.

■ **Stop & Start system warning buzzer/warning messages**

If the Stop & Start system is disabled or cancelled, or it has any abnormality; a warning message or buzzer will call a driver's attention.

■ **Air conditioning system while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

While the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the air conditioning system (cooling, heating and dehumidifying functions) is cancelled and it only blows air or stops blowing air. In order to prevent the air conditioning system from being cancelled, deactivate the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch.

■ **Displaying the Stop & Start system status**

→P. 109

■ **Replacing battery**

→P. 631

■ **If "Non-dedicated battery" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The Stop & Start system will not operate. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Adjusting the idling stop time**

From the various screens of (Stop & Start system information) (→P. 106) or (Settings display) (→P. 106) for the multi-information display, the engine stop time, by the Stop & Start system, can be adjusted.

▶ Settings from the (Stop & Start system information) screen

1 When the screen is displayed, press the meter control switch (→P. 106), press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switch, select , and then press the meter control switch .

2 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switch, select "Standard" or "Extended", press the meter operation switch .

▶ Settings from the (Settings display) screen

1 When the [Settings] screen is displayed, press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switch (→P. 106), select and then press the meter control switch .

2 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switch, select "Standard" or "Extended", press the meter control switch .

WARNING

■ **When the Stop & Start system is operating**

- Depress the brake pedal and set the parking brake when necessary, while the engine is stopped (while the Stop & Start indicator is on) due to the Stop & Start system. Unexpected accidents may occur due to the automatic engine start function.
- Do not leave the vehicle while the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on). Unexpected accidents may occur due to the automatic engine start function.
- Ensure that the engine is not stopped by the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area. The engine may restart due to the automatic engine start function, causing exhaust gases to collect and enter the vehicle and resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **When the Stop & Start system is not operating properly**

If any one of the following situations occurs, the Stop & Start system may not operate correctly, thus, please have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- While the driver's seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light flashes.
- Even when the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light remains off.
- Even when the driver's door is closed, the open door warning is displayed on the multi-information display, or the interior light comes on when the door position setting for interior lights is off.
- Even when the driver's door is opened, the open door warning is not displayed on the multi-information display, or the interior light does not come on when the door position setting for interior lights is on.

Dynamic radar cruise control*

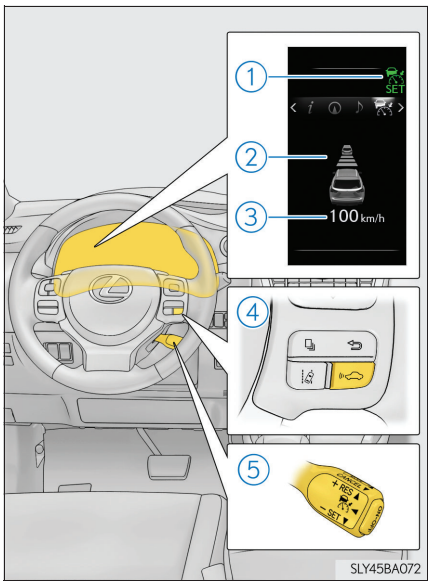
Summary of functions

Without accelerator pedal operation by the driver, in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates in accordance to the changes in speed of the preceding vehicle. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P. 272)
- Constant speed control mode (→P. 277)

① Indicators
② Display
③ Set speed
④ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
⑤ Cruise control switch

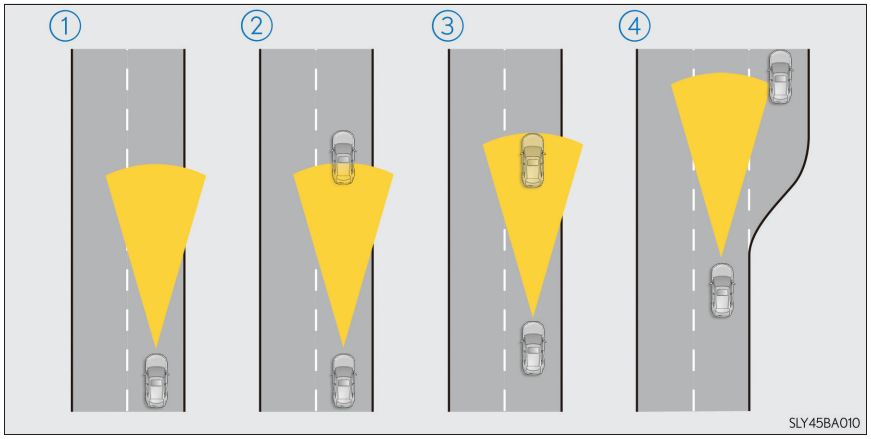


*: If equipped

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



① Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

② Example of deceleration cruising

When a preceding vehicle is driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

③ Example of follow-up cruising

When following a preceding vehicle is driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

④ Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

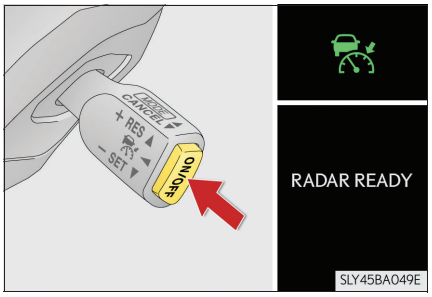
The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

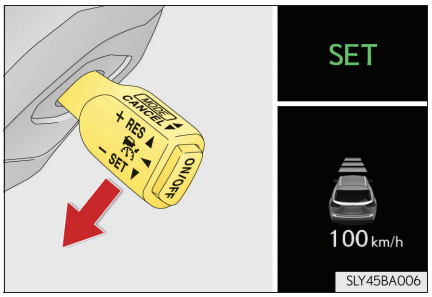
Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

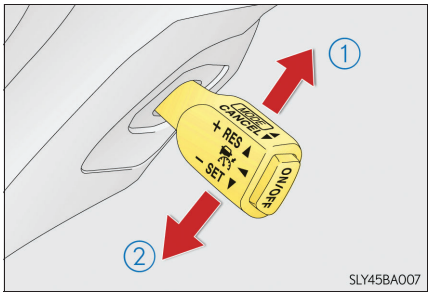
To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.

① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.



In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

▶ For Europe

• When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

• When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

▶ For except Europe

• When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

• When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 277), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

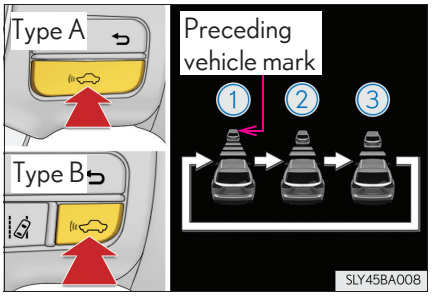
Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

① Long
② Medium
③ Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

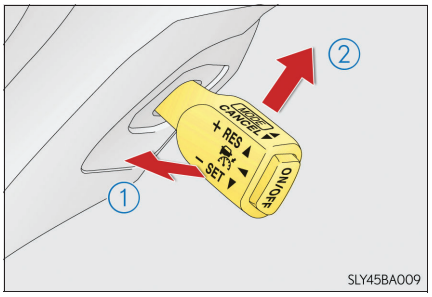
Canceling and resuming the speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

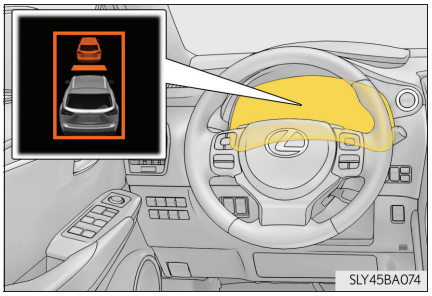
② Pushing the lever up resumes the speed control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).



Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



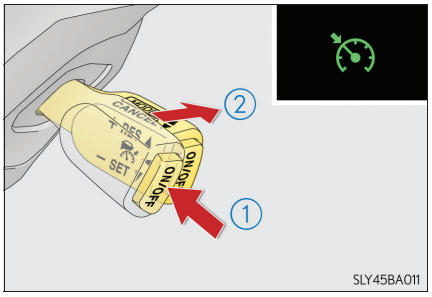
■ Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to dirt, etc.



① Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

② Switch to constant speed control mode.

(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately 1 second.)

Cruise control indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the engine switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 274

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 276

■ Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift switch. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- The sensor cannot detect properly because it is obstructed in some way.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.

When vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations, "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the "AUTO" mode or the high speed wiper operation position).

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode

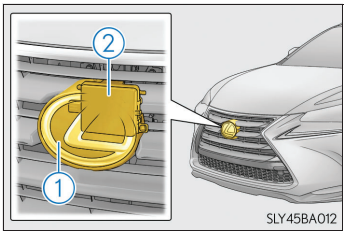
Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.

Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.

① Grille cover
② Radar sensor



Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ Certification for the radar sensor

▶ For vehicles sold in except Ukraine

CE

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR007 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR007 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR007 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR007 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR007 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR007 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR007 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR007 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR007 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR007 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR007 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR007 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR007 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR007 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR007 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR007 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR007 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR007 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka DNMWR007 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR007 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret DNMWR007 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че DNMWR007 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul DNMWR007 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je DNMWR007 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

▶ For Vehicles sold in Ukraine

For Vehicles sold in Ukraine
MODEL:DNMWR007



WARNING

■ **Before using dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

■ **Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ **To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control activation**

Switch the dynamic radar cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

WARNING

■ **Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control**

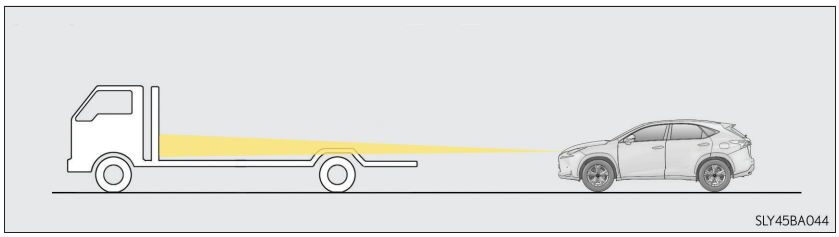
Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclers, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On sharp inclines or declines
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- Roads with continuous inclines and declines
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 276) will not be activated, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

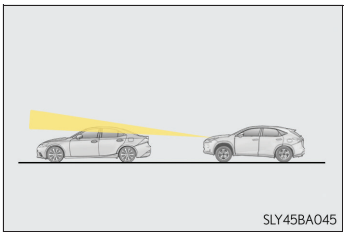
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor

WARNING

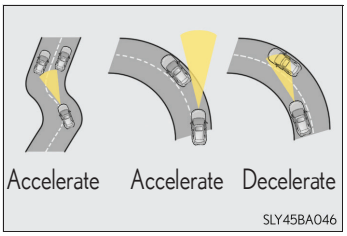
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)


SLY45BA045

■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

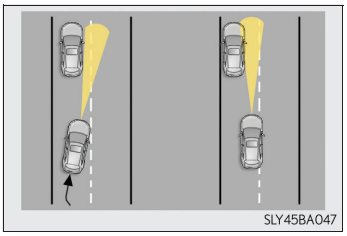
Operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal operation depending on the situation) as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



SLY45BA046

- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable


SLY45BA047

- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

WARNING

■ **Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the dynamic radar cruise control can function effectively.
Otherwise, the radar sensor may not detect correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- If the radar sensor needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

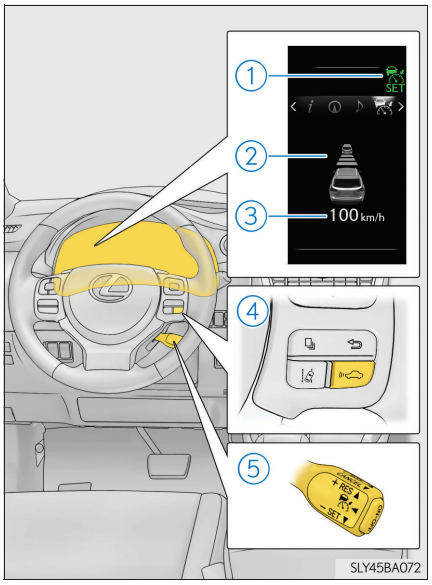
Summary of functions

Without accelerator pedal operation by the driver, in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops in accordance to the changes in speed of the preceding vehicle. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P. 287)
- Constant speed control mode (→P. 293)

① Indicators
② Display
③ Set speed
④ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
⑤ Cruise control switch

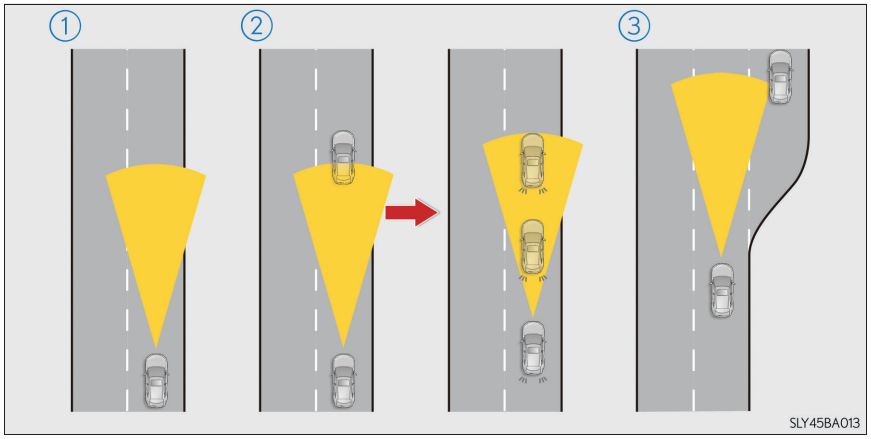


*: If equipped

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



① Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

② Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle is driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.
When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pushing the cruise control lever up or depressing the accelerator pedal will resume follow-up cruising.

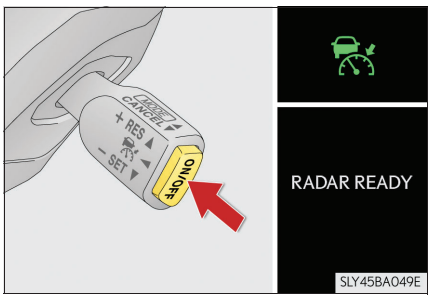
③ Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

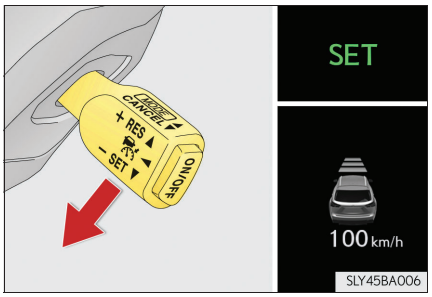
1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.



Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.



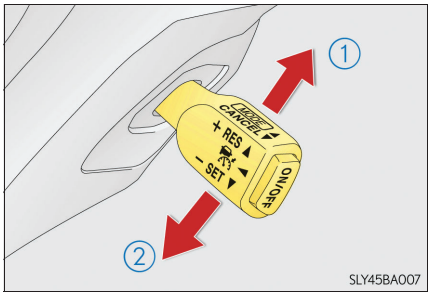
Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

While the vehicle is in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, if the lever is released when vehicle speed is less than 50 km/h (30 mph) and a vehicle ahead can be detected, the vehicle will start following the vehicle ahead at a set speed of 50 km/h (30 mph).

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



① Increases the speed

(Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

▶ For Europe

- When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

- When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

▶ For except Europe

- When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

- When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 293), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

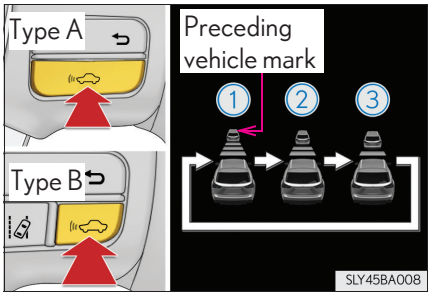
Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

① Long

② Medium

③ Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

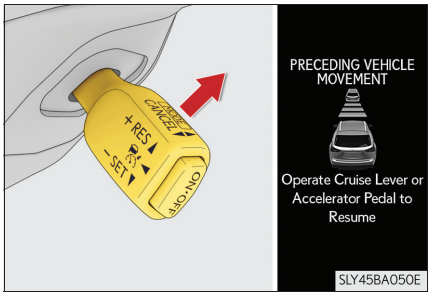
Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance will be about 3 m (10 ft.) to 5 m (16 ft.) regardless of the vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, push the lever up.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



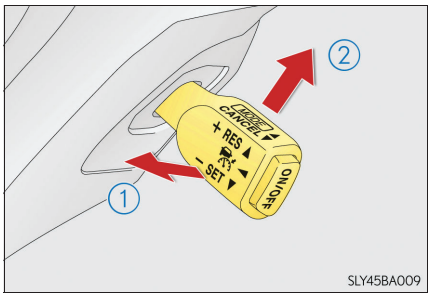
Canceling and resuming the speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

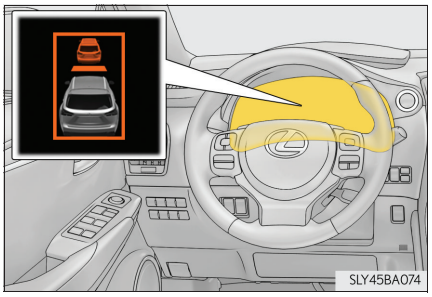
(When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

② Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.



However, when a vehicle ahead is not detected in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, cruise control does not resume when the actual vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or less. Also, when the vehicle is in constant speed control mode and the actual vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or less, cruise control does not resume as the set speed is cleared.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)



When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

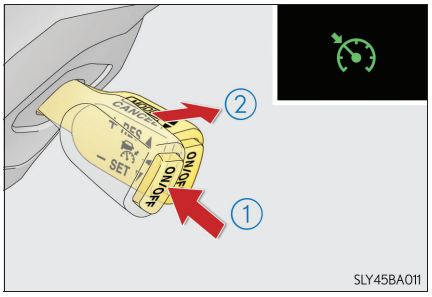
Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to dirt, etc.



① Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

② Switch to constant speed control mode.

(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately 1 second.)

Cruise control indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the engine switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 289

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 291

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift switch. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- The sensor cannot detect properly because it is obstructed in some way.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The back door or hood is opened.

When vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations, "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) when there are no vehicles ahead.
- The preceding vehicle leaves the lane when your vehicle is following at a vehicle speed below 40 km/h (25 mph). Otherwise, the sensor cannot properly detect the vehicle.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the "AUTO" mode or the high speed wiper operation position).

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

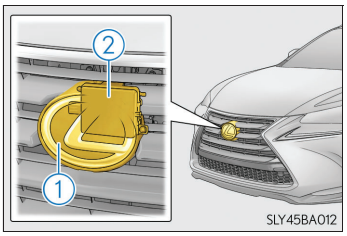
Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- Pre-crash braking is activated.

■ **Radar sensor and grille cover**

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is canceled if an obstruction is detected.

① Grille cover
② Radar sensor



■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **Certification for the radar sensor**

→P. 279

WARNING

■ **Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

■ **Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ **To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activation**

Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

WARNING

■ **Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

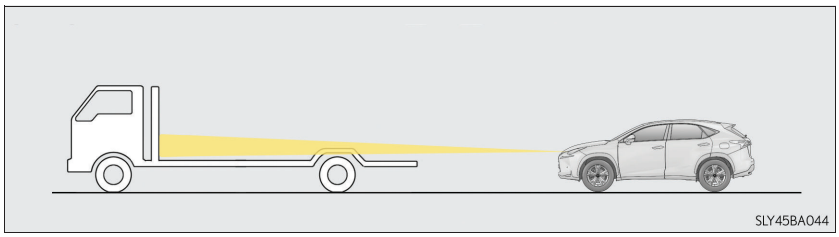
Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclers, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On sharp inclines or declines
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- Roads with continuous inclines and declines
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 292) will not be activated, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

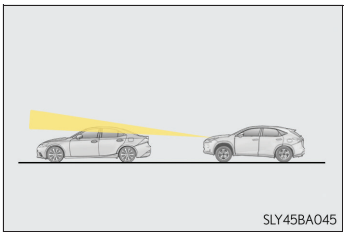
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor

WARNING

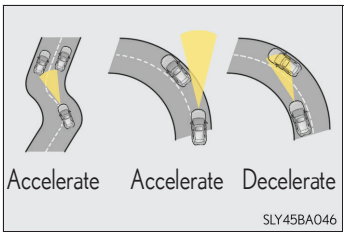
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)


SLY45BA045

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly

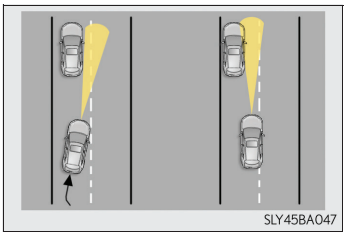
Operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal operation depending on the situation) as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



SLY45BA046

- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable


SLY45BA047

- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

WARNING

■ **Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can function effectively.
Otherwise, the radar sensor may not detect correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- If the radar sensor needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Cruise control*

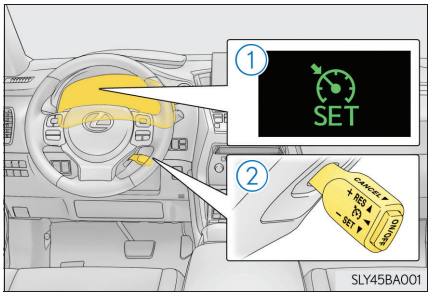
Summary of functions

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without operating the accelerator pedal.

Use the cruise control on freeways and highways.

① Indicators

② Cruise control switch

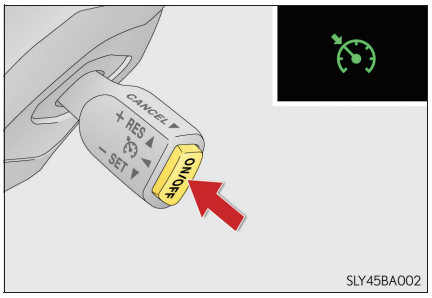


Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

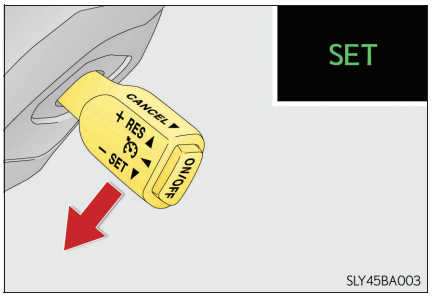
Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.



The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

*: If equipped

Adjusting the set speed

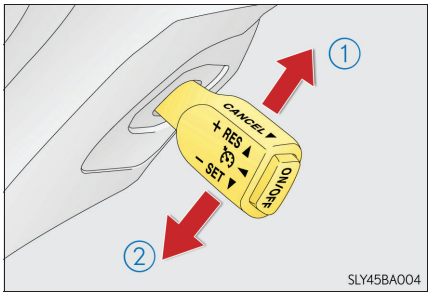
To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.

① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.



The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

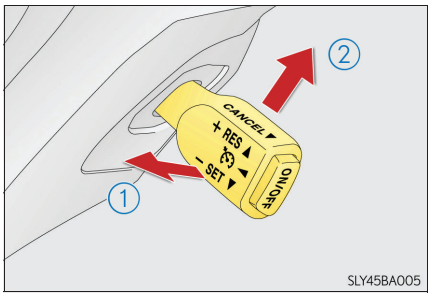
Canceling and resuming the constant speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

② Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).



■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D or range 4 or higher of M (NX200 only) has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift switch. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated by operating accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cancelation of cruise control**

Cruise control is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

■ **If "Cruise Control Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Press the "ON/OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

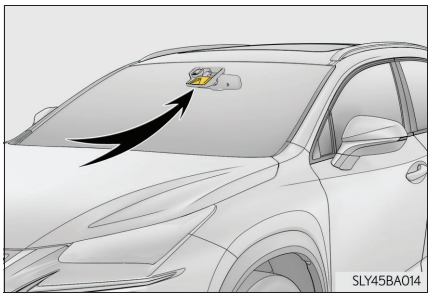
- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclers, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On sharp inclines or declines
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

LDA (Lane Departure Alert)*

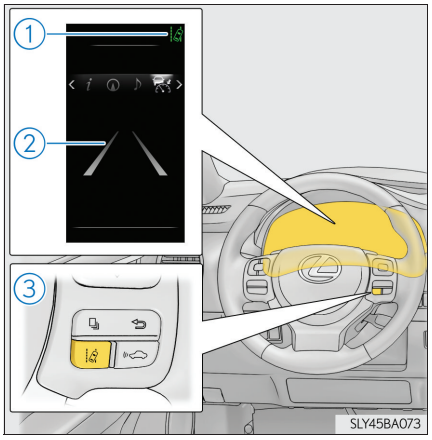
Summary of function

While driving on a highway or freeway that has white (or yellow) lane markers and few curves, a camera, which is located on the upper part of the windshield, uses this system to recognize the white (yellow) lane markers and when the driver has deviated from the lane. If the system judges that the vehicle has deviated from the current traffic lane, along with alerting the driver with a buzzer and indications in the multi-information display.

Lane recognition camera



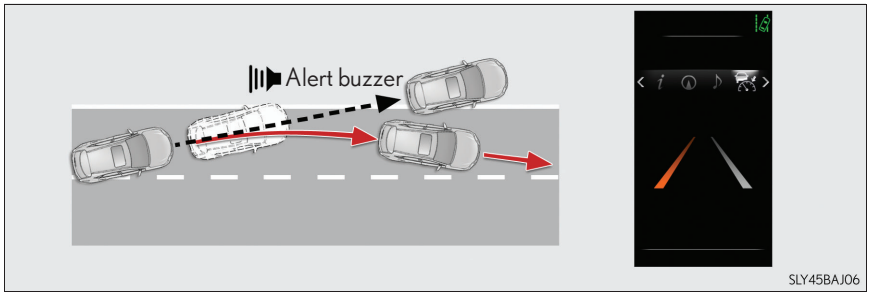
① Indicator
② Display
③ LDA switch



*: If equipped

Functions included with LDA

Lane deviation alert function



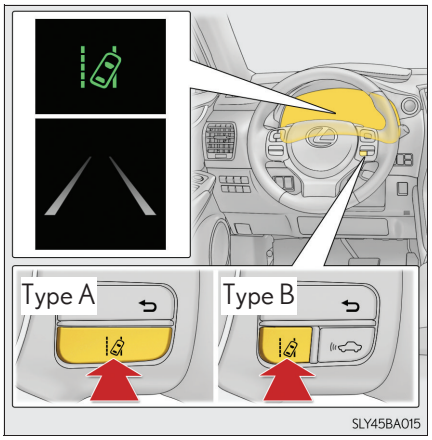
When the system judges that the vehicle is deviating from the current traffic lane, an alert buzzer sounds and it prompts cautions from the display screen of the multi-information display.

When the alert buzzer sounds, please check the surrounding road situation and return near the center of the white (yellow) lane markers by safely operating the steering wheel.

Turning the LDA on

Press the LDA switch to activate the LDA.

LDA indicator will come on and lane lines will be displayed on the multi-information display.
Press the switch again to deactivate the LDA.
The LDA will remain on or off even if the engine switch is turned off.



Operating conditions for the function

Lane deviation alert function

When the following conditions are satisfied, the function operates.

When the lane deviation alert function operates, lane lines is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P. 307)

- When the LDA is on. (→P. 305)
- When the vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- When the system recognizes white (yellow) lane markers.
- When the lane width is more than approximately 2.5 m (8.2 ft.).
- When turn signal lever is not operating.
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 100 m (328 ft.)
- When a system abnormality is not detected. (→P. 308)

Temporary cancelation of the function

Lane deviation alert function

In any of the following cases, the lane deviation alert function will be temporarily canceled. When the conditions, in which the cancelation occurred improves, the function will resume operations.

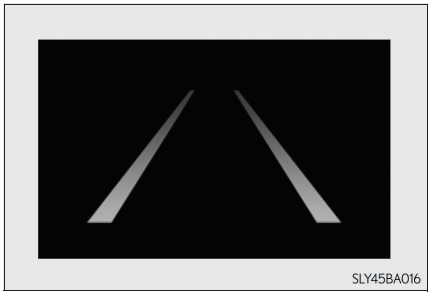
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating ranges of the function
- The turn signal lever is operated
- When the lane markers cannot be recognized while driving
- When the system malfunctions
- Immediately after the lane deviation alert operates
  The lane deviation alert function will not operate again for a several seconds after it has been activated, even if the vehicle leaves the lane again.
- When more than half of the vehicle body straddles the lane

Indication on the multi-information display

When the both lane lines turn white:

Indicates that both right and left lane markers are recognized.

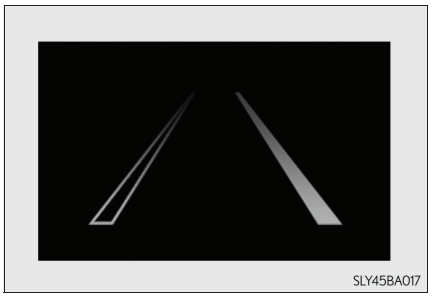
If the vehicle deviates from the traffic lane, the lane display on the side the vehicle has deviated from will flash in orange. (→P. 305)


SLY45BA016

When the either lane line turns white:

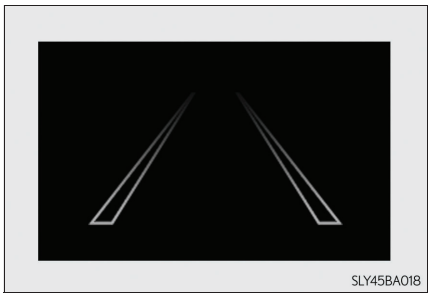
Indicates that the lane marker on the white-marked side is recognized.

If the vehicle deviates from the side of a lane with recognized lane markers, the lane line will flash in orange. (→P. 305)


SLY45BA017

When the inside of both lane lines are black:

Indicates that no lane markers are recognized or the LDA is temporarily canceled.


SLY45BA018

■ **If "Lane Departure Alert Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Even if the LDA switch is pressed, when the LDA indicator does not come on the system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Alert buzzer for lane deviation alert**

Depending on the audio system sound level or air conditioning fan noise while the audio system or air conditioning system is in use, it may be difficult to hear the alert buzzer.

■ **After the vehicle has been parked in the sun**

The LDA may not be available and a warning message will be displayed for a while after driving has started. When the temperature in the cabin decreases and the temperature around the lane recognition camera (→P. 304) becomes suitable for its operation, turn the LDA switch on again after a short time.

■ **If there are lane markers on only one side of the vehicle**

The lane deviation alert will not operate for the side on which lane markers could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly**

In the following situations, the lane recognition camera may be unable to recognize lane markers causing the lane deviation alert function to operate incorrectly. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers
- When driving through an area with no lane markers, such as a toll booth, a crossing or before a ticket checkpoint
- When the lane markers are broken, Botts' dots (raised pavement markers) or stones
- When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
- When the lane markers are yellow (These may be more difficult for the system to recognize compared to white markers.)
- When the lane markers are on a curb, etc.
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the camera lens

- When driving on roads that are branching or merging
- When driving on a hill
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are uneven
- When driving on rough or unpaved roads
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When lane markers are extremely narrow or extremely wide
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement
- When headlight brightness at nighttime is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned
- When receiving a side wind

■ **When changing the tires**

Depending on the tires used, such as snow tires, etc., sufficient performance may not be maintainable.

■ **Warning messages for the LDA**

Warning messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
Also, even if a warning message is displayed, it will not impede normal driving.

WARNING

■ **Before using the LDA**

Do not over rely on the LDA. The LDA does not drive the vehicle automatically, nor does it reduce the amount of care you need to take. As such, the driver must always assume full responsibility for understanding his/her surroundings, for operating the steering wheel to correct the driving line, and for driving safely. Also, take occasional rests from fatigue due to driving over long periods of time, etc.
Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an unexpected accident.

■ **To avoid operating the LDA by mistake**

Switch the LDA off using the LDA switch when not in use. (→P. 305)

■ **Situations unsuitable for LDA**

Do not use the LDA in any of the following situations.
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with tire chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment
- When a tire with a different structure, maker, brand, or tread pattern is used.
- When remain tread of the tire or the air pressure is insufficient
- When restructuring the suspension
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers (such as guardrails, a curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- When driving on snowy roads
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, sand, dust, etc.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane
- When driving on road surfaces that are slippery from rain, snow, etc.
- When driving in traffic lanes other than highways and freeway
- When driving through construction areas

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to or incorrect operation of the LDA

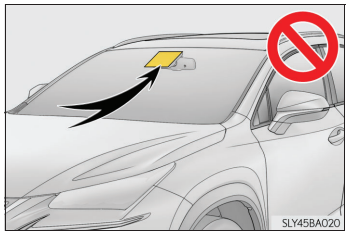
Observe the following to ensure that the LDA system functions correctly

- Do not modify the headlights or attach stickers to the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension or replace it with non-genuine parts.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or the grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not overload with luggage

■ Lane recognition camera

Observe the following to ensure that the LDA system functions correctly

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  Performance could be affected if the windshield is dirty, or if raindrops, condensation or ice are adhering to the windshield.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near the lane recognition camera.



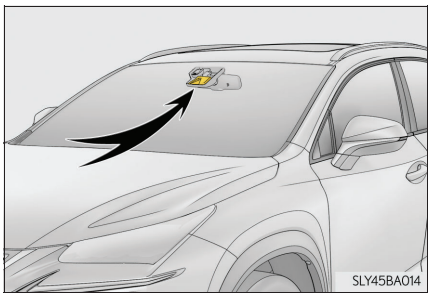
- Do not spill liquids onto the lane recognition camera.
- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.
- Do not install an antenna in front of the lane recognition camera.
- If the windshield area in front of the lane recognition camera is fogged up, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog from that area. (→P. 475)
  When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, be careful not to get any glass cleaner, etc., on the lens. Also, do not touch the lens.
  For lens repair, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the lane recognition camera or remove it.
  The direction of the lane recognition camera is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the lane recognition camera to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the lane recognition camera.
- Do not replace windshield with non-genuine windshield.
  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*

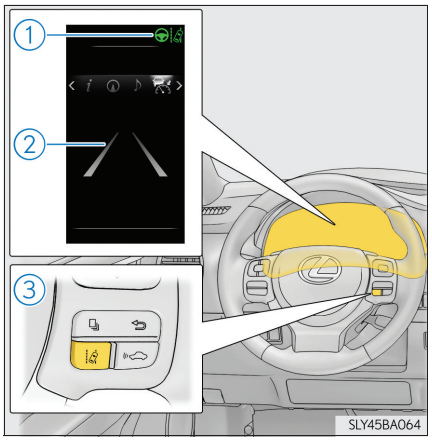
Summary of function

While driving on a highway or freeway that has white (or yellow) lane markers and few curves, a camera, which is located on the upper part of the windshield, uses this system to recognize the white (yellow) lane markers and when the driver has deviated from the lane. If the system judges that the vehicle has deviated from the current traffic lane, along with alerting the driver with a buzzer and indications in the multi-information display, it will provide assistance by operating the steering wheel to avoid further deviation from the marker lines.

Lane recognition camera



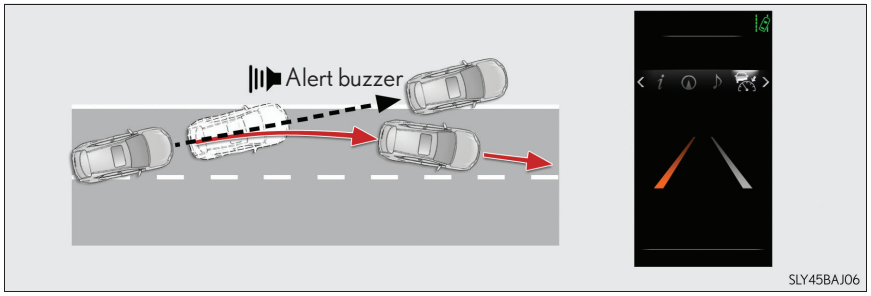
① Indicators
② Display
③ LDA switch



*: If equipped

Functions included with LDA

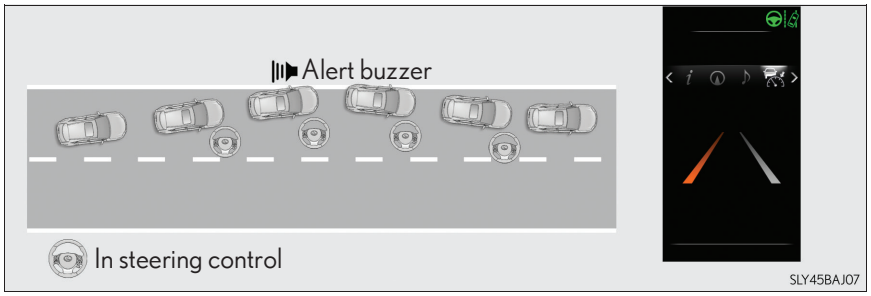
Lane deviation alert function



When the system judges that the vehicle is deviating from the current traffic lane, an alert buzzer sounds and it prompts cautions from the display screen of the multi-information display.

When the alert buzzer sounds, please check the surrounding road situation and return near the center of the white (yellow) lane markers by safely operating the steering wheel.

Steering control function



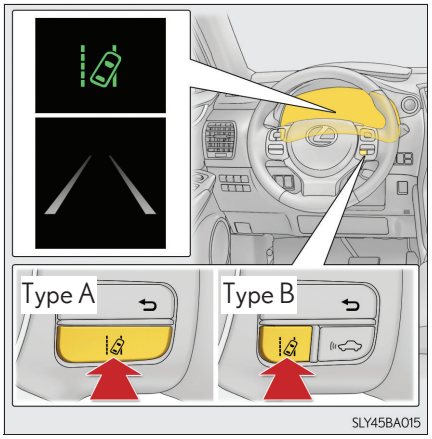
If the system judges that the vehicle has deviated from the current traffic lane, it is displayed in the multi-information display and steering force is supplied to the steering wheel by the steering control, providing required assistance in steering wheel operation to avoid further deviation from the marker lines.

In order to prevent over relying on the system, when the system does not operate the steering wheel and driving where hands are lightly supporting the steering wheel continues, a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

Turning the LDA on

Press the LDA switch to activate the LDA.

LDA indicator will come on and lane lines will be displayed on the multi-information display.
Press the switch again to deactivate the LDA.
When the engine switch is turned off, the LDA returns to off.



Operating conditions for each function

Lane deviation alert function

When the following conditions are satisfied, the function operates.

When the lane deviation alert function operates, lane lines is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P. 316)

- When the LDA is on. (→P. 314)
- When the vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- When the system recognizes white (yellow) lane markers.
- When the lane width is more than approximately 2.5 m (8.2 ft.).
- When turn signal lever is not operating.
- When the emergency flashers are not operating.
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 100 m (328 ft.)
- When a system abnormality is not detected. (→P. 317)

■ Steering control function

In addition to the operation conditions for the lane deviation alert function, when all of the following conditions are fulfilled, it operates.

- When settings for the "Steering Assist" in the "Settings display" of the multi-information display is set to "On" (→P. 319)
- When the vehicle has not slowed down more than a defined setting.
- When the steering wheel is operated with a steering force level that is not equivalent to changing lanes.
- When the ABS, VSC, TRC, or PCS (if equipped) is not operating.
- When intentional accelerator pedal operations are not performed.

Temporary cancelation of the functions

■ Lane deviation alert function

In any of the following cases, the lane deviation alert function will be temporarily canceled. When the conditions, in which the cancelation occurred improves, the function will resume operations.

- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating ranges of the function
- The turn signal lever is operated
- When the emergency flashers are operated
- When the lane markers cannot be recognized while driving
- When the system malfunctions
- Immediately after the lane deviation alert operates
  The lane deviation alert function will not operate again for a several seconds after it has been activated, even if the vehicle leaves the lane again.
- When more than half of the vehicle body straddles the lane

■ Steering control function

In addition to the temporary cancelation conditions of the lane deviation alert function, in any of the following cases the steering control function is temporarily canceled. When the conditions for which the cancelation occurred improves, the function will restart operations.

- When the vehicle has slowed down more than a defined setting.
- When the steering wheel is operated with a steering force level that is equivalent to changing lanes.
- When the ABS, VSC, TRC, or PCS (if equipped) is operating.
- When intentional accelerator pedal operations are performed.
- When the system judges that driving is done without hands
- Operations of the VSC and TRC have been turned off (→P. 346)

When the steering control function was canceled

When it is judged that there is a malfunction in the system relating to steering control function, the steering control function is canceled and "LDA Steering Assist Deactivated Warnings Available" is displayed on the multi-information display. However, it is possible that the lane deviation alert function operates.

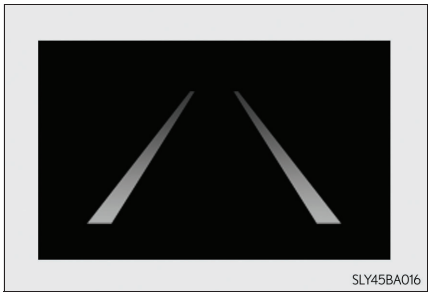
When the steering control function is canceled, it will not return unless "Steering Assist" is turned "On" again from the "Settings display" of the multi-information display (→P. 319) or the LDA switch is turned on again.

Indication on the multi-information display

When the both lane lines turn white:

Indicates that both right and left lane markers are recognized.

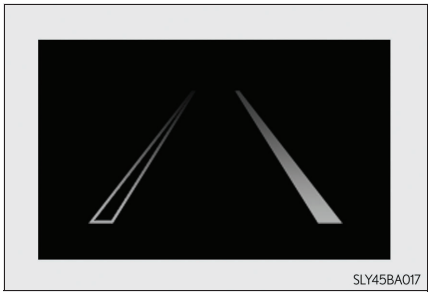
If the vehicle deviates from the traffic lane, the lane display on the side the vehicle has deviated from will flash in orange. (→P. 313)


SLY45BA016

When the either lane line turns white:

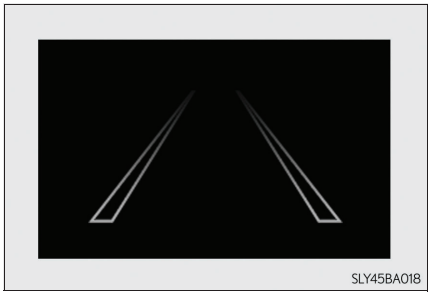
Indicates that the lane marker on the white-marked side is recognized.

If the vehicle deviates from the side of a lane with recognized lane markers, the lane line will flash in orange. (→P. 313)


SLY45BA017

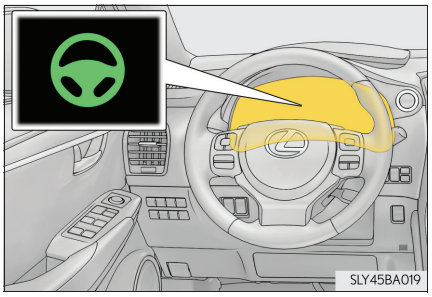
When the inside of both lane lines are black:

Indicates that no lane markers are recognized or the LDA is temporarily canceled.


SLY45BA018

Display while in steering control

In steering control, the steering control indicator will come on.



■ **If "Lane Departure Alert Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Even if the LDA switch is pressed, when the LDA indicator does not come on the system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **The steering control function**

There are cases where it may be difficult to sense the steering force on the steering wheel by the steering control, according to speed, the deviation situation, conditions of a road, etc.

■ **Alert buzzer for lane deviation alert**

Depending on the audio system sound level or air conditioning fan noise while the audio system or air conditioning system is in use, it may be difficult to hear the alert buzzer.

■ **After the vehicle has been parked in the sun**

The LDA may not be available and a warning message will be displayed for a while after driving has started. When the temperature in the cabin decreases and the temperature around the lane recognition camera (→P. 312) becomes suitable for its operation, turn the LDA switch on again after a short time.

■ **If there are lane markers on only one side of the vehicle**

The lane deviation alert will not operate for the side on which lane markers could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly**

In the following situations, the lane recognition camera may be unable to recognize lane markers causing the lane deviation alert function to operate incorrectly. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers
- When driving through an area with no lane markers, such as a toll booth, a crossing or before a ticket checkpoint
- When the lane markers are broken, Botts' dots (raised pavement markers) or stones
- When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
- When the lane markers are yellow (These may be more difficult for the system to recognize compared to white markers.)
- When the lane markers are on a curb, etc.
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the camera lens
- When driving on roads that are branching or merging
- When driving on a hill
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are uneven
- When driving on rough or unpaved roads
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When lane markers are extremely narrow or extremely wide
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement
- When headlight brightness at nighttime is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned
- When receiving a side wind

■ **When changing the tires**

Depending on the tires used, such as snow tires, etc., sufficient performance may not be maintainable.

■ **Warning messages for the LDA**

Warning messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
Also, even if a warning message is displayed, it will not impede normal driving.

■ **When turning on/off the steering control function**

From  "Settings display" (→P. 106) of the multi-information display, the steering control function can be turned on/off.

1 Pressing the ∧ or ∨ meter control switches (→P. 106), selects Steering Assist

2 With each press of ⊡ meter control switches, the control switches between "On" and "Off"

■ **Sensitivity adjustment for the lane deviation alert buzzer**

From  "Settings display" (→P. 106) of the multi-information display, the alert sensitivity for the alert buzzer when deviating from the lane can be adjusted.

1 Pressing the ∧ or ∨ meter control switches (→P. 106), selects Sensitivity

2 With each press of ⊡ meter control switches, the control switches between "High" and "Standard"

⚠ WARNING

■ **Before using the LDA**

Do not over rely on the LDA. The LDA does not drive the vehicle automatically, nor does it reduce the amount of care you need to take. As such, the driver must always assume full responsibility for understanding his/her surroundings, for operating the steering wheel to correct the driving line, and for driving safely. Also, take occasional rests from fatigue due to driving over long periods of time, etc.
Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an unexpected accident.

■ **Do not drive without holding the steering wheel**

While the steering control function is operating, when the system judges that the vehicle is being driven without holding the steering wheel, the steering control function is temporarily canceled, at the same time a warning message is displayed. (→P. 316)
Inappropriate steering wheel operations and/or negligent driving could lead to an unexpected accident. When driving, firmly hold the steering wheel and keep safe driving in mind.

■ **To avoid operating the LDA by mistake**

Switch the LDA off using the LDA switch when not in use. (→P. 314)

■ **Situations unsuitable for LDA**

Do not use the LDA in any of the following situations.
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with tire chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment
- When a tire with a different structure, maker, brand, or tread pattern is used.
- When remain tread of the tire or the air pressure is insufficient
- When restructuring the suspension
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers (such as guardrails, a curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- When driving on snowy roads
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, sand, dust, etc.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane
- When driving on road surfaces that are slippery from rain, snow, etc.
- When driving in traffic lanes other than highways and freeway
- When driving through construction areas

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to or incorrect operation of the LDA

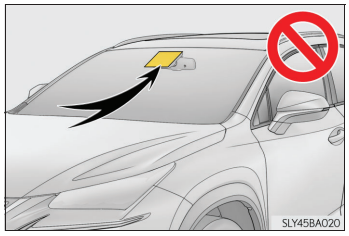
Observe the following to ensure that the LDA system functions correctly

- Do not modify the headlights or attach stickers to the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension or replace it with non-genuine parts.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or the grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not overload with luggage

■ Lane recognition camera

Observe the following to ensure that the LDA system functions correctly

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  Performance could be affected if the windshield is dirty, or if raindrops, condensation or ice are adhering to the windshield.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near the lane recognition camera.



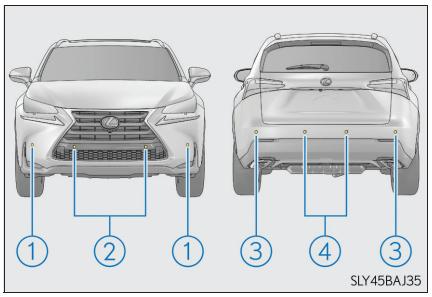
- Do not spill liquids onto the lane recognition camera.
- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.
- Do not install an antenna in front of the lane recognition camera.
- If the windshield area in front of the lane recognition camera is fogged up, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog from that area. (→P. 475)
  When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, be careful not to get any glass cleaner, etc., on the lens. Also, do not touch the lens.
  For lens repair, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the lane recognition camera or remove it.
  The direction of the lane recognition camera is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the lane recognition camera to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the lane recognition camera.
- Do not replace windshield with non-genuine windshield.
  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Lexus parking assist-sensor*

The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the displays and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Types of sensors

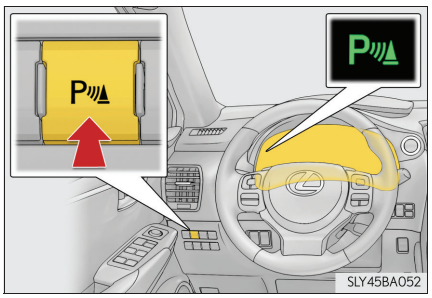
① Front corner sensors
② Front center sensors
③ Rear corner sensors
④ Rear center sensors



Lexus parking assist-sensor switch

Turns the Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

When on, the Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator comes on to inform the driver that the system is operational.



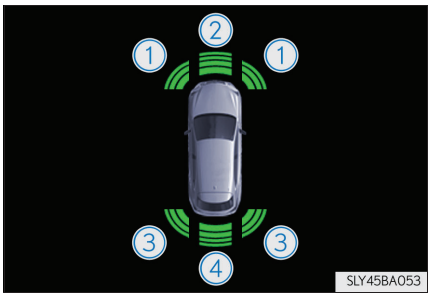
*: If equipped

Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the following displays inform the driver of the position and distance to the obstacle.

■ Multi-information display

① Front corner sensor operation
② Front center sensor operation
③ Rear corner sensor operation
④ Rear center sensor operation



■ Lexus Display Audio or navigation system screen (if equipped)

① Lexus parking assist-sensor display

When the rear view monitor system*, Lexus parking assist monitor* or Panoramic view monitor* is not displayed.

A graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 326)

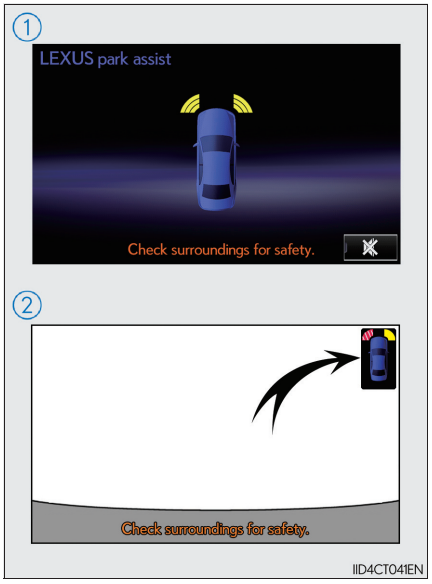
: Select to mute the buzzer sounds.

② Insert display

When the rear view monitor system*, Lexus parking assist monitor* or Panoramic view monitor* is displayed.

A simplified image is displayed on the right upper corner of the Lexus Display Audio and the navigation system screen when an obstacle is detected. (The illustration screen is for the rear view monitor and Lexus parking assist monitor. Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL" for the insert display when the panoramic view monitor displays)

*: If equipped



Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

■ Distance display

Sensors that detect an obstacle will illuminate continuously or blink.

Display*1	Insert display		Approximate distance to obstacle	
	Rear view monitor system and Lexus parking assist monitor	Panoramic view monitor	Front and rear center sensor	Front and rear corner sensor
 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)	 (blinking slowly)	Front center sensor: 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.) Rear center sensor: 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)	—
 (continuous)	 (blinking)	 (blinking)	60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)	60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)
 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)	 (blinking rapidly)	Front center sensor: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.) Rear center sensor: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 35 cm (1.2 ft.)	45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
 (blinking*2 or continuous*3)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	Front center sensor: Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.) Rear center sensor: Less than 35 cm (1.2 ft.)	Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.)

*1: The images may differ from that shown in the illustrations. (→P. 323)

*2: Multi-information display

*3: Lexus Display Audio or navigation system screen

■ Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer sounds faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle.
  When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously.
  - Front corner sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
  - Front center sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
  - Rear corner sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
  - Rear center sensors: Approximately 35 cm (1.2 ft.)
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.

Detection range of the sensors

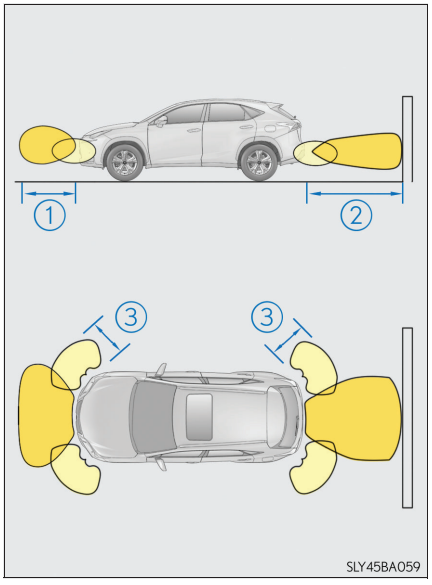
① Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

② Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

③ Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.



Setting up Lexus parking assist-sensor (vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio or navigation system)

You can change the buzzer sounds volume and the screen operating conditions when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ Lexus Display Audio system

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, and then select "Setup" on the screen.

2 Select "Vehicle", and then select "LEXUS park assist" on the screen.

3 Select the desired item.

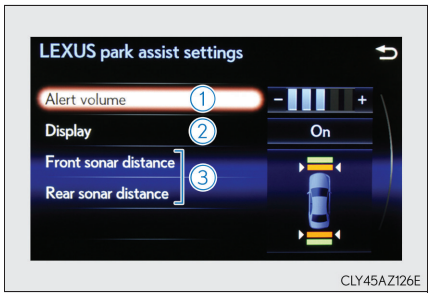
▶ Navigation system

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, and then select "Setup" on the screen.

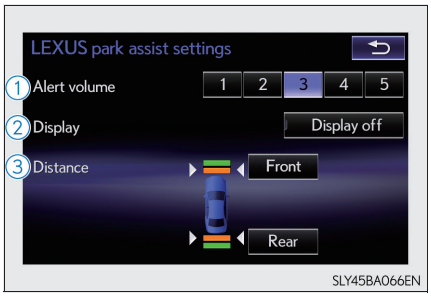
2 Select "Vehicle", and then select "LEXUS park assist" on the screen.

3 Select the desired item.

▶ Lexus Display Audio screen



▶ Navigation system screen



① The buzzer sounds volume can be adjusted.

② On or off can be selected for Lexus parking assist-sensor display.

③ Both the front or rear center sensors display and tone indication can be set.

■ **The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when**

● Front corner sensors:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in other than P.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph). (At any speed when the shift lever is in R)

● Front center sensors:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in other than P or R.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).

● Rear corner and rear center sensors:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in R.

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor display**

When an obstacle is detected while the rear view monitor system or Lexus parking assist monitor is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the upper corner of the screen even if the display setting has been set to off.

■ **Sensor detection information**

● The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's bumper.

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.) In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
- The sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- The sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
- If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.
- People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shape, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle
- The following situations may occur during use.
  - Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
  - Obstacles may not be detected if they are too close to the sensor.
  - There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the buzzer sounds.
  - Thin posts or objects lower than the sensor may not be detected when approached, even if they have been detected once.
  - It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.

If "Clean Parking Assist Sensor" is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In such cases, if it is removed from the sensor, the system should return to normal.
Also, due to the sensor being frozen at low temperatures, a malfunction display may appear or an obstacle may not be detected. If the sensor thaws out, the system should return to normal.

If "Parking Assist Malfunction" is displayed on the multi-information display

Depending on the malfunction of the sensor, the device may not be working normally. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Customization

Settings (e.g. buzzer sounds volume) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 326, 662)

WARNING

When using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

NOTICE

■ When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction, etc. Have the vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes, and a buzzer sounds when no obstacles are detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper collides with something.
- If the display shows continuously without beeping, except when the buzzer mute switch has been turned on.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
  If the error occurs even if there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

Rear view monitor system*

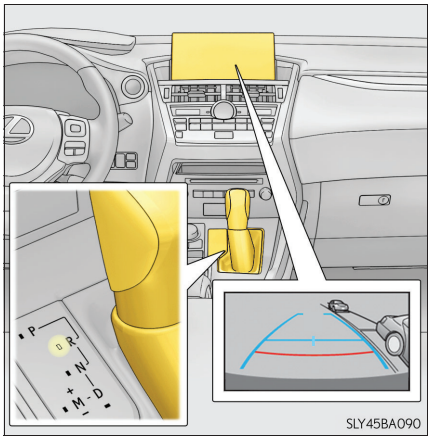
The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle with fixed guide lines on the screen while backing up, for example while parking.

The screen illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the screen.

The rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in R and the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

The rear view monitor system will be deactivated when the shift lever is in any position other than R.

When the shift lever is shifted to R and any mode button (such as "MENU") is pressed, the rear view monitor system is canceled, and the screen is switched to the mode of the button that was pressed.

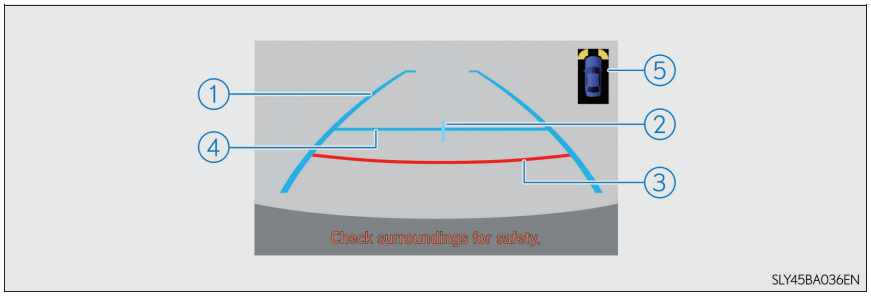


*: If equipped

Using the rear view monitor system

■ Screen description

The rear view monitor system screen will be displayed if the shift lever is shifted to R while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.



① Vehicle width guide line

Displays a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up.
The displayed width is wider than the actual vehicle width.

② Vehicle center guide line

This lines indicate the estimated vehicle center on the ground.

③ Distance guide line

Displays a point approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) from the edge of the bumper.

④ Distance guide line

Displays a point approximately 1 m (3 ft.) (blue) from the edge of the bumper.

⑤ Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

If an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is on, a display is shown in the top right corner of the screen.

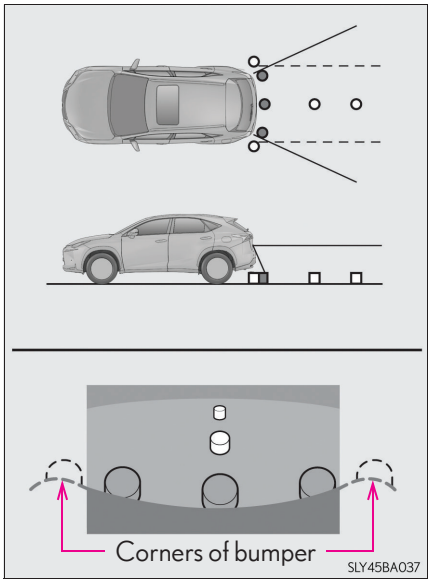
Rear view monitor system precautions

Area displayed on screen

The rear view monitor system displays an image of the view from the bumper of the rear area of the vehicle.

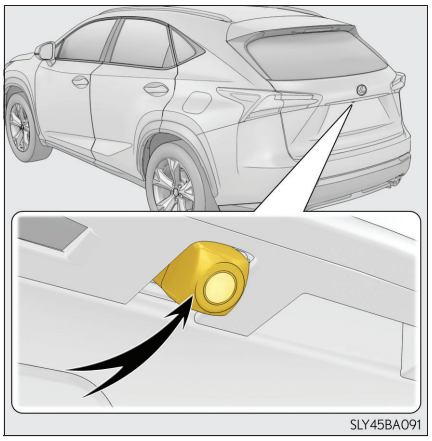
The image adjustment procedure for the rear view monitor system screen is the same as the procedure for adjusting the Lexus Display Audio screen. (→P. 394)

- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation conditions.
- Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be displayed.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- Items which are located higher than the camera may not be displayed on the monitor.



■ **Rear view monitor system camera**

The camera for the rear view monitor system is located as shown in the illustration.



● Using the camera

If dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud etc.) is adhering to the camera, it cannot transmit a clear image. In this case, flush it with a large quantity of water and wipe the camera lens clean with a soft and wet cloth.

■ **Differences between the screen and the actual road**

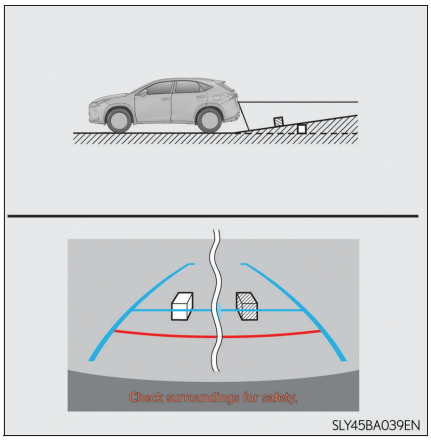
The distance guide lines and the vehicle width guide lines may not actually be parallel with the dividing lines of the parking space, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distances between the vehicle width guide lines and the left and right dividing lines of the parking space may not be equal, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distance guide lines give a distance guide for flat road surfaces. In any of the following situations, there is a margin of error between the fixed guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

● When the ground behind the vehicle slopes up sharply

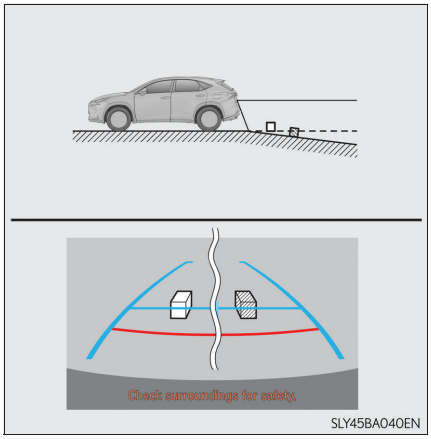
The distance guide lines will appear to be closer to the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be farther away than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guide lines and the actual distance/course on the road.



SLY45BA039EN

● When the ground behind the vehicle slopes down sharply

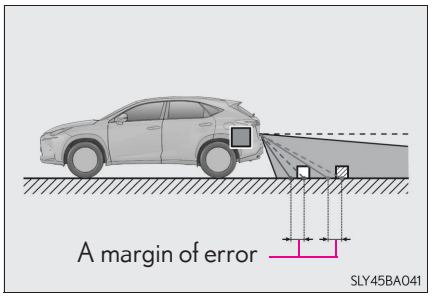
The distance guide lines will appear to be farther from the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be closer than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guide lines and the actual distance/course on the road.



SLY45BA040EN

● When any part of the vehicle sags

When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the fixed guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

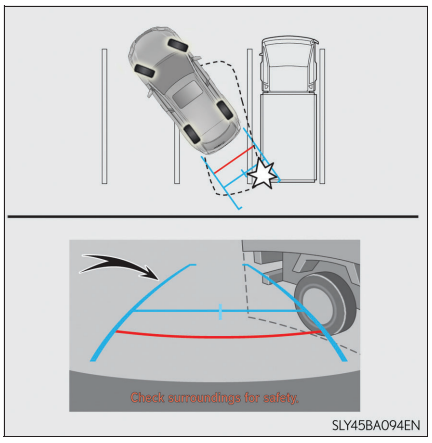


■ When approaching three-dimensional objects

The distance guide lines are displayed according to flat surfaced objects (such as the road). It is not possible to determine the position of three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) using the vehicle width guide lines and distance guide lines. When approaching a three-dimensional object that extends outward (such as the flatbed of a truck), be careful of the following.

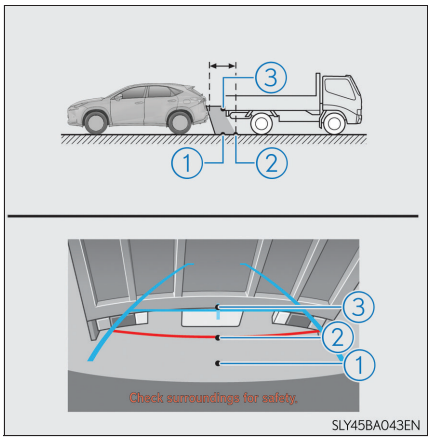
● Vehicle width guide lines

Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. In the case shown below, the truck appears to be outside of the vehicle width guide lines and the vehicle does not look as if it hits the truck. However, the rear body of the truck may actually cross over the vehicle width guide lines. In reality if you back up as guided by the vehicle width guide lines, the vehicle may hit the truck.



● Distance guide lines

Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. On the screen, it appears that a truck is parking at point ②. However, in reality if you back up to point ①, you will hit the truck. On the screen, it appears that ① is closest and ③ is farthest away. However, in reality, the distance to ① and ③ is the same, and ② is farther than ① and ③.



Things you should know

■ If you notice any symptoms

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the likely cause and the solution, and re-check.

If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Likely cause	Solution
❑ The image is difficult to see	
• The vehicle is in a dark area • The temperature around the lens is either high or low • The outside temperature is low • There are water droplets on the camera • It is raining or humid • Foreign matter (mud, etc.) is adhering to the camera • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.) The procedure for adjusting the picture quality of the rear view monitor system is the same as the procedure for adjusting the Lexus Display Audio screen. (→P. 394)
❑ The image is blurry	
Dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud, etc.) is adhering to the camera.	Flush the camera with a large quantity of water and wipe the camera lens clean with a soft and wet cloth.
❑ The image is out of alignment	
The camera or surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
❑ The fixed guide lines are very far out of alignment	
The camera position is out of alignment.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
• The vehicle is tilted (there is a heavy load on the vehicle, tire pressure is low due to a tire puncture, etc.) • The vehicle is used on an incline.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When using the rear view monitor system**

The rear view monitor system is a supplemental device intended to assist the driver when backing up. When backing up, be sure to visually check all around the vehicle both directly and using the mirrors before proceeding.

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend on the rear view monitor system entirely when backing up. The image and the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state.
  Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- Be sure to back up slowly, depressing the brake pedal to control vehicle speed.
- The instructions given are only guide lines.
  When and how much to turn the steering wheel will vary according to traffic conditions, road surface conditions, vehicle condition, etc. when parking. It is necessary to be fully aware of this before using the rear view monitor system.
- When parking, be sure to check that the parking space will accommodate your vehicle before maneuvering into it.
- Do not use the rear view monitor system in the following cases:
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires
  - When the back door is not closed completely
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes
- In low temperatures, the screen may darken or the image may become faint. The image could distort when the vehicle is moving, or you may become unable to see the image on the screen. Be sure to visually check all around the vehicle both directly and using the mirrors before proceeding.
- If the tire sizes are changed, the position of the fixed guide lines displayed on the screen may change.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distances between objects and pedestrians that appear in the image displayed on the screen will differ from the actual distances. (→P. 333)

NOTICE

■ How to use the camera

● The rear view monitor system may not operate properly in the following cases.

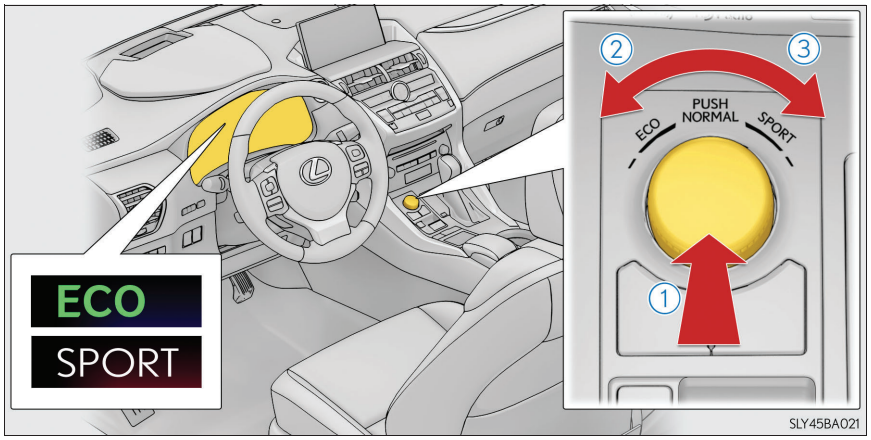
- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- When cleaning the camera lens, flush the camera with a large quantity of water and wipe it with a soft and wet cloth. Strongly rubbing the camera lens may cause the camera lens to be scratched and unable to transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or a glass coating to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

● Do not expose the camera to strong impact as this could cause a malfunction. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving conditions.

▶ Vehicles without Adaptive Variable Suspension system



① Normal mode

For normal driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when selected to Eco drive mode or sport mode.

② Eco drive mode

Use Eco drive mode to help achieve low fuel consumption during trips that involve frequent accelerating.

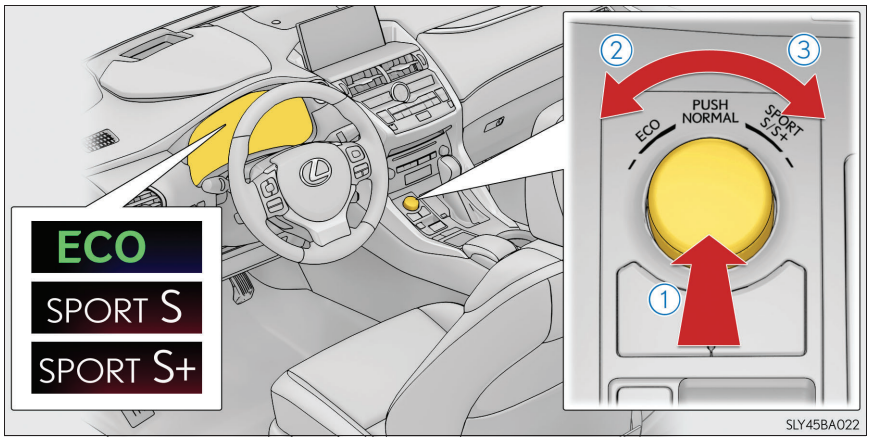
When not in Eco drive mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, “ECO” indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

③ Sport mode

Assists acceleration response by controlling the transmission and steering. Suitable for when precise handling is desirable, for example when driving on mountain roads.

When not in sport mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, “SPORT” indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

▶ Vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system



① Normal mode

For normal driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when selected to Eco drive mode or sport mode.

② Eco drive mode

Use Eco drive mode to help achieve low fuel consumption during trips that involve frequent accelerating.

When not in Eco drive mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, "ECO" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

③ Sport mode

- SPORT S mode

  Assists acceleration response by controlling the transmission. Suitable for when powerful acceleration is desirable.

  When not in SPORT S mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, "SPORT S" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

- SPORT S+ mode

  Helps to ensure steering performance and driving stability by simultaneously controlling the steering and suspension in addition to the transmission. Suitable for sporty driving.

  When in SPORT S mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, "SPORT S+" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ **Sport mode automatic deactivation**

Sport mode is automatically deactivated if the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode.

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

VSC + (Vehicle Stability Control +)

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.
Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

Hill-start assist control

Helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an incline.

◆ **EPS (Electric Power Steering)**

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

◆ **Dynamic Torque Control AWD system (if equipped)**

Automatically switches from front-wheel drive to all-wheel drive (AWD) according to the driving conditions, helping to ensure reliable handling and stability. Examples of conditions where the system will switch to AWD are when cornering, going uphill, starting off or accelerating, and when the road surface is slippery due to snow, rain, etc.

◆ **AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system) (if equipped)**

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions, this system helps riding comfort with superior steering stability, and helps good vehicle posture. (→P. 341)

◆ **PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)**

→P. 350

◆ **Emergency brake signal**

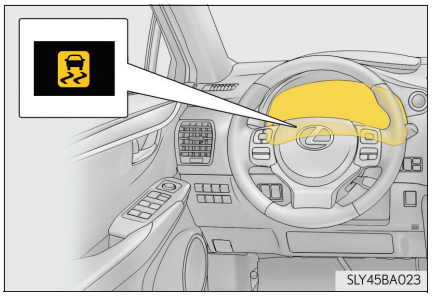
When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

◆ **BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)**

→P. 359

When the TRC/VSC systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC systems are operating.

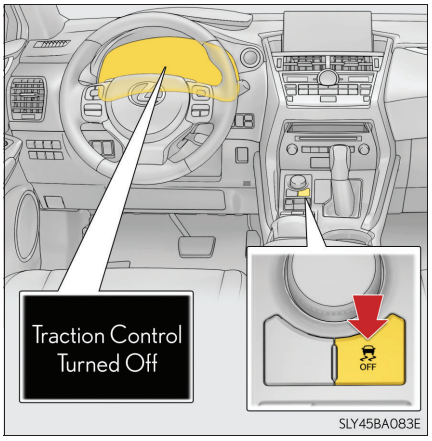


Disabling the TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing  to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release .

The "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display. Press  again to turn the system back on.



■ **Turning off both TRC and VSC systems**

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold  for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator will come on and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press  again to turn the systems back on.

*: On vehicles with pre-crash safety system, pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking will also be disabled. The PCS warning light will come on and the message will be shown on the multi-information display. (→P. 354)

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if  has not been pressed**

TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC and hill-start assist control systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC and VSC systems**

After turning the TRC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases

  If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is moved to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- Approximately 2 seconds elapse after the brake pedal is released.

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following three conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed in a manner that cause the system to judge from the vehicle deceleration that this is a sudden braking operation.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

WARNING

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick road.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions**

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ **TRC may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ **Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when**

- Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ **When the TRC and VSC are activated**

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ **When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off**

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ **Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ **Handling of tires and the suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

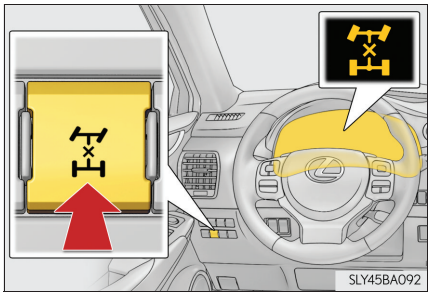
All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models)

All-wheel drive lock mode can be used when a large amount of drive power needs to be applied to all the wheels, such as when the vehicle gets stuck in mud and you need to free it.

Press the switch.

The torque of the engine is distributed to the rear wheels to the maximum extent possible in accordance with driving conditions.

Pressing the switch again cancels all-wheel drive lock mode and returns the Dynamic Torque Control AWD system to normal mode. (→P. 344)



■ **All-wheel drive lock mode can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Automatic release for the All-wheel drive lock mode**

- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the brakes are applied to ensure the ABS and VSC systems operate effectively.
- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

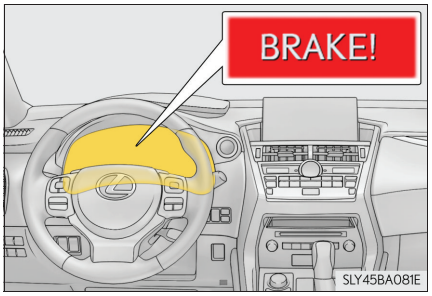
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)*

When the radar sensor detects possibility of a frontal collision, brakes are automatically engaged to lessen impact as well as vehicle damage.

The alert timing for the pre-crash safety system can be changed or turned ON/OFF, as necessary, by operating the switch. (→P. 351)

Pre-crash warning

When a high possibility of a frontal collision is detected, a buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



Pre-crash brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-crash braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed.

Suspension control (vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system)

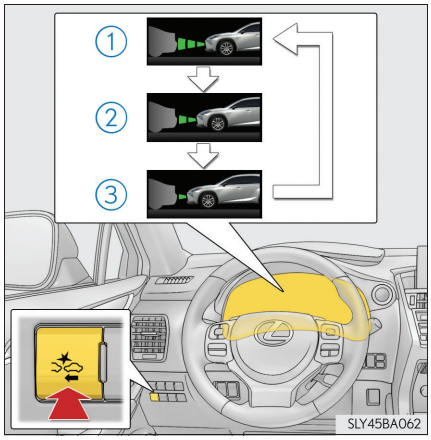
When the system determines that there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the operation of Adaptive Variable Suspension system (→P. 344) optimally controls the damping force of the shock absorber.

*: If equipped

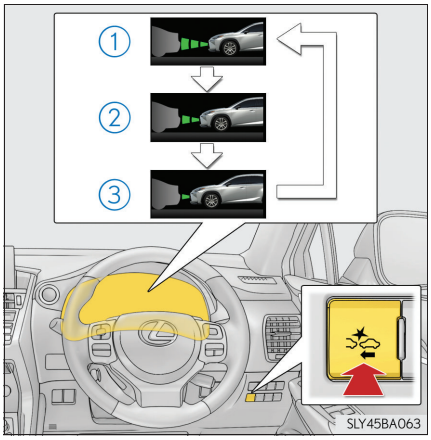
Changing the pre-crash safety system

■ Changing the alert timing of the pre-crash safety system

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



Each time the PCS switch is pressed, the response to the distance changes as follows.

① Far

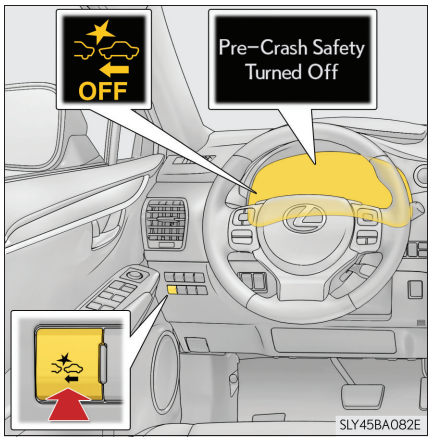
② Middle*

③ Near

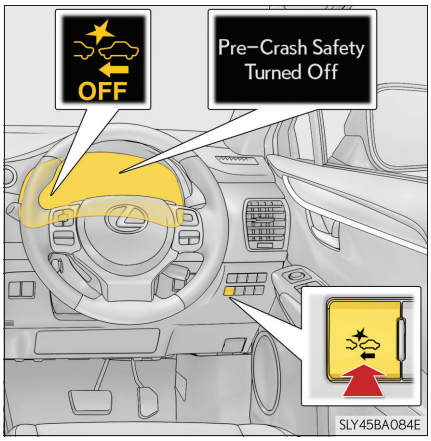
*: Default setting

■ Turning off the pre-crash safety system

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



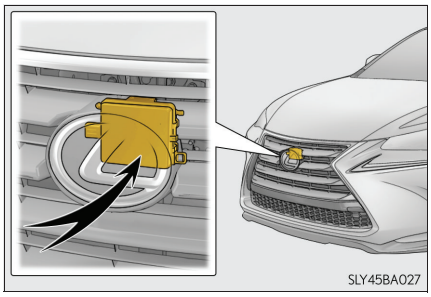
Press the PCS switch for 3 seconds or more seconds.

The PCS warning light turns on and a message is shown on the multi-information display.

To turn on the system, press the PCS switch again. The system is set to ON each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Radar sensor

The radar sensor detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.



■ **The pre-crash safety system is operational when**

The pre-crash safety system is on (→P. 351) and the following conditions are met:

- Pre-crash safety warning:
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 15 km/h (10mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 10 km/h (7mph).
- Pre-crash brake assist:
  - The VSC is not turned off.
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
- Pre-crash braking:
  - The VSC is not turned off.
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 10 km/h (7 mph).
- Suspension control (vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system)
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 5 km/h (4 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19mph).

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of a collision**

In any of the following situations where the frontal area of the radar sensor is interrupted, the radar sensor may detect possibility of a frontal collision and the system may be activated.

- When passing by an oncoming vehicle in a curve or a turn to the right or the left
- When rapidly approaching an obstacle ahead (e.g. preceding vehicle, toll gate barrier, etc.)
- When there is a structural object (billboard, low ceiling, fluorescent light, etc.) above the uphill road ahead
- When driving on a narrow road or through under a low overhead structure (bridge, tunnel, fly-under, etc.)
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When there is a metal object, bump, or protrusion on the road surface
- When vehicle's front part is raised or lowered depending on loading conditions
- When the direction of radar sensor is misaligned by strong impact applied on an area around the radar sensor, etc.
- When there is an obstacle (guard rail, etc.) by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When the front of your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by towing a trailer or putting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the brakes may be applied with a force greater than normal.

■ **Obstacles not detected**

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as traffic cones. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ **Situations in which the pre-crash safety system does not function properly**

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

- On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- When your vehicle is skidding with the VSC system off
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When the radar sensor moves off position due to its surrounding area being subjected to a strong impact
- Due to greatly turning the wheel when an obstacle suddenly appears ahead

■ **Automatic cancelation of the pre-crash safety system**

When a malfunction occurs due to sensor contamination, etc., that results in the sensors being unable to detect obstacles, the pre-crash safety system will be automatically disabled. In this case, the system will not activate even if there is a collision possibility.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system, or if the system is temporarily unavailable**

The PCS warning light flashes and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When the TRC and VSC are turned off**

- When the TRC and VSC operations are turned off (→P. 346), the pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking are also turned off. However, the alert function operates.
- The PCS warning light turns on and the "VSC Turned Off Pre-Crash Brake System Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display.

■ Certification

▶ For vehicles sold in except Ukraine

CE

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR007 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR007 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR007 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR007 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR007 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR007 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR007 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR007 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR007 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR007 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR007 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR007 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR007 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR007 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR007 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR007 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR007 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR007 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka DNMWR007 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR007 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret DNMWR007 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че DNMWR007 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul DNMWR007 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je DNMWR007 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

▶ For Vehicles sold in Ukraine

For Vehicles sold in Ukraine
MODEL:DNMWR007



⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the pre-crash safety system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

Do not use the pre-crash safety system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen damage or injuries in all cases. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

This system has been designed to help avoid and reduce the impact of collisions. However, the system operates differently depending on the situation (→P. 353). As a result, the same level of performance may not be expected in all cases. Also, the pre-crash safety brakes may not operate if the driver is depressing the brake pedal or turning the steering wheel, as the system will determine such conditions as collision avoidance operations.

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-crash safety system can function effectively. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and front grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may not work normally or malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- If the radar sensor needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system**

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-crash safety system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-crash safety system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgement
  When attempting to estimate the possibility of a collision, the only data available to the pre-crash safety system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-crash safety system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely without appropriate operations performed by the driver. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

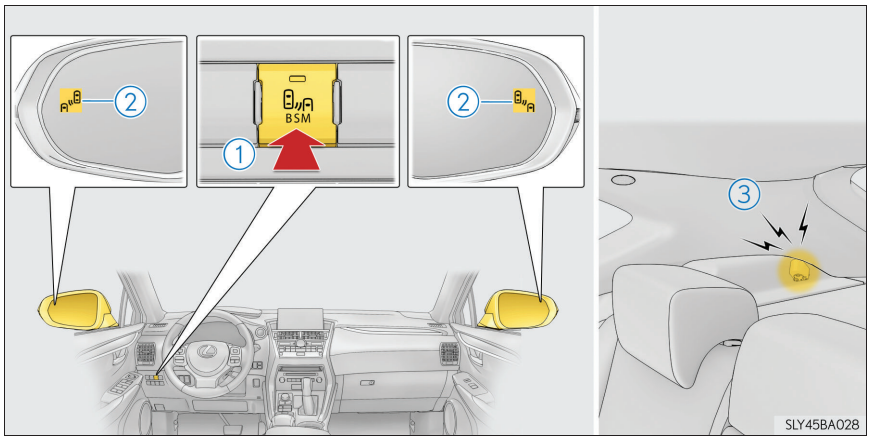
Summary of the Blind Spot Monitor

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that has 2 functions;

- The Blind Spot Monitor function
  Assists the driver in making the decision when changing lanes
- The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function (if equipped)
  Assists the driver when backing up

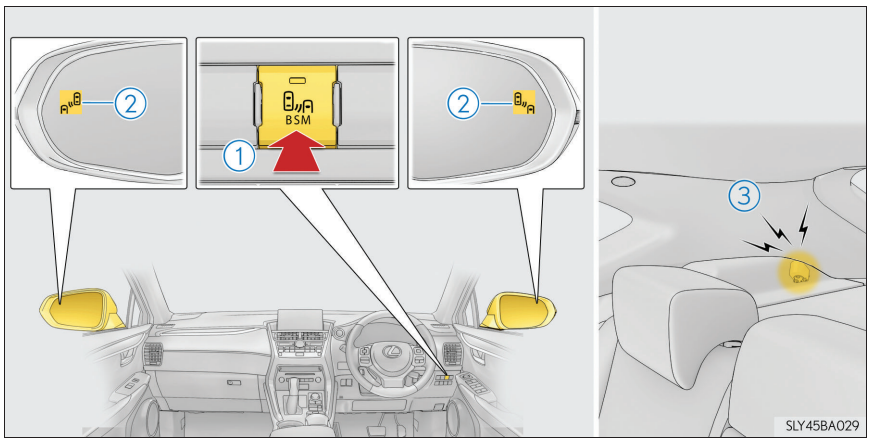
These functions use the same sensors.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



*: If equipped

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



① BSM main switch

Pressing the switch turns the system on or off. When the switch is set to on, the switch's indicator illuminates and the buzzer sounds (vehicles with Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function). This switch is for both Blind Spot Monitor function and Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function.

② BSM outside rear view mirror indicators

Blind Spot Monitor function:
When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash.

Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function:
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

③ Rear Crossing Traffic Alert buzzer (Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function only)

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer sounds from behind the right-hand rear seat.

■ **The BSM outside rear view mirror indicators visibility**

When under strong sunlight, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ **Rear Crossing Traffic Alert buzzer hearing**

Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function may be difficult to hear over loud noises such as high audio volume.

■ **When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display**

Water, snow mud, etc., may be built up in the vicinity of the sensor area of bumper. (→P. 364) Removing the water, snow, mud, etc., from the vicinity of the sensor area bumper should return it to normal. Also, the sensor may not function normally when used in extremely hot or cold weather.

■ **When "Blind Spot Monitor System Malfunction" is shown on the multi-information display**

There may be a sensor malfunction or voltage abnormality. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Certification for the Blind Spot Monitor**

▶ For vehicles sold in Russia

type approval number: POCC DE.ML05.H01144



ML05

▶ For vehicles sold in Ukraine

type approval number: 10094.000966-13



155

▶ Except for vehicles sold in Russia and Ukraine

CE 0700

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY"(DoC) is available at the following:

DoC address : http://continental.automotive-approvals.de/index.php?produkt=SRR2-A

CONTINENTAL tímto prohlašuje, že tento SRR2-A je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede CONTINENTAL erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SRR2-A overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt CONTINENTAL, dass sich das Gerät SRR2-A in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigeneinschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab CONTINENTAL seadme SRR2-A vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, CONTINENTAL, declares that this SRR2-A is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente CONTINENTAL declara que el SRR2-A cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ CONTINENTAL ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SRR2-A ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente CONTINENTAL déclare que l'appareil SRR2-A est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente CONTINENTAL dichiara che questo SRR2-A è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo CONTINENTAL deklarē, ka SRR2-A atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo CONTINENTAL deklaruoja, kad šis SRR2-A atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

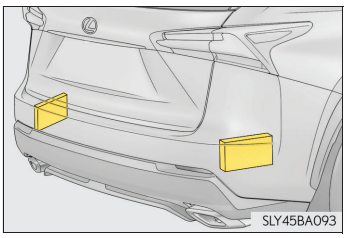
Hierbij verklaart CONTINENTAL dat het toestel SRR2-A in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk, CONTINENTAL, jiddikjara li dan SRR2-A jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulírott, CONTINENTAL nyilatkozom, hogy a SRR2-A megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Niniejszym CONTINENTAL oświadcza, że SRR2-A jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
CONTINENTAL declara que este SRR2-A está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
CONTINENTAL izjavlja, da je ta SRR2-A v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
CONTINENTAL týmto vyhlasuje, že SRR2-A spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
CONTINENTAL vakuuttaa täten että SRR2-A tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar CONTINENTAL att denna SRR2-A står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir CONTINENTAL yfir því að SRR2-A er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
CONTINENTAL erklærer herved at utstyret SRR2-A er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, CONTINENTAL, декларира, че SRR2-A е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, CONTINENTAL, declară că aparatul SRR2-A este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
"Ovim , CONTINENTAL, izjavljuje da ovaj SRR2-A je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC."
Ovim CONTINENTAL, izjavljuje da je SRR2-A u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi(NN25/2012)

WARNING

■ **Handling the radar sensor**

One Blind Spot Monitor sensor is installed inside the left and right side of the vehicle rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.

- Keep the sensor and its surrounding area on the bumper clean at all times.



- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper to a strong impact. If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles that enter the detection area may not be detected. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.
- If the radar sensor needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The Blind Spot Monitor function

The Blind Spot Monitor function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles that are traveling in an adjacent lane in the area that is not reflected in the outside rear view mirror (the blind spot), and advises the driver of the vehicles existence via the BSM outside rear view mirror indicator.

The Blind Spot Monitor function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.

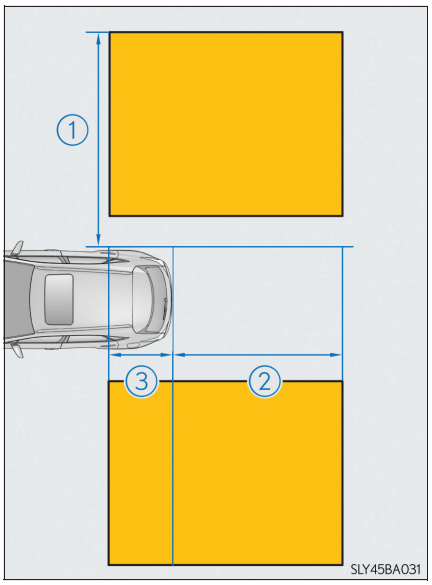
The range of the detection area extends to:

① Approximately 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from the side of the vehicle

The first 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle is not in the detection area

② Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

③ Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper



WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Blind Spot Monitor function is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is present in the blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor function. The function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, therefore over reliance could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor function is operational when**

- The BSM main switch is set to on
- Vehicle speed is greater than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor function will detect a vehicle when**

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ **Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function will not detect a vehicle**

The Blind Spot Monitor function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle*

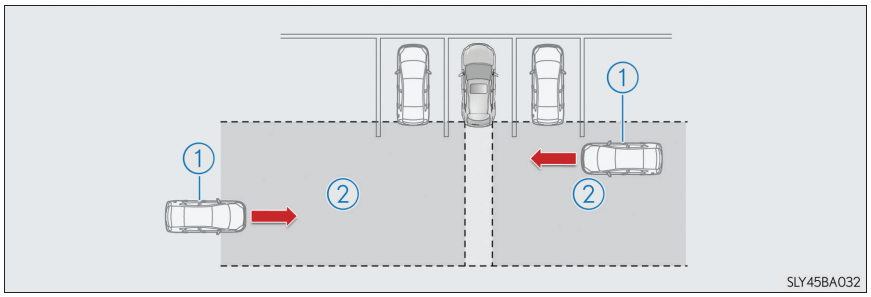
*: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function may not function correctly**

- The Blind Spot Monitor function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:
  - During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.
  - When ice or mud, etc., is attached to the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, standing water, etc.
  - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - When a vehicle is in the detection area from a stop and remains in the detection area as your vehicle accelerates
  - When driving up or down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, a dip in the road, etc.
  - When multiple vehicles approach with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When vehicle lanes are wide, and the vehicle in the next lane is too far away from your vehicle
  - When the vehicle that enters the detection area is traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
  - When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - Directly after the BSM main switch is set to on
- Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase under the following conditions:
  - When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc.
  - When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle
  - When vehicle lanes are narrow and a vehicle driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle enters the detection area
  - When items such as a bicycle carrier are installed on the rear of the vehicle

The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function (if equipped)

The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function operates when your vehicle is in reverse. It can detect other vehicles approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle. It uses radar sensors to alert the driver of the other vehicle's existence through flashing the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



① Approaching vehicles ② Detection areas

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

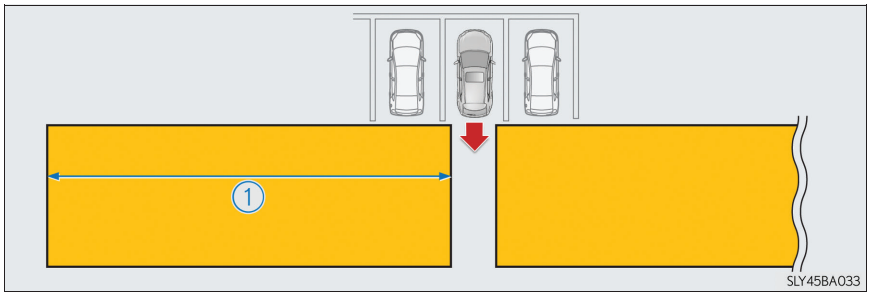
The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function is only an assist and is not a replacement for careful driving. Driver must be careful when backing up, even when using Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function. The driver's own visual confirmation of behind you and your vehicle is necessary and be sure there are no pedestrians, other vehicles, etc., before backing up. Failure to do so could cause death or serious injury.

According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



To give the driver a more consistent time to react, the buzzer can alert for faster vehicles from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle	Speed	① Approximate alert distance
Fast	28 km/h (18 mph)	20 m (65 ft.)
Slow	8 km/h (5 mph)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function is operational when

- The BSM main switch is set to on.
- The shift lever is in R.
- Vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- Approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

■ **Conditions under which the Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function will not detect a vehicle**

The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects.

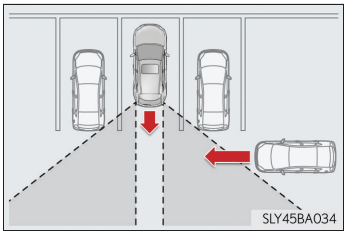
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- Vehicles backing up in the parking space next to your vehicle*

*: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function may not function correctly**

The Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:

- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.
- When ice or mud, etc., is attached to the rear bumper
- When multiple vehicles approach continuously
- Shallow angle parking
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
- When parking on a steep incline, such as hills, a dip in the road, etc.
- Directly after the BSM main switch is set to on
- Directly after the engine is started with the BSM main switch on
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect because of obstacles



Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires*.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on the 225/60R18 tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

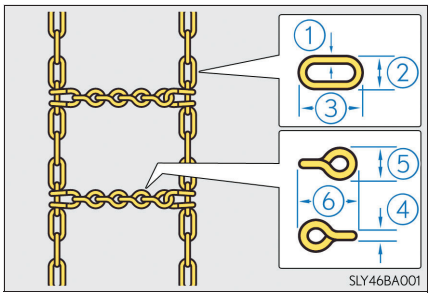
- Park the vehicle and shift the shift lever to P and block the wheel under the vehicle without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels.
  Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.

  When the parking brake is in automatic mode, release the parking brake after shifting the shift lever to P. (→P. 241)
- If the vehicle is left parked with the brakes damp in cold temperatures, there is a possibility of the brakes freezing.
- If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, confirm that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P*.

  *: The shift lever will be locked if it is attempted to be shifted from P to any other position without depressing the brake pedal. If the shift lever can be shifted from P, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



- Vehicles with 225/65R17 and 235/55R18 tires

  Side chain:

  ① 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter

  ② 10 mm (0.39 in.) in width

  ③ 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length

  Cross chain:

  ④ 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter

  ⑤ 14 mm (0.55 in.) in width

  ⑥ 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length

- Vehicles with 225/60R18 tires

  Tire chains cannot be mounted on the 225/60R18 tires.
  Snow tires should be use instead.

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires only. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km (1/4 - 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

WARNING

■ **Driving with snow tires**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ **Driving with tire chains**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LDA (Lane Departure Alert) (if equipped) or LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped).

■ **When parking the vehicle**

When parking the vehicle without applying the parking brake, make sure to chock the wheels. If you do not chock the wheels, the vehicle may move unexpectedly, possibly resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing snow tires (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ **Fitting tire chains (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Utility vehicle precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Utility vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

⚠ WARNING

■ Utility vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should always fasten their seat belts.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier (if equipped) will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

WARNING

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, water, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped to the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

■ To prevent water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the riverbed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water.

5-1. Basic Operations
Lexus Display Audio system 380
Steering wheel audio switches 386
USB/AUX ports 387
5-2. Setup
Setup menu 389
General settings 390
Voice settings 393
Display settings 394
5-3. Using the audio system
Selecting the audio source 396
Optimal use of the audio system 397
Audio settings 398
Audio menu screen operation 402
5-4. Using the radio
Radio operation 405

5-5. Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA/AAC discs
CD player operation 407

5-6. Using an external device
Listening to an iPod..... 413
Using USB memory device..... 417
Using the AUX port 422

5-7. Connecting Bluetooth®
Steps for using Bluetooth® devices..... 423
Registering a Bluetooth® device..... 425
Selecting a Bluetooth® device..... 426
Connecting a Bluetooth® audio player..... 427
Connecting a Bluetooth® phone 428
Displaying a Bluetooth® device details 429
Detailed Bluetooth® settings..... 430

5-8. Bluetooth® Audio
Listening to Bluetooth® Audio 431

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone
Using a Bluetooth® Phone..... 433
Making a call..... 435
Receiving a call..... 438
Speaking on the phone 439
Using a Bluetooth® phone messages 441
Using the steering wheel switches..... 444
Bluetooth® phone settings.... 445

5-10. Phonebook
Contact settings 447
Messaging setting 450

5-11. Bluetooth®
What to do if... (Troubleshooting)..... 451
Bluetooth®..... 454

5-12. Other function
"Information" screen..... 461
MirrorLink™..... 462
USB photo..... 465
Speech command system..... 467

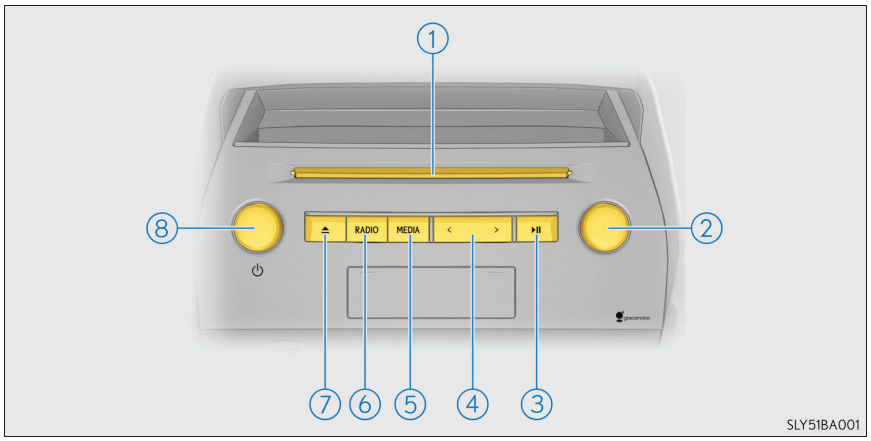
Some of the functions cannot be operated while driving.

Lexus Display Audio system*

Use the following buttons to start listening to the audio system.

Lexus Display Audio operation buttons

The illustration below is for left-hand drive vehicles.
The button positions and shapes may differ slightly for right-hand drive vehicles.



① Disc slot

② "TUNE•SCROLL" knob
Select a radio station band, track or file.

③ Except radio and A/V mode: Pause or resume playing a track or file.
Radio and A/V mode: Turn mute on/off.

④ Select preset radio stations, or access a desired track or file.

⑤ Display the media top screen.

⑥ Display the radio top screen.

⑦ Eject a disc.

⑧ "PWR•VOL" knob
Press to turn the audio system on/off, and turn to adjust the volume.

*: If equipped

■ “MENU” screen

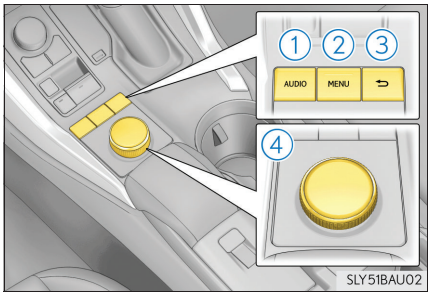
To display the “MENU” screen, press the “MENU” button on the controller unit.



Button	Function
“Audio”	Display the audio top screen (→P. 405, 407, 413, 417, 422, 431)
“Climate”	Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 470)
“Telephone”	Display the phone top screen (→P. 433)
“Car”	Consumption information (→P. 118)
“Info”	Display the “Information” screen (→P. 461)
“Setup”	Setup menu (→P. 389)
“Display”	Display settings (→P. 394)

Lexus Display Audio controller

By using the Lexus Display Audio controller, you can control the audio system, hands-free system, etc.



① Display the "Source" screen or audio top screen (→P. 396)

② Display the "MENU" screen (→P. 381)

③ Back button

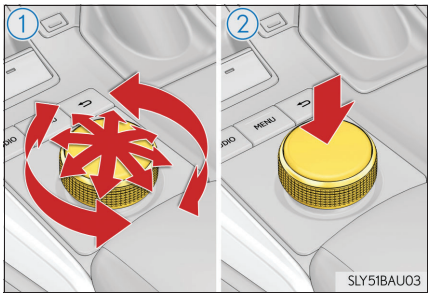
Display the previous screen

④ Turn or move the controller to select a function and number.

Move the controller to display the left or right side of the screen.

Push the controller to enter the selected function and number.

■ Using the Lexus Display Audio controller

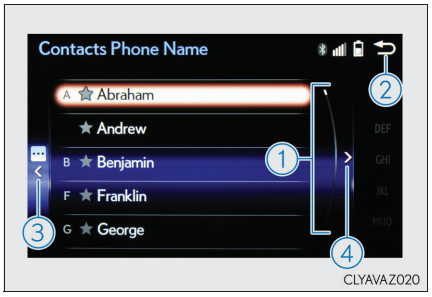


① Select: Turn or move the controller.

② Enter: Push the controller.

■ Basic screen operation

When a list is displayed, use the appropriate button to scroll through the list.



① Indicator turns on when you can select the list by turning the controller.

② Indicator turns on when you can return to the previous screen by pressing the back button.

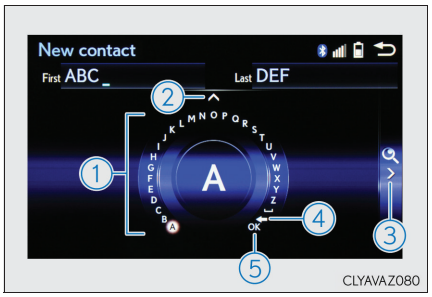
③ Indicator turns on when you can move the controller left to view additional screen text.

④ Indicator turns on when you can move the controller right to view additional screen text.

Inputting letters and numbers

Input mode

Letters and numbers are inputted via the screen.



① Turn the controller to select the desired character and press the controller to input the character.

② When this indicator is shown, you can change input fields by moving the controller forward.

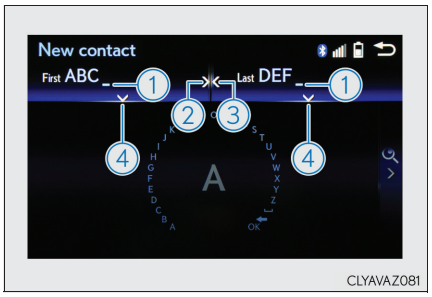
③ When this indicator is shown, you can change character types by moving the controller to the right and then selecting the desired character type.

④ Select to erase characters one by one. Select and hold to erase all characters.

⑤ Select to complete data input.

Input field mode

When in the input field you can move the cursor to the desired position.



① Turn the controller to move the cursor left or right.

② When this indicator is shown, you can move the cursor to the right input field by moving the controller to the right.

③ When this indicator is shown, you can move the cursor to the left input field by moving the controller to the left.

④ When this indicator is shown, you can change to input mode by moving the controller backward.

■ When using the screen

- Under extremely cold conditions, the Lexus Display Audio controller may react slowly.
- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the "Display" screen (→P. 394) or remove your sunglasses.

■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

WARNING

■ Using the Lexus Display Audio controller

Be careful when touching the Lexus Display Audio controller in extreme temperatures as it may become very hot or cold due to the temperature inside the vehicle.

■ Laser product

CAUTION
EN/IEC 60825-1:2007
Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
A warning label is affixed on the top of this product.

NOTICE

■ To prevent Lexus Display Audio controller malfunction

- Do not allow the Lexus Display Audio controller to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes as doing so may cause it to change color, emit a strange odor or stop functioning.
- Do not subject the Lexus Display Audio controller to excessive pressure or strong impact as the controller may bend or break off.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

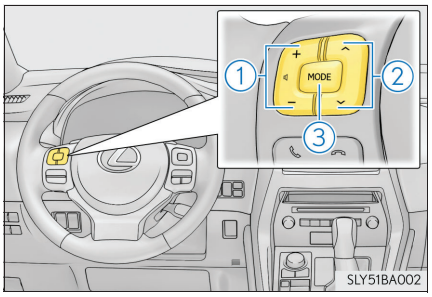
■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

Steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.
Operation may differ depending on the type of audio system or navigation system. For details, refer to the manual provided with the audio system or navigation system.

Operating the audio system using the steering wheel switches



① Volume switch
- Increases/decreases volume
- Press and hold: Continuously increases/decreases volume

② Radio mode:
- Press (except manual mode): Select a radio station
- Press (manual mode): Seek up/down
- Press and hold (manual mode): Continuously seek up/down

CD, MP3/WMA/AAC disc, Bluetooth®, iPod or USB mode:
- Press: Select a track/file/song/video
- Press and hold: Select a folder/album (MP3/WMA/AAC disc or USB)

③ "MODE" switch
- Turns the power on, selects audio source
- Press and hold this switch to mute or pause the current operation. To cancel the mute or pause, press and hold.

⚠ WARNING

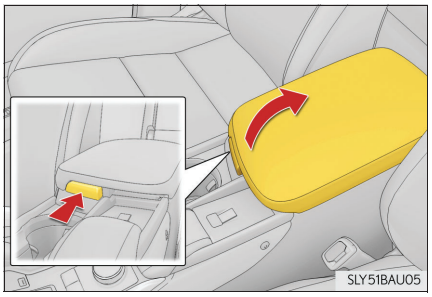
■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**
Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

USB/AUX ports

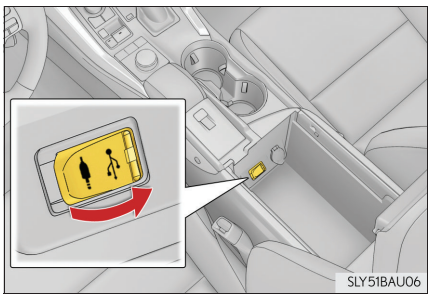
Connect an iPod, USB memory device or portable audio player to the USB/AUX port as indicated below. Select “iPod”, “USB”, “AUX” or “A/V” on the audio source selection screen and the device can be operated via Lexus Display Audio system.

Connecting using the USB/AUX port

1 Lift the lid while pushing the button to release the lock.



2 Open the cover.



■ **iPod**

Open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.

■ **USB memory**

Open the cover and connect the USB memory device.

Turn on the power, if applicable, of the USB memory device if it is not turned on.

■ **Portable audio player**

Open the cover and connect the portable audio player.

Turn on the power of the portable audio player if it is not turned on.

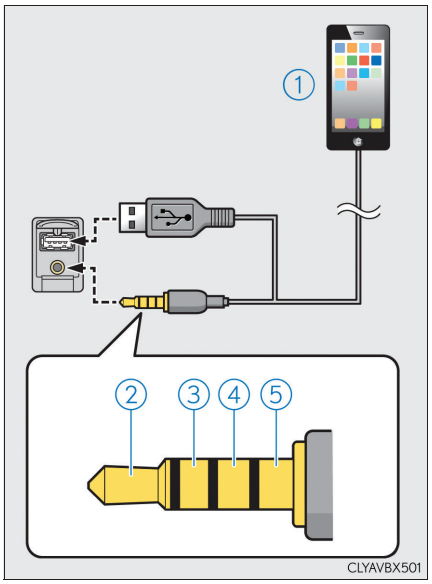
Using a 4-pole AUX cable

To view a video on an iPod video or VTR, it is necessary to use a 4-pole AUX cable to connect the portable audio device.

When connecting a portable audio device to the AUX port, use a 4-pole AUX cable with a plug that matches the exact layout shown in the illustration.

① Connected device (portable audio device, etc.)
② Left audio
③ Right audio
④ Ground
⑤ Video

When using an iPod video, a cable that has a 4-pole AUX plug and a USB connector is necessary. Connect the plug and connector to the AUX and USB ports.

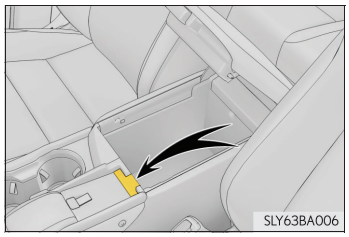


When using a 4-pole AUX cable

If a 4-pole AUX cable with a different layout is used, audio and/or video may not be output properly.

When using the USB/AUX port

The notch in console box allows audio cables to be passed through even when the console box is closed.



WARNING

While driving

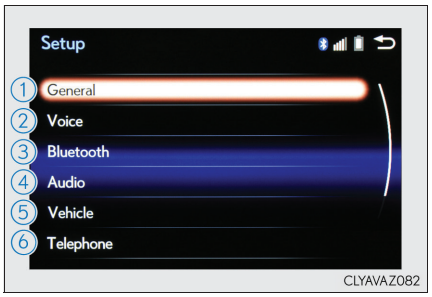
Do not connect a device or operate the device controls.

Setup menu

The Lexus Display Audio system can be adjusted to the desired settings.

Display "Setup" screen

Go to "Setup": "MENU" button → "Setup"



① Change the settings for operation sounds, screen animation, etc. (→P. 390)

② Adjust the settings for voice guidance volume. (→P. 393)

③ Change the settings for registering, removing, connecting and disconnecting Bluetooth® devices. (→P. 424)

④ Change the settings for FM radio, iPod, etc. (→P. 398)

⑤ Change the settings for vehicle customization. (→P. 656)

⑥ Change the settings for phone sound, phonebook, etc. (→P. 445)

General settings

Settings are available for adjusting the operation sounds, screen animation, etc.

Screen for general settings

Go to "General settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "General"



① Change language.

The selectable languages may differ depending on the model or region.

② Change the distance unit.

③ Set the beep sound on/off.

④ Change the button color.

⑤ Change the startup image and screen off image. (→P. 391)

⑥ Set the animation effect on/off.

⑦ Delete personal data (→P. 392)

⑧ Update program versions.

For details, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⑨ Update gracenote database versions.

For details, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⑩ Display the open source license.

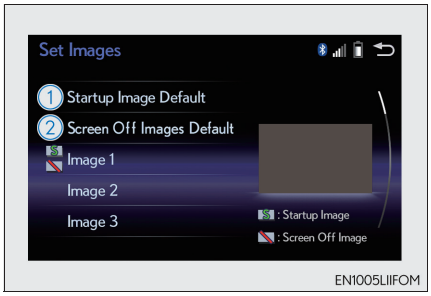
Customizing images

1 Go to “Customize images”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “General” → “Customize images”

2 Select “Set images” and then select the desired image.

① Set as startup image.

② Set as screen off image.



Adding an image

1 Connect a USB memory device. (→P. 387)

2 Select “Copy from USB” on the “Customize images” screen and then select the desired image.

3 Move the controller to the left and then select “Copy”.

Up to 10 images can be downloaded.

Deleting images

Select “Delete images” on the “Customize images” screen and then select the desired images.

USB memory

When saving the images to a USB memory device, name the folder that the images are saved to “Image”.

● Compatible device formats

The following device format can be used:

- The image’s file format must be JPEG
- USB communication format: USB2.0 FS (480 Mbps)
- File system format: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

● JPEG file compatibility

Compatible image size: Maximum 10 MB

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB memory device or its terminals
→P. 421

Deleting personal data

1 "MENU" button → "Setup" → "General" → "Delete personal data"

2 Select "Delete".

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

The following personal data will be deleted or changed to its default settings.

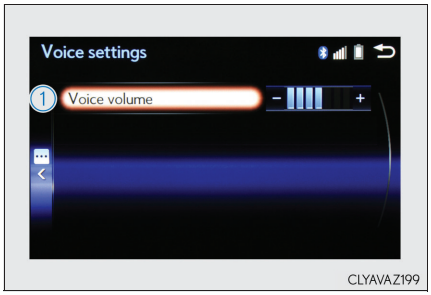
- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- Call history data
- Favorite data
- Bluetooth® devices data
- Phone sound settings
- Detailed Bluetooth® settings
- Audio/video setting
- Preset switch data
- Last used radio station
- Customized image data
- Software update history
- Software update detail information
- Phone display setting
- Contact/call history setting
- Messaging setting

Voice settings

You can adjust the guidance volume setting.

Go to "Voice settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Voice"

① Adjust the voice guidance volume setting.



■ **Return to the default settings**

Move the controller to the left and select "Default".

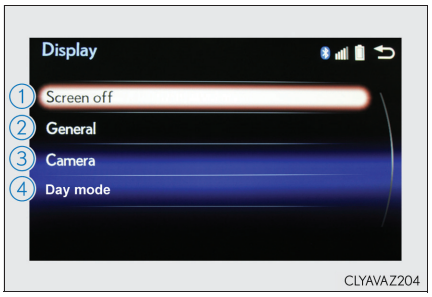
Display settings

Settings are available for adjusting the contrast and brightness of the screen. The display can also be turned off.

Screen for display settings

Go to "Display": "MENU" button → "Display"

① Turn off screen.
② Adjust screen quality.
③ Adjust screen quality of the rear view monitor camera.
④ Change to day mode.



Screen off

This setting turns the screen off. To turn it on, press any button such as the "AUDIO" button or "MENU" button.

If a screen off image has been set, the set image will be displayed.

Day mode

When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims.
However, the screen can be switched to day mode by selecting "Day mode".

The screen will stay in day mode when the headlights are turned on until "Day mode" is selected again.

Adjusting the screen contrast/brightness/color/tone

1 Select "General" or "Camera" on the "Display" screen or select "Display" on each audio menu screen. (→P. 402)

2 Adjust the display as desired by turning the controller clockwise (+) or counterclockwise (-).

To select "Contrast", "Brightness", "Colour" or "Tone", move the controller to the left. ("Colour" and "Tone" are available when "Display" on the audio settings screen for each audio source is selected.)

■ **Changing the sample image (when "General" is selected)**
Move the controller to the right and select the desired sample image.

Selecting the audio source

Switching between audio sources, such as the radio and CD, is explained in this section.

Changing audio source

1 Press the “AUDIO” button to display the “Source” screen.

If the “Source” screen is not displayed, press the button again.

2 Select the desired audio source.

The audio source can be selected by pressing the “RADIO” or “MEDIA” button.

Using the steering wheel switches to change audio sources

Press the “MODE” switch when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes each time the “MODE” switch is pressed.

■ **Rearranging the list**

The listing order of the source list can be rearranged.

1 Move the controller to the left while on the “Source” screen.

2 Select “Audio source select”.

3 Select an item you wish to move and then select where to move the item to.

Optimal use of the audio system

On the "Sound settings" screen, sound quality (Treble/Mid/Bass), volume balance and DSP settings can be adjusted.

How to adjust the sound settings and sound quality

Go to "Sound settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Audio" → "Sound settings"

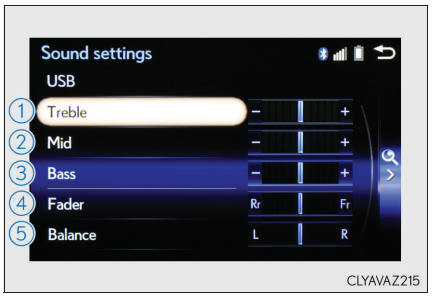
To change between the sound setting screen and DSP setting screen, move the controller to the right then select the desired screen.

▶ "Sound settings"

①②③ Adjusts the treble, mid or bass.

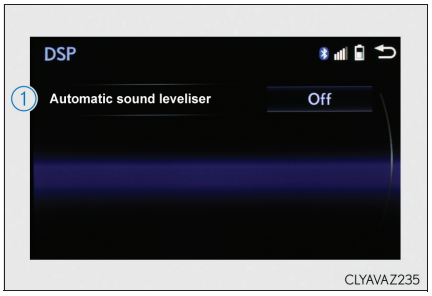
④ Adjusts the front/rear audio balance.

⑤ Adjusts the left/right audio balance.



▶ "DSP"

① Sets the automatic sound leveliser (ASL) on/off



■ **The sound quality level is adjusted individually**

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for each audio mode separately.

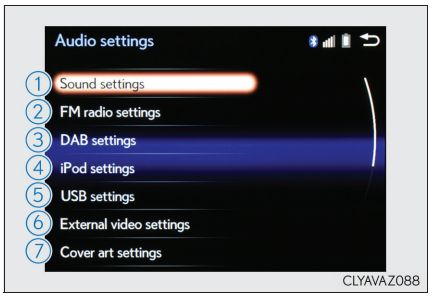
■ **About Automatic Sound Leveliser (ASL)**

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed.

Audio settings

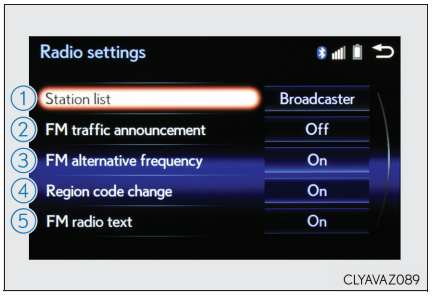
Screen for audio settings

Go to "Audio settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Audio"



① Change sound settings (→P. 397)
② Change FM radio settings (→P. 399)
③ Change DAB settings (→P. 399)
④ Change iPod settings (→P. 400)
⑤ Change USB settings (→P. 400)
⑥ Change A/V settings (→P. 401)
⑦ Change the cover art settings (→P. 401)

Changing FM radio settings



① Change the order of the station list

② Select to set the traffic announcement interrupt operation on/off

When traffic announcement is set to on, the radio will begin seeking a TP station. (→P. 406)

③ Select to set the alternative frequency network following operation on/off

When alternative frequency is set to on, a station providing good reception is automatically selected if current reception worsens.

④ Select to set the region code change operation on/off

When region code change operation is set to on, programs will switch over to a broadcasting station within the same local program network.

⑤ Select to set the FM Radio text feature on/off

Changing DAB settings



① Update the DAB station list

② Select to set the L-band on/off

When set to off, the physical channel range for tune operations is limited to Band III except preset operations.

When set to on, the physical channel range for tune operations is Band III and L-band.

③ Select to set traffic announcement operation on/off

When traffic announcement is set to on, the tuner will automatically seek a station that regularly broadcasts traffic information and the station will broadcast when the traffic information program starts.

④ Select to set alternative frequency network following operation on/off

When alternative frequency is set to on, a station providing good reception is automatically selected if current reception worsens.

⑤ Select to set the DAB radio text feature on/off

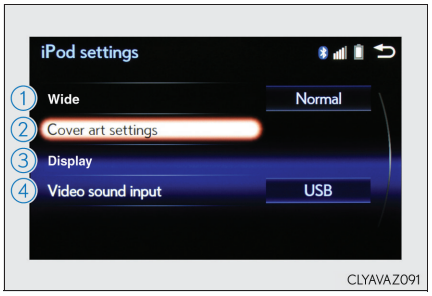
Changing iPod settings

① Change the screen size (video mode)

② Change the cover art settings (→P. 401)

③ Adjust the screen quality (video mode) (→P. 394)

④ Change video sound input port

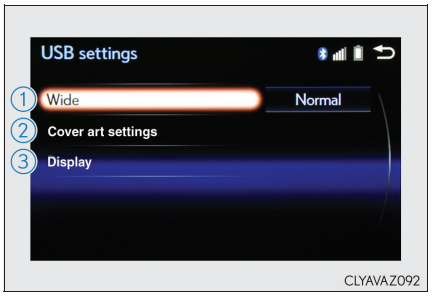


Changing USB settings

① Change the screen size (video mode)

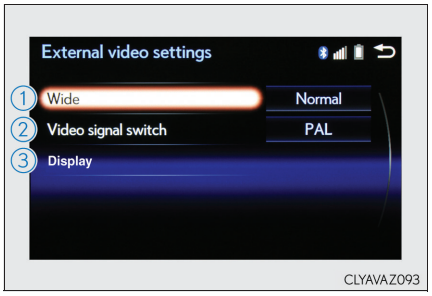
② Change the cover art settings (→P. 401)

③ Adjust the screen quality (video mode) (→P. 394)



Changing A/V settings

① Change the screen size
② Change the video signal
③ Adjust the screen quality (→P. 394)



Changing the cover art settings

① Select to set the cover art display of DISC mode on/off.
② Select to set the cover art display of USB mode on/off.
③ Change the priority of the cover art display for USB mode.
④ Select to set the cover art display of iPod mode on/off.
⑤ Change the priority of the cover art display for iPod mode.



Audio menu screen operation

You can change the settings and control functions for each audio source.

Audio menu screen

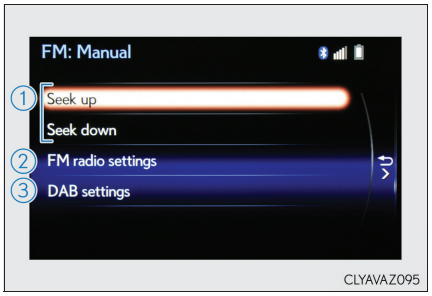
To display the audio menu screen, move the controller to the left while on an audio top screen.

▶ FM or AM radio

① Seeks a station of the nearest frequency (stops when a station is found) (manual mode)

② Changes FM radio settings (→P. 399)

③ Changes DAB settings (→P. 399)



▶ DAB

① Adjusts the playback offset time on time shift mode

② Cancels time shift operation

③ Selects an ensemble (manual mode)

④ Selects a service (manual mode)

⑤ Changes FM radio settings (→P. 399)

⑥ Changes DAB settings (→P. 399)



▶ CD, MP3/WMA/AAC disc, iPod, USB or Bluetooth®



① Plays or pause a track/file/song

② Selects a track/file/song

③ Selects a folder/album (MP3/WMA/AAC disc or USB)

④ Selects and hold: Fast-forward or rewind a track/file/song

⑤ Selects a repeat mode. (→P. 404)

⑥ Selects a random/shuffle play mode. (→P. 404)

⑦ Selects the full screen mode. (USB video or iPod video mode)

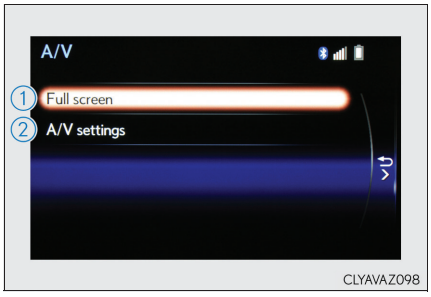
⑧ Changes USB settings (USB) (→P. 400)

⑨ Changes iPod settings (iPod) (→P. 400)

⑩ Connects a Bluetooth® device (Bluetooth®) (→P. 426)

⑪ Changes the cover art settings (CD or MP3/WMA/AAC disc) (→P. 401)

▶ AUX or A/V



① Selects the full screen mode (A/V)

② Changes A/V settings (A/V) (→P. 401)

Repeat play

Mode	Action	Target audio source
	File/track/song repeat	All media
	Folder repeat	MP3/WMA/AAC disc, USB
	Album repeat	USB, Bluetooth®

Random/shuffle playback

Mode	Action	Target audio source
	Random/shuffle play of the disc/ folder/album	All media
	Random play of all folders	MP3/WMA/AAC disc, USB
	Random/shuffle play of all albums	USB, iPod, Bluetooth®

Radio operation

Select “AM”, “FM” or “DAB” on the “Source” screen to begin listening to the radio.

Radio top screen

Pressing the “RADIO” button displays the radio top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 402

Changing the top screen mode

Move the controller to the right to display the right menu screen.

① Change the radio top screen to the preset selection screen.

② Change the radio top screen to the station list selection screen. (FM and DAB)

③ Change the radio top screen to the manual selection screen.

④ Change the radio top screen to the time shift operation screen. (DAB) (→P. 406)



Selecting a station

Tune in to the desired station using one of the following methods.

■ **Seek tuning**

Manual screen: Press or press and hold “<” or “>” button.

Preset or station list screen: Press and hold “<” or “>” button.

Seek tuning can also be operated on the menu screen. (→P. 402)

The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop when a station is found.

■ **Manual tuning (manual screen)**

Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob or turn the controller.

■ **Station list (preset or station list screen)**

Select the desired station by pressing "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob or controller.

Setting station presets (preset screen)

Radio stations can be preset.

1 Search for desired stations.

2 Turn the controller to select one of the stations and then press the controller until you hear a beep while on the preset selection screen.

Time shift operation (DAB)

The broadcast you are currently listening to can be re-listened to at any time.

1 Move the controller to the right and then select "Time shift".

2 Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to set the desired offset.

An offset playback time can also be set on the menu screen. (→P. 402)

To cancel the time shift operation while in time shift mode, move the controller to the left and select "Time shift off". If the time shift display is left showing "-0' 00"" for 6 seconds without any operation, the time shift operation will be canceled.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ **Traffic announcement operation**

When traffic announcement is set to on, "TP" will appear on the screen and the radio will begin seeking a TP station. If the radio seeks out a TP station, the program name will appear on the screen. If a traffic announcement station is received, the radio will be switched to the traffic information program automatically. When the program ends, the initial operation will resume.

CD player operation

Insert a disc, press the "MEDIA" button or select "DISC" on the "Source" screen with a disc inserted to begin listening to a disc.

Audio disc top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the audio disc top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 402

■ **Selecting a track/file**

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired track/file number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting the track by the list (CD)**

Move the controller to the right and then select the desired track.

■ **Selecting a folder (MP3/WMA/AAC disc)**

1. Move the controller to the right and then select "Folders".
2. Select the desired folder. Then select a file to begin using the selected folder.

■ **Selecting a file by the selected folder (MP3/WMA/AAC disc)**

1. Move the controller to the right and then select "Files".
2. Select the desired file.

■ **Error messages**

If the following error messages appear on the screen, refer to the table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause	Correction procedures
"Check disc"	• The disc is dirty or damaged. • The disc is inserted upside down. • The disc is not playable with the player.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly. • Confirm the disc is playable with the player.
"DISC error"	There is a malfunction within the system.	Eject the disc.
"No music files found."	No playable data is included on the disc.	Eject the disc.

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

■ **Music disc player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If a disc is left inside the Music disc player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

Disc may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the Music disc player.

■ **MP3, WMA and AAC files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

AAC is short for Advanced Audio Coding and refers to an audio compression technology standard used with MPEG2 and MPEG4.

MP3, WMA and AAC file and media/formats compatibility are limited.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9 (only compatible with Windows Media Audio Standard)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48-192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48-320 (kbps)

● AAC file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MPEG4/AAC-LC
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  11.025/12/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  16-320 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: 1 ch and 2 ch

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3, WMA and AAC playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  UDF (2.01 or lower)

MP3, WMA and AAC files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA/AAC and played are those with the extension .mp3, .wma or .m4a.

● Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi session discs, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3, WMA and AAC files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3, WMA and AAC tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

AAC tags can be added to AAC files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3, WMA and AAC playback

When a disc containing MP3, WMA or AAC files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3, WMA or AAC file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write any files to the disc other than MP3, WMA or AAC files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3, WMA or AAC format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3, .wma and .m4a are used for files other than MP3, WMA and AAC files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3, WMA and AAC files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3, WMA and AAC files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3, WMA or AAC files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

The Gracenote® media database

- Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote", MusicID, Playlist Plus and MediaVOCS are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States



Gracenote® End User License Agreement - Music

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

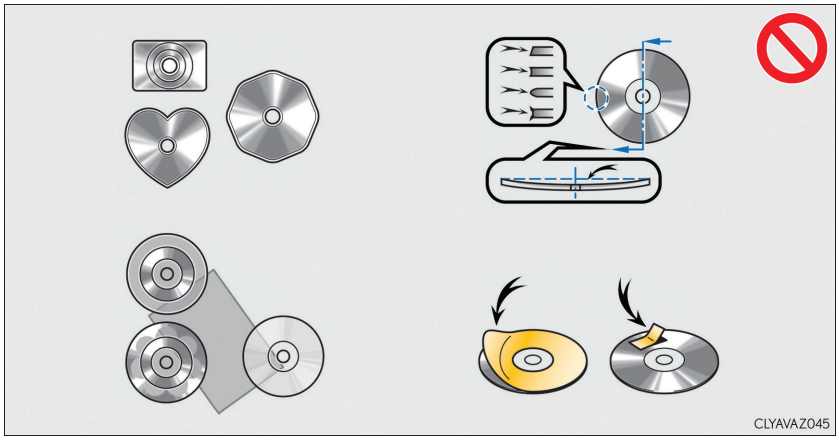
GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2012 Gracenote, Inc. All rights reserved.

NOTICE

■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs.
Also, do not use 8 cm (3 in.) disc adapters, DualDiscs or printable discs.
Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.).
- Low-quality or deformed discs.
- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.
- Discs that have tape, stickers or labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

■ Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

Listening to an iPod

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.
Press the "MEDIA" button or select "iPod" on the "Source" screen.

Connecting an iPod

→P. 387

iPod top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the iPod top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 402

■ **Selecting a song**

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired song number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting a play mode**

1 Move the controller to the right and then select "Browse".

2 Select the desired play mode, and then select a song to begin using the selected play mode.

■ **Displaying the now playing list**

Move the controller to the right and then select "Now playing list".

■ About iPod

Made for iPod iPhone

- "Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to an iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ **iPod cover art**

- Depending on the iPod and songs in the iPod, iPod cover art may be displayed.
- This function can be changed to on/off. (→P. 401)
- It may take time to display iPod cover art, and the iPod may not be operated while the cover art display is in process.

■ **iPod functions**

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it may resolve the problem.
- Depending on the iPod, while connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle's audio system instead.
- When the battery level of an iPod is very low, the iPod may not operate. If so, charge the iPod before use.
- Compatible models (→P. 416)

■ Error messages

If the following error messages appear on the screen, refer to the table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
"Connection error. Consult your owner's manual for instructions on how to reconnect the iPod."	This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.
"There are no songs available for playback. Add compatible songs to your iPod."	This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.
"No items available."	This indicates that songs are not found in a selected playlist.
"Check the iPod firmware version."	This indicates that the software version is not compatible. Please check the compatible models. (→P. 416)
"iPod authorization failed."	This indicates that the Lexus Display Audio system failed to authorize the iPod. Please check your iPod.

■ iPod problems

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it. For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

■ Compatible models

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

● Made for

- iPod touch (5th generation)
- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod with video
- iPod nano (7th generation)
- iPod nano (6th generation)
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone 5
- iPhone 4S
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

Depending on differences between models or software versions, etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the iPod or its terminals

● Do not leave the iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high.

● Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected.

● Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

Using USB memory device

Connecting a USB memory device enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Select "USB1" or "USB2" on the "Source" screen.

Connecting a USB memory device

→P. 387

USB top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the USB top screen from any screen of the selected source.

USB audio

Moving the controller to the right and selecting "Play music" while the USB video screen is displayed changes to USB audio mode.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 402

■ **Selecting a file**

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired file number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting a play mode**

1 Move the controller to the right and select "Browse".

2 Select the desired play mode, and select a file to begin the selected play mode.

■ **Displaying the now playing list**

Move the controller to the right and select "Now playing list".

USB video

Moving the controller to the right and selecting "Play video" while the USB video screen is displayed changes to USB video mode.

This function cannot be used while USB photo or MirrorLink™ is in use.

Menu screen

→P. 402

Selecting a file

Press the "<" or ">" button, turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired file number.

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

Selecting a folder

1. Move the controller to the right and select "Browse".
2. Select the desired folder, then select a file to begin using the selected folder.

Displaying the now playing list

Move the controller to the right and select "Now playing list".

USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory device that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory device still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the device.

Error messages for USB memory

If the following error messages appear on the screen, refer to the table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
"Connection error. Consult your owner's manual for instructions on how to reconnect the USB device."	This indicates a problem with the USB memory device or its connection.
"There are no files available for playback. Add compatible files to your USB device."	This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included on the USB memory device.

■ USB memory

● Compatible devices

USB memory devices that can be used for MP3, WMA and AAC (audio mode) or MP4, WMV and AVI (video mode) playback.

● Compatible device formats

The following device format can be used:

- USB communication format: USB2.0 FS (480 Mbps)
- File system format: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class
  MP3, WMA and AAC files written to a device with any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 3000 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 9999
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

● MP3, WMA and AAC files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.
Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format. This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

AAC is short for Advanced Audio Coding and refers to an audio compression technology standard used with MPEG2 and MPEG4.

MP3, WMA and AAC file and media/formats compatibility are limited.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERIII, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERIII)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERIII: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERIII: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERIII: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERIII: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9 (only compatible with Windows Media Audio Standard)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  ver. 7, 8: CBR 48-192 (kbps)
  ver. 9: CBR 48-320 (kbps)

● AAC file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MPEG4/AAC-LC
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  11.025/12/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  16-320 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: 1 ch and 2 ch

● MP4, WMV and AVI files

The following resolutions can be used:
128x96, 160x120, 176x144 (QCIF), 320x240 (QVGA), 352x240 (SIF), 352x288 (CIF), 640x480 (VGA), 720x480 (NTSC), 720x576 (PAL)

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA/AAC and played are those with the extension .mp3, .wma or .m4a.

● ID3, WMA and AAC tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

AAC tags can be added to AAC files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3, WMA and AAC playback

- When a device containing MP3, WMA or AAC files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3, WMA or AAC file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3, WMA or AAC files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When a USB memory device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reconnected (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3, .wma and .m4a are used for files other than MP3, WMA and AAC files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3, WMA and AAC files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB memory device or its terminals

- Do not leave the USB memory device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory device while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

Using the AUX port

To use the AUX port, connect a portable player, press the "MEDIA" button or select "AUX" or "A/V" on the "Source" screen.

Connecting a portable player

→P. 387

Top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ Menu screen

→P. 402

■ Operating portable players connected to the audio system

Volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable player itself.

■ When using a portable player connected to the power outlet

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable player.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the portable player or its terminal

- Do not leave portable player in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

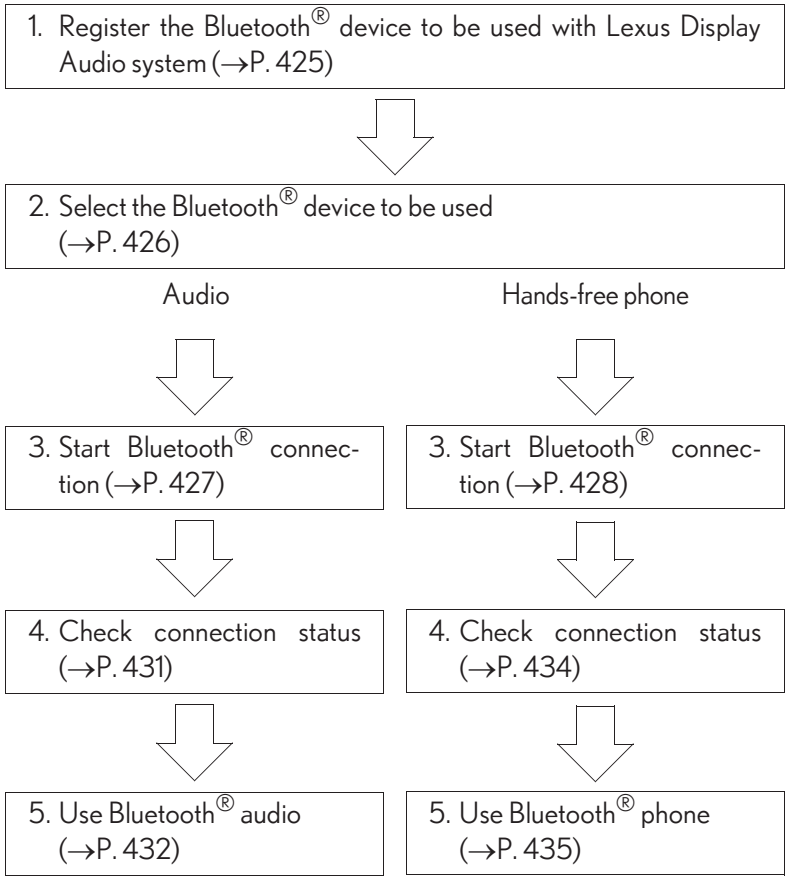
Steps for using Bluetooth® devices

The following can be performed using Bluetooth® wireless communication:

- A portable audio player can be operated and listened to via the Lexus Display Audio system
- Hands-free phone calls can be made via a cellular phone

In order to use wireless communication, register and connect a Bluetooth® device by performing the following procedures.

Device registration/connection flow



"Bluetooth* setup" screen

Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ When displaying "Bluetooth* setup" screen from the "Bluetooth* audio" screen

1. Display the "Bluetooth* audio" screen. (→P. 431)
2. Move the controller to the left and select "Connect".

■ When displaying "Bluetooth* setup" screen from the phone top screen

1. Display the phone top screen. (→P. 433)
2. Move the controller to the left and select "Connect telephone".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Registering a Bluetooth® device

Bluetooth® compatible phones (HFP) and portable audio players (AVP) can be registered simultaneously. You can register up to 5 Bluetooth® devices.

How to register a Bluetooth® device

1 Turn the Bluetooth® connection setting of your device set to on.

2 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

3 Move the controller to the left and then select "Add device"

4 When this screen is displayed, search for the device name displayed on this screen on your Bluetooth® device.



For operation of the Bluetooth® device, see the manual that comes with your Bluetooth® device.

5 Register the Bluetooth® device using your Bluetooth® device.

A PIN code are not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® devices. Depending on the device, you may need to select Yes to register, or No to cancel on the device.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Removing a Bluetooth® device

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Move the controller to the left and then select "Remove device".

3 Select the device to remove.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Selecting a Bluetooth® device

If multiple Bluetooth® devices are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® device to be used. You may only use one device at a time.

How to select a Bluetooth® device

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Select the device to connect.

3 Select "Connect all", "Connect as a telephone" or "Connect as audio player".

"Connect all" means connect both the telephone and audio functions of one device.

If the desired Bluetooth® device is not displayed, register the device.
(→P. 425)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Connecting a Bluetooth® audio player

There are 2 portable audio player connection settings available: connecting from the vehicle and connecting from the portable player.

Connecting method is set to “Vehicle”

When the portable audio player is in standby for a connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the engine switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Connecting method is set to “Device”

Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system.

1 Go to “Bluetooth* setup”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Bluetooth*”

2 Select the device to connect.

3 Select “Connect all” or “Connect as audio player”.

If the desired Bluetooth® device is not displayed, register the device. (→P. 425)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Connecting a Bluetooth® phone

There are two connecting methods available: automatic and manual.

Auto connection

When you register a phone, auto connection will be activated. It is recommended to have the system set to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone in a place where a good connection can be established.

When the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered.

The system automatically connects with the most recent phone that was connected. The connected result is displayed.

Manual connection

When auto connection has failed or "Bluetooth* power" is turned off, you must connect the Bluetooth® device manually.

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Select the device to connect.

3 Select "Connect all", "Connect as a telephone" or "Connect as audio player".

If the desired Bluetooth® device is not displayed, register the device. (→P. 425)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Reconnecting a Bluetooth® phone

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.

If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, the connection must be made manually, or the phone must be reselected.

■ Connecting a phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to connect.

Displaying a Bluetooth® device details

You can confirm and change the registered device details.

Bluetooth® device registration status

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Select the desired device and then select "Device info".

① Change the name of the device

② Change the connection method

"Vehicle": Connect the audio system to the portable audio player.

"Device": Connect the portable audio player to the audio system

③ Device address

④ Compatibility profile of the device



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Restoring the default settings

Move the controller to the left and select "Defaults" on the "Device information" screen.

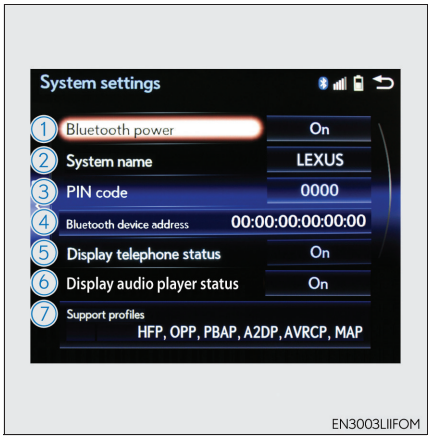
Detailed Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the detailed Bluetooth® settings.

How to check and change detailed Bluetooth® settings

1 Go to "Bluetooth* setup": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Bluetooth*"

2 Move the controller to the left and then select "System settings".



① Select to set the Bluetooth® function on/off.

② Change the name of the device.

③ Change the PIN-code.

You can change the PIN-code that is used to register your Bluetooth® devices in the system.

④ Device address

⑤ Select to set the display of the telephone status on/off

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting a telephone.

⑥ Select to set the display of the audio player status on/off

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting an audio player.

⑦ Compatibility profile of the system

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Restoring the default settings

Move the controller to the left and select "Defaults" on the "System settings" screen.

Listening to Bluetooth® Audio

The Bluetooth® audio system enables the user to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

When a Bluetooth® device cannot be connected, check the connection status on the "Bluetooth* audio" screen. If the device is not connected, either register or reconnect the device. (→P. 425, 427)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Status display

You can check indicators, such as, signal strength and battery charge on the screen.

① Connection status

② Battery charge

Depending on the type of portable audio player used, some titles may not be displayed.



Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Good ⟷ Not connected
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty

Bluetooth® audio top screen

Pressing the "MEDIA" button displays the Bluetooth® audio top screen from any screen of the selected source.

■ **Menu screen**

→P. 402

■ **Selecting a song**

Press the "<" or ">" button or turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired song number.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the "<" or ">" button.

■ **Selecting a play mode**

1 Move the controller to the right and then select "Browse".

2 Select the desired play mode, and then select a song to begin using the selected play mode.

■ **Displaying the now playing list**

Move the controller to the right and then select "Now playing list".

Using a Bluetooth® Phone

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your cellular phone without touching it.

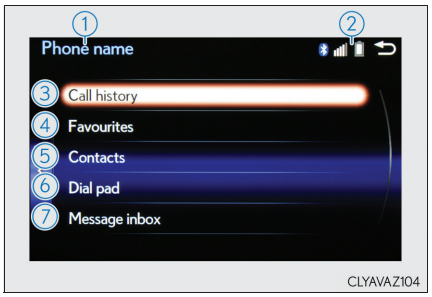
This system supports Bluetooth®. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the cellular phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and make/receive calls.

Before making a phone call, check the connection status, battery charge, call area and signal strength. (→P. 434)

If a Bluetooth® device cannot be connected, check the connection status. If the device is not connected, either register or reconnect it. (→P. 425, 428)

Phone top screen

To display the screen shown below, press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select "Telephone" on the "MENU" screen.



① Phone name

② Bluetooth® connection status (→P. 434)

③ Displays the call history screen (→P. 437)

④ Displays the favorites screen (→P. 437)

⑤ Displays the contacts screen (→P. 435)

⑥ Displays the dial pad screen (→P. 435)

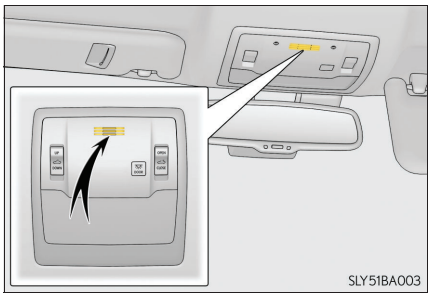
⑦ Displays the message inbox screen (→P. 441)

◆ Telephone switch (→P. 444)

◆ Microphone

The vehicle's built-in microphone is used when talking on the phone.

The person to whom you are speaking to can be heard from the front speakers.



To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 425)

Status display

You can check indicators such as signal strength and battery charge on any screen.

① Connection status
② Signal strength
③ Battery charge



Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Good ⟷ Poor ⟷ Not connected
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty
Signal strength	Excellent ⟷ Poor

Making a call

Once a Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

Dialing

1. Go to "Dial pad": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Dial pad"
2. Input a phone number. (→P. 384)
3. Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

Dialing from the phonebook

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your cellular phone. The system has one phonebook for each registered telephone. Up to 2500 contacts may be stored in each phonebook. (→P. 436)

1. Go to "Contacts": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Contacts"
2. Choose the desired contact to call from the list.
3. Choose the number and then press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or press the controller.

When the phonebook is empty

You can transfer the phone numbers in a Bluetooth® phone to the system. Operation methods differ between PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) compatible and PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones. If the cellular phone does not support either PBAP or OPP (Object Push Profile) service, you cannot transfer contacts.

1 Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel.

If the phonebook is empty, a message will be displayed.

▶ For a PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phone and "Automatic transfer" is off

2 To transfer new contacts from a cellular phone, select "Always" and then enable "Automatic transfer". (→P. 447)
Select "Once" if you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone.



▶ For a PBAP incompatible and OPP compatible Bluetooth® phone

2 Select "Transfer" and operate your cellular phone to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone.
Select "Add" if you want to add a new contact manually.



Dialing from favorites

You can make a call using numbers registered in the favorites.

1 Go to "Favourites": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Favourites"

2 Choose the desired contact to call from the list.

3 Choose the number and then press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or press the controller.

Dialing from history

You can make a call using the call history.

1 Go to "Call history": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Call history"

2 Select the desired entry from the list.

3 Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

■ **Call history list**

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the call history.

■ **International calls**

Depending on the mobile phone in use, you may not be able to make international calls.

■ **Calling by using the latest call history entry**

1 Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel to display the phone top screen.

2 Press the switch again to display the "Call history" screen.

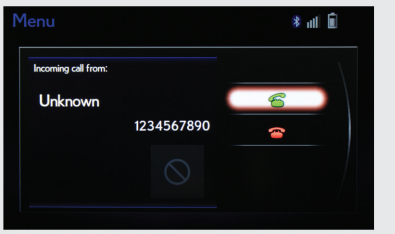
3 Press the switch again to select the latest call history entry.

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.

To answer the phone

Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .



CLYAVAZ065

To refuse a call

Press the on-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

International calls

Depending on the cellular phone in use, received international calls may not be displayed correctly.

Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



To adjust the transmit volume

Select “Transmit volume”. To restore default volume, move the controller to the left on the “Transmit volume” screen and then select “Default”.

To adjust in call volume

Move the controller to the left and then select “In-call volume”. You can also adjust the volume using the “PWR•VOL” knob or the steering switches.

To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

Select “Mute”.

Inputting tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the contacts using “p” or “w” symbols (eg. 056133 w 0123p#1).

▶ Contact including a phone number only

1 Move the controller to the left and then select “0-9”.

2 Input the number.

▶ Phone number containing a “p” symbol

When the “p” symbol is dialed in an outgoing call, there will be a pause for 2 seconds before the following digits are dialed automatically.

▶ Phone number containing a “w” symbol

When the “w” symbol is dialed in an outgoing call, you need to go to the “Release tones” screen to dial the following digits. Move the controller to the left and then select “Release tones”.

To transfer a call

Select “Handset mode” to change from a hands-free call to a cellular phone call or vice versa.

To hang up

Press the on-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

Call waiting

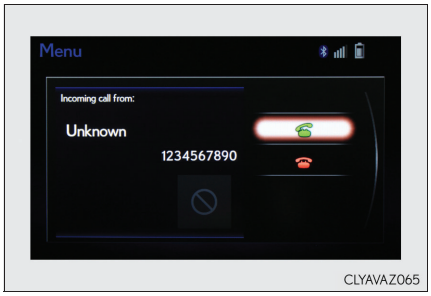
When a call is interrupted by a third party while talking, an incoming call message will be displayed.

To talk with the other party:

Press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .

To refuse the call:

Press the on-hook switch on the steering wheel or select .



Every time you press the off-hook switch on the steering wheel or select during call waiting, you will be switched to the other party.

■ **Transferring calls**

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to the cellular phone while driving.
- If you transfer from the cellular phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the cellular phone used.
- For operation of the cellular phone in use, see the phone’s manual.

■ **Call waiting operation**

Call waiting operation may differ depending on your phone company and cellular phone.

Using a Bluetooth® phone messages

Once a MAP-profile compatible Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can check the E-mail/SMS/MMS and reply to a message using the following procedures:

Checking messages

1 Go to "Message inbox": "MENU" button → "Telephone" → "Message inbox"

2 Select a message.

Moving the controller to the left while on the "Message inbox" screen displays the setting screen. (→P. 450)

Move the controller to the right while on the "Message inbox" screen and then select an account to display a message list for the selected account.

Message screen

Selecting "Next" or "Previous" displays the next or previous message.
If a message is too long, select "Read more" to display the full text.

Option menu

Move the controller to the left while on the message screen.



① Select a prepared message and send a reply message.

② Call a sender.

If more than one phone number is registered for a sender, a phone number selection screen will be displayed.

③ Call a phone number written in a message.

④ Select "Mark unread" to mark mail that has been read as unread. Select "Mark read" to mark mail that has not been read as read.

Replying to a message

1 Move the controller to the left while on the message screen.

2 Select “Quick message” to display the “Quick message” screen.

3 Select the desired message and then select “Send”.

■ Editing a quick message

1 Move the controller to the left while on the message screen.

2 Select “Quick message” and then the desired message. Move the controller to the left while the desired message is displayed.

3 Select “Edit”.

To return to the default message after editing, select “Default”.

Receiving a message popup function

This function is available when the “E-mail notification popup” or “SMS/MMS notification popup” are set to on. (→P. 450)

▶ “Incoming E-mail display” or “Incoming SMS/MMS display” are set to “Drop-down”

When E-mail/SMS/MMS are received, the incoming message is displayed on the upper side of the screen with a sound.

▶ “Incoming E-mail display” or “Incoming SMS/MMS display” are set to “Full screen”

When E-mail/SMS/MMS are received, the incoming message screen is displayed with a sound and it can be operated on the screen.

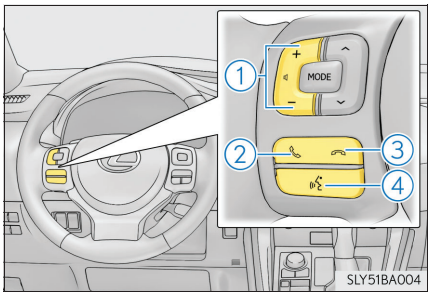
① Check the message.
② Refuse to check the message.
③ Call to receive the message sender’s phone number.



Using the steering wheel switches

The steering wheel switches can be used to operate a connected cellular phone.

Operating a telephone using the steering wheel switches



① Volume switch

During an incoming call: Adjusts the ring tone volume

During speaking on the phone: Adjusts in call volume.

The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted using this button.

② Off-hook switch

- Start call
- Receiving
- Phone top screen display

③ On-hook switch

- End call
- Refuse call

④ Talk switch

Press: Turns the voice command system on

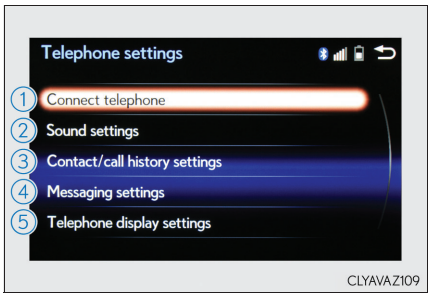
Press and hold: Turns the voice command system off

Bluetooth® phone settings

You can adjust the hands-free system to your desired settings.

"Telephone settings" screen

Go to "Telephone settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone"



① Register and connect a Bluetooth® device. (→P. 425)

② Adjust the call volume. (→P. 445)

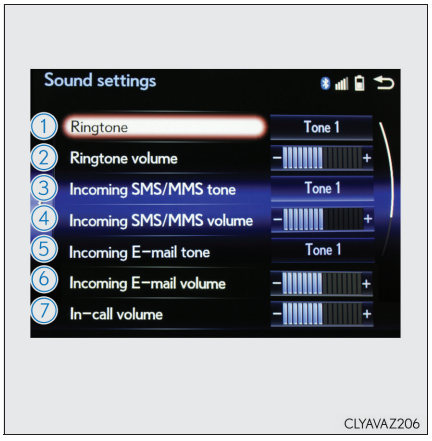
③ Change the contact/call history settings. (→P. 447)

④ Change the messaging settings. (→P. 450)

⑤ Change the phone display settings. (→P. 446)

Sound settings

Go to "Sound settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Sound settings"



① Change the ring tone type

② Adjust the ring tone volume

③ Change incoming SMS/MMS tone type

④ Adjust the incoming SMS/MMS tone volume

⑤ Change the incoming e-mail tone type

⑥ Adjust the incoming e-mail tone volume

⑦ Adjust in call tone volume

Phone display settings

Go to “Telephone display settings”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Telephone” → “Telephone display settings”

① Change the incoming call display

② Set the phonebook/history transfer status notification display on/off



■ To return to the default volume settings

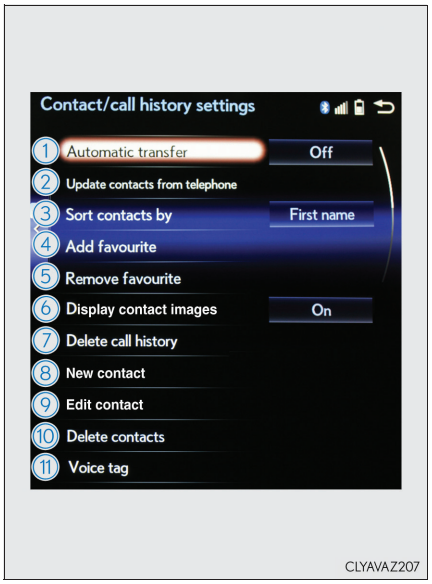
Move the controller to the left and then select “Defaults”.

Contact settings

Individual phonebooks from up to 5 phones can be registered to the system. The data for 2500 contacts (up to 4 numbers per contact) can be registered into the system's phonebook.

"Contact/call history settings" screen

Go to "Contact/call history settings": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings"



① Select to set the automatic phonebook download on/off

With this setting on, phonebook data will be automatically transferred.

Depending on the cellular phone, call history will be also transferred.

② Update phonebook

③ Change the sort contacts mode

④ Add a favorite (→P. 448)

⑤ Delete a favorite (→P. 449)

⑥ Select to set the display of contact images on/off

⑦ Delete call history. (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic Transfer" off)

⑧ Add a new contact (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)

Input the name, phone number and phone number type to add a new contact.

⑨ Edit a contact (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)

Select the desired contact to edit.

⑩ Delete contacts (→P. 449) (PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones, or compatible phones with "Automatic transfer" off)

⑪ Edit a voice tag (→P. 467)

■ Return to the default settings

Move the controller to the left and select “Defaults”.

Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system. Operation methods differ between PBAP compatible and PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones. If your cellular phone does not support either PBAP or OPP services, you cannot transfer contacts.

Go to “Transfer contacts”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Telephone” → “Contact/call history settings” → “Update contacts from telephone”

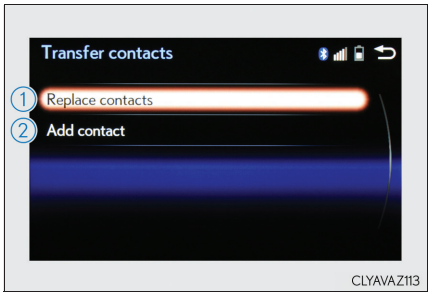
▶ For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones when “Automatic transfer” is set to on

Start the update automatically.

▶ For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones when “Automatic transfer” is set to off and PBAP incompatible Bluetooth® phones

① Select to transfer the contact from the connected cellular phone and replace the current one.

② Select to transfer the desired contact data from the connected cellular phone to add to the current one.



Registering favorites

You can register the desired contact from the phonebook. Up to 15 contacts per phone can be registered.

1 Go to “Add favourite”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Telephone” → “Contact/call history settings” → “Add favourite”

2 Choose the contact to register.

Removing favorites

1 Go to "Remove favourite": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Remove favourite"

2 Select the desired contacts.

You can select all contacts by selecting "Select all".

3 Move the controller to the left and select "Remove".

Deleting the contacts data

1 Go to "Delete contacts": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Delete contacts"

2 Select the desired contacts.

You can select all contacts by selecting "Select all".

3 Move the controller to the left and select "Delete".

■ **Phonebook data**

Phonebook data is managed separately for every registered phone. When one phone is connected, you cannot read the registered data of the other phones.

■ **When transferring contacts**

Transfer contacts while the engine is running.
If the cellular phone is OPP or PBAP compatible, you may need to input "1234" on the cellular phone for OBEX certification.

■ **When you have selected "Replace contacts" or "Add contact" to transfer contacts**

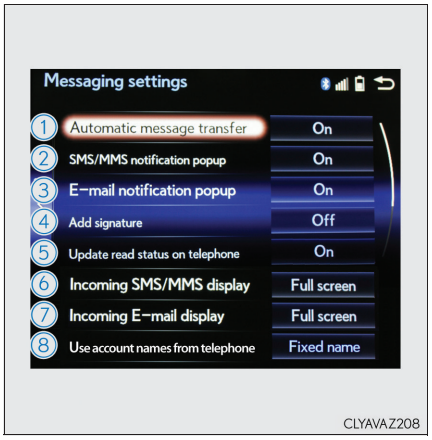
If the cellular phone does not support OPP service, you cannot use these functions. You can transfer the phonebook data only by operating your phone.

■ **Transferring contacts while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. It may not reconnect depending on the phone which is connected.

Messaging setting

Go to “Messaging settings”: “MENU” button → “Setup” → “Telephone” → “Messaging settings”



① Select to set the message forwarding from cellular phones on/off

② Select to set the new SMS/MMS notification display on/off

③ Select to set the new e-mail notification display on/off

④ Select to set the signature function on/off

⑤ Select to set the cellular phone’s message read and unread status update function on/off.

⑥ Change the incoming SMS/MMS display.

⑦ Change the incoming e-mail display.

⑧ Change the account name to “Service name” (names from the connected device) or “Fixed name” (pre-defined names).

■ **Restoring the default settings**

Move the controller to the left then select “Defaults” on the “Messaging settings” screen.

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If there is a problem with the hands-free system or a Bluetooth® device, first check the table below.

▶ When using the hands-free system with a Bluetooth® device

The hands-free system or Bluetooth® device does not work.
The Bluetooth® version of the connected cellular phone may be older than the specified version. → **Use a cellular phone with Bluetooth® version 2.0 or higher (recommended: Ver. 3.0 with EDR or higher). (→P. 456)**

▶ When registering/connecting a cellular phone

A cellular phone cannot be registered.
An incorrect passcode was entered on the cellular phone. → **Enter the correct passcode on the cellular phone.**
The registration operation has not been completed on the cellular phone side. → **Complete the registration operation on the cellular phone (approve registration on the phone).**
Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone. → **Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system. (→P. 425)**
A Bluetooth® connection cannot be made.
Another Bluetooth® device is already connected. → **Manually connect the cellular phone you wish to use to this system. (→P. 428)**
Bluetooth® function is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable the Bluetooth® function on the cellular phone.**
"Check your telephone." message is displayed.
Bluetooth® function is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable the Bluetooth® function on the cellular phone.**
Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone. → **Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system. (→P. 425)**

▶ When making/receiving a call

A call cannot be made/received.
Your vehicle is in a "No service" area. → **Move to where "No service" no longer appears on the display.**

▶ When using the phonebook

Phonebook data cannot be transferred manually/automatically.
Automatic phonebook transfer function on this system is set to off. → **Set automatic phonebook transfer function on this system to on. (→P. 447)**
Passcode has not been entered on the cellular phone. → **Enter the passcode on the cellular phone if requested (default passcode: 1234).**
Transfer operation on the cellular phone has not completed. → **Complete transfer operation on the cellular phone (approve transfer operation on the phone).**
Phonebook data cannot be edited.
Automatic phonebook transfer function on this system is set to on. → **Set automatic phonebook transfer function on this system to off. (→P. 447)**

▶ When using the Bluetooth® message function

Messages cannot be viewed.
Message transfer is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable message transfer on the cellular phone (approve message transfer on the phone).**
Automatic transfer function on this system is set to off. → **Set automatic transfer function on this system to on. (→P. 450)**
New message notifications are not displayed.
Notification of SMS/MMS/E-mail reception on this system is set to off. → **Set notification of SMS/MMS/E-mail reception on this system to on. (→P. 450)**
Automatic message transfer function is not enabled on the cellular phone. → **Enable automatic transfer function on the cellular phone.**

▶ In other situations

Even though all conceivable measures have been taken, the symptom status does not change.
The cellular phone is not close enough to this system. → **Bring the cellular phone closer to this system.**
The cellular phone is the most likely cause of the symptom. → **Turn the cellular phone off, remove and reinstall the battery pack, and then restart the cellular phone.** → **Enable the cellular phone's Bluetooth® connection.** → **Stop the cellular phone's security software and close all applications.** → **Before using an application installed on the cellular phone, carefully check its source and how its operation might affect this system.**

Bluetooth®

■ When using the Bluetooth® audio system

- In the following situations, the system may not function.
  - If the portable audio player is turned off
  - If the portable audio player is not connected
  - If the portable audio player's battery is low
- There may be a delay if a cellular phone connection is made during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable audio player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ When using the hands-free system

- The audio system is muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the received call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
  If the Bluetooth® phone is too close to the system, quality of the sound may deteriorate and connection status may deteriorate.
- In the following situations, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If there is interference from the network of the cellular phone
- Depending on the type phone, certain functions may not be available.

■ Conditions under which the system will not operate

- If using a cellular phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the cellular phone is turned off
- If you are outside of cellular phone service coverage
- If the cellular phone is not connected
- If the cellular phone's battery is low
- When outgoing calls are controlled, due to heavy traffic on telephone lines, etc.
- When the cellular phone itself cannot be used
- When transferring phonebook data from the cellular phone

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the display.
If the portable audio player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, the connection status may deteriorate.
If the cellular phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, the connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/signal status**

- This display may not correspond exactly with the portable audio player or cellular phone itself.
- This system does not have a charging function.
- The portable audio player or cellular phone battery will be depleted quickly when the device is connected to Bluetooth®.

■ **When using the Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time**

The following problems may occur.

- The Bluetooth® audio connection may be interrupted.
- Noise may be heard during Bluetooth® audio playback.

■ **About the contact in this system**

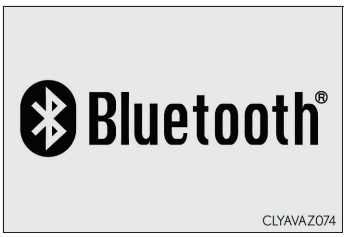
The following data is stored for every registered cellular phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Contact data
- Call history
- Favorite
- Message

When removing a Bluetooth® phone from the system, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ **About Bluetooth®**

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by FUJITSU TEN LIMITED is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



■ **Compatible models**

The Bluetooth® audio system supports portable audio players with the following specifications

- Bluetooth® specifications:
  Ver. 2.0, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 3.0 +EDR or higher)
- Profiles:
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
    This is a profile to transmit stereo audio or high quality sound to the audio system.
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.4 or higher)
    This is a profile to allow remote control the A/V equipment.

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable audio player connected.

The hands-free system supports cellular phones with the following specifications.

- Bluetooth® specification:
  Ver. 2.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 3.0 +EDR or higher)
- Profiles:
  - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.6 or higher)
    This is a profile to allow hands-free phone calls using a cellular phone or head set. It has outgoing and incoming call functions.
  - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2)
    This is a profile to transfer phonebook data. When a Bluetooth® compatible cellular phone has both PBAP and OPP, OPP cannot be used.
  - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.1)
    This is a profile to transfer phonebook data.
  - MAP (Message Access Profile) Ver.1.0 or higher
    This is a profile to using phone message.

If the cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot register it with the hands-free system. OPP, PBAP or MAP services must be selected individually.

■ **Reconnecting the portable audio player**

If the portable audio player is disconnected due to poor reception when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable audio player.

If you have switched off the portable audio player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable audio player again
- Enter the portable audio player

■ **When you sell your car**

Be sure to delete your personal data. (→P. 392)

■ Certification

CE

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following:
DoC address: FUJITSU TEN LIMITED
2-28, Gosho-dori 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510,
Japan

С настоящето, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, декларира, че FT0042D е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED tímto prohlašuje, že tento FT0042D je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Ovim FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, izjavljuje da je FT0042D u skladu s bitnim zahtjevima drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Undertegnede FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr FT0042D overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, dass sich das Gerät FT0042D in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab FUJITSU TEN LIMITED seadme FT0042D vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, declares that this FT0042D is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que el FT0042D cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ FUJITSU TEN LIMITED ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ FT0042D ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED déclare que l'appareil FT0042D est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Con la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dichiara che questo FT0042D è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklarē, ka FT0042D atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklaruoja, kad šis FT0042D atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hierbij verklaart FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dat het toestel FT0042D in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, jiddikjara li dan FT0042D jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulírott, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED nyilatkozom, hogy a FT0042D megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Niniejszym FUJITSU TEN LIMITED oświadcza, że FT0042D jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que este FT0042D está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Prin prezenta, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, declară că aparatul FT0042D este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED izjavlja, da je ta FT0042D v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED týmto vyhlasuje, že FT0042D spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

FUJITSU TEN LIMITED vakuuttaa täten että FT0042D tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar FUJITSU TEN LIMITED att denna FT0042D står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir FUJITSU TEN LIMITED yfir því að FT0042D er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved at utstyret FT0042D er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Ovim , FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, izjavljuje da ovaj FT0042D je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim , FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, izjavljuje da ovaj FT0042C je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, deklaroj qe ky FT0042D eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
İşbu belge ile FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, bu FT0042D in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

WARNING

■ **While driving**

Do not operate the portable audio player, cellular phone or connect a device to the Bluetooth® system.

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

NOTICE

■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your portable audio player or cellular phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable audio player or cellular phone.

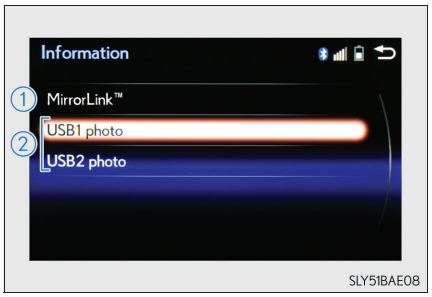
“Information” screen

Display “Information” screen

Go to “Information”: “MENU” button → “Info”

① Display the “MirrorLink™” screen. (→P. 462)

② Display the “USB photo” screen. (→P. 465)



MirrorLink™

The MirrorLink™ function enables operations of some smartphone content via the Lexus Display Audio system.

Depending on differences between models or software version etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

Connect a smartphone to USB port using a USB cable.
For safety reasons, the safe driving screen is displayed while driving depending on the application.

Connecting a smartphone

→P. 387

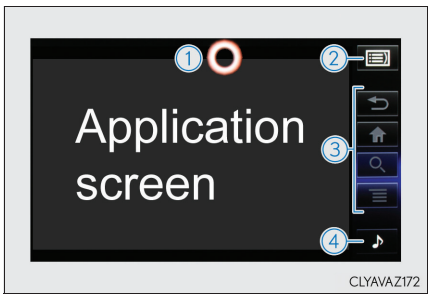
Using MirrorLink™ function

1 Go to "MirrorLink™": "MENU" button → "Info" → "MirrorLink™"

2 Select the desired application on the application list screen.

MirrorLink™ screen

Follow the specific operation procedures for the smartphone application.



① Displays the application screen and operation pointer.

The pointer is controlled by operating the controller.

When the controller is not operated for a few seconds, the pointer will disappear.

② Return application list screen

If you select the other application, the new application screen will displayed.

③ Displays software buttons that function as the buttons on the smartphone.

④ Change the other audio source (Radio, Disc, etc.).

- To change control area from the ②, ③ and ④ areas to the ① area, move the controller to the left.
- To change control areas from the ① area to the ②, ③ and ④ area, move the pointer to the right-most position then move the controller to the right or press the back button of the controller.

Menu screen

To display the left menu screen, turn the controller to the left while the MirrorLink™ screen is being displayed.

① Select a device

② Change the screen size

③ Adjust the display settings.



Selecting a MirrorLink™ device

If more than one MirrorLink™ device is available, select the desired device.

1 Select "MirrorLink™ device select" on the left menu screen.

2 Select "MirrorLink™1" or "MirrorLink™2".

Operational conditions

- When MirrorLink™ is activated, previous applications, run with a USB, are closed, and vice versa.
- This function is not available if the smartphone is not compliant with MirrorLink™ of Car Connectivity Consortium™.

About MirrorLink™

MirrorLink is a registered trademark of Car Connectivity Consortium, Inc.

WARNING

While driving

Do not connect smartphone or operate the controls.

NOTICE

To avoid damaging the smartphone

- Do not leave your smartphone in the vehicle. The temperature inside may rise to a level that could damage the smartphone.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the smartphone device while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

USB photo

Connecting a USB memory device enables you to enjoy photo on the Lexus Display Audio display.

USB photo screen

Go to "USB photo": "MENU" button → "Info" → "USB1 photo" or "USB2 photo"

Connecting a USB memory device

→P. 387

Menu screen

Move the controller to the left to display the menu screen.

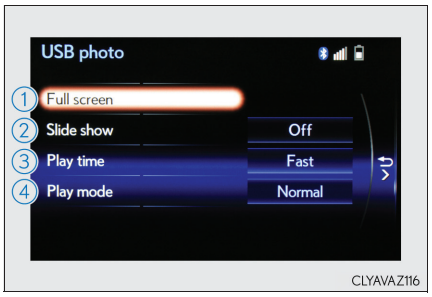
① Change the full screen mode.

② Select to set the slide show display on/off.

Start the slide show at a selected folder.

③ Change the play speed.

④ Change the play mode.



Selecting a folder

1 Move the controller to the right and select "Browse".

2 Select the desired folder, and then select a file to begin using the selected folder.

■ **USB memory functions**

→P. 418

■ **USB memory**

● Compatible devices

USB memory device that can be used for JPEG display.

● Compatible device formats

The following device format can be used:

- USB communication format: USB2.0 FS (480 Mbps)
- File system format: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

● JPEG file compatibility

- Compatible image size: Maximum 10MB
- Compatible pixel size: Maximum 10,000,000 pixels

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the USB memory device or its terminals**

→P. 421

Speech command system

Using the speech command system enables you to make a call to contacts that have a voice tag.

Editing a voice tag

You can register desired contacts to enable the speech command system. Up to 50 contacts per phone can be registered.

1 Go to "Voice tags": "MENU" button → "Setup" → "Telephone" → "Contact/call history settings" → "Voice tag" → "New" or "Edit"

2 Select the desired contact.

3 Move the controller to the left and then select "REC".

4 Say the registered voice tag.

To play the registered voice, select "Play".

■ Deleting a voice tag

1 Display the "Voice tags" screen.

2 Select "Delete" and then the desired contact.

3 Move the controller to the left and then select "Delete".

Using the speech command system

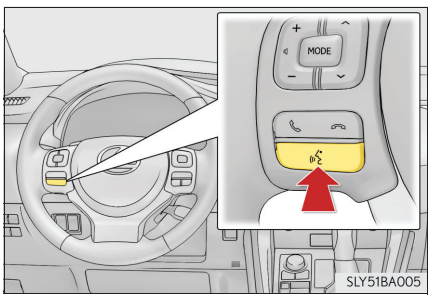
1 Press the talk switch.

To cancel the speech command system, press and hold the talk switch.

2 After a beep sounds, say the desired contact name.

When the icon is displayed, you can speak a command.

3 If more than 1 contact name is displayed, select the desired contact name.



If more than 1 phone number is displayed, select the desired phone number.

When the off-hook switch on the steering wheel is pressed, the system calls the first phone number entry of the first contact.

■ **Microphone**
→P. 434

■ **Speech commands may not be recognized if:**
- Spoken too quickly
- Spoken at a low or high volume
- Passengers are talking while speech commands are spoken

6-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system 470

Heated steering wheel/ seat heaters/ seat ventilators 480

6-2. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 483
- Front interior light 484
- Personal lights 484
- Rear interior light 484

6-3. Using the storage features

List of storage features 486
- Glove box 487
- Console box 487
- Cup holders/ bottle holders 488
- Sunglass holder 489
- Card holders 490

Luggage compartment features 491

6-4. Other interior features

Other interior features 497
- Sun visors 497
- Vanity mirrors 497
- Clock 498
- Power outlet 498
- Wireless charger 499
- Armrest 504
- Assist grips 504
- Coat hooks 505

ERA-GLONASS 506

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system: Press the “MENU” button on the Lexus Display Audio controller, then select “Climate” to display the air conditioning control screen.

For details on the Lexus Display Audio controller, refer to “Lexus Display Audio controller” on P. 382.

Vehicles with a navigation system: Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Climate” to display the air conditioning control screen.

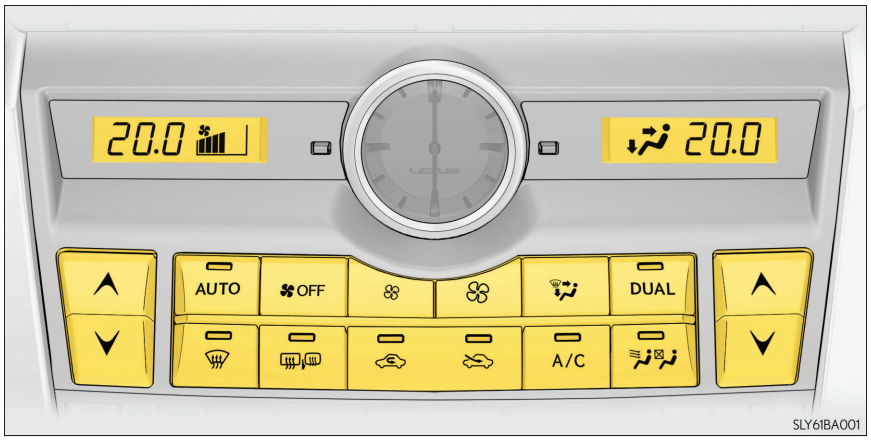
For details on the Remote Touch, refer to the “NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA STSTEM OWNER’S MANUAL”.

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

Control panel



Adjusting the temperature setting

Press  to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

Adjusting the fan speed setting

Press  to increase the fan speed and  to decrease the fan speed.

Press the “OFF” button to turn the fan off.

Change the airflow mode

To change the air outlets, press .

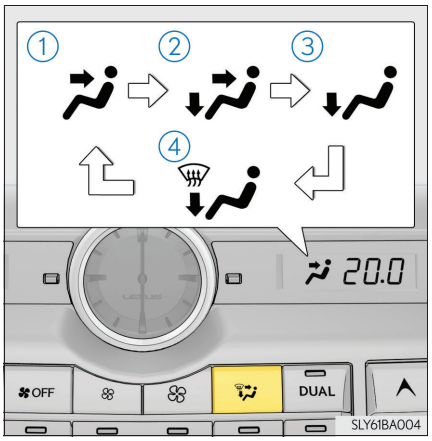
The air outlets used are switched each time the button is pressed.

① Air flows to the upper body.

② Air flows to the upper body and feet.

③ Air flows to the feet.

④ Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.



S-FLOW mode

Priority for airflow is given to the front seats, and the airflow and air conditioning for the rear seats is effectively controlled.

Press .

The indicator comes on when S-FLOW mode is on.

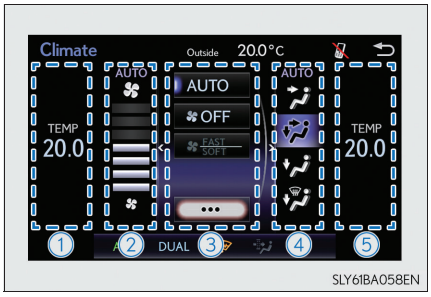
Press  again to return to the previous mode.

Other functions

- Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes (→P. 475)
- Defogging the windshield (→P. 475)
- Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (→P. 475)

Control screen

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system



① Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

② Adjust the fan speed setting

③ Select to set auto mode on/off, fan off, blower customization (→P. 476) and displaying the option control screen (→P. 474)

④ Select the air flow mode

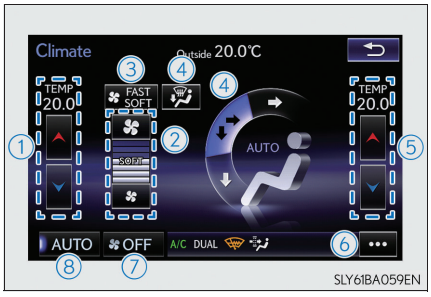
⑤ Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

1 Move the Lexus Display Audio controller left/right to select the desired item (① to ⑤).

2 When ①, ② or ⑤ is selected:

Move the controller forward/backward or turn it left/right for adjusting.
When ③ or ④ is selected:
Move the controller forward/backward or turn it left/right to select a screen button, then press the controller.

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system



① Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

② Adjust the fan speed setting

③ Changing the fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation (→P. 476)

④ Select the air flow mode

⑤ Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

⑥ Display the option control screen (→P. 474)

⑦ Turn the fan off

⑧ Select to set automatic mode on/off

Using the touchpad of the Remote Touch, select the button on the screen and then activate it by pressing on or double tapping the touchpad.

■ Option control screen

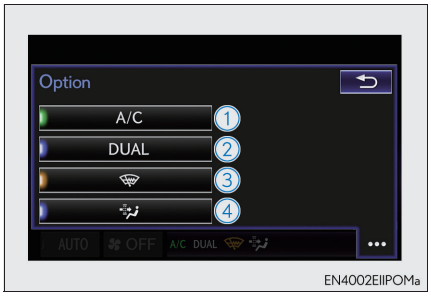
Select ••• on the climate screen to display the option control screen. The functions can be switched on and off.

▶ Vehicles with a Lexus Display Audio system

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system



EN4002LIIFOM



EN4002EIIPOMa

① Select to set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

② Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P. 475)

③ Prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades (if equipped) (→P. 476)

④ Remove pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode) (→P. 476)

Air conditioning controls

■ Using the automatic mode

1 Press the "AUTO" button.

2 Adjust the temperature setting.

3 To stop the operation, press the "OFF" button.

When in automatic mode, the air outlet modes and fan speed levels are not displayed in the air conditioning control panel display.

■ Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated are maintained.

■ **Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode)**

To turn on the "DUAL" mode, perform any of the following procedures:

- Press the "DUAL" button.
- Select "DUAL" on the option control screen.
- Adjust the temperature setting of the passenger side with the passenger side temperature adjustment button.

  The indicator comes on when the "DUAL" mode is on.

Other functions

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Press .

The mode switches between (recirculated air mode) and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

■ **Defogging the windshield**

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press .

Set  to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press  again when the windshield is defogged.

■ **Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors**

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press .

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ **Pollen removal mode**

Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Select  on the option control screen.

When the pollen removal mode is on,  is displayed on the air conditioning control screen.

In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the dehumidification function may operate.

The pollens are filtered out even if the pollen removal mode is turned off.

■ **Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)**

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

Select  on the option control screen.

When the windshield wiper de-icer is on,  is displayed on the air conditioning control screen.

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ **Blower customization**

Fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation can be customized.

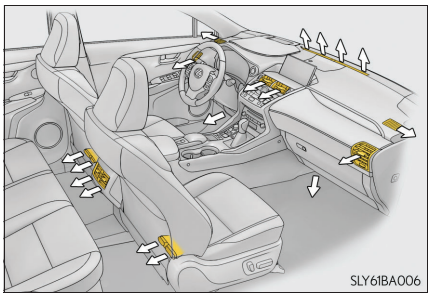
To change the fan speed setting mode, select  on the air conditioning control screen.

Each time  is selected, the fan speed setting mode changes as follows.
"MEDIUM"→"SOFT"→"FAST"→"MEDIUM"

Air outlets

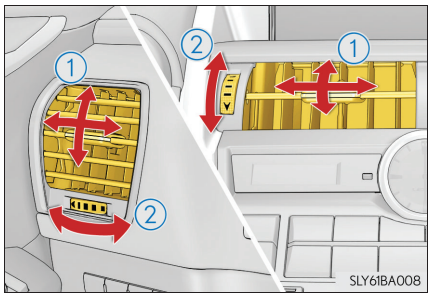
■ **Location of air outlets**

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.

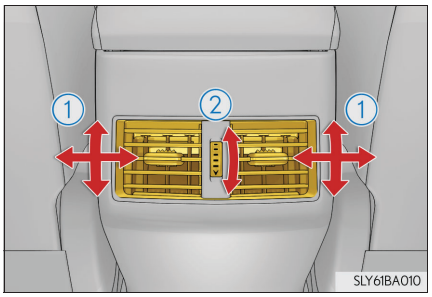


■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front



▶ Rear



① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent

■ Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys (vehicles with driving position memory)

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock a passenger door.
- The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed.* For details, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same time.

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.
Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the "AUTO" button is pressed or "AUTO" is selected.

■ Fogging up of the windows

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Pressing "A/C" button or selecting "A/C" will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.
- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ **Outside/recirculated air mode**

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set  to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ **When the outside temperature is low**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is pressed or "A/C" is selected.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

- In the Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency
  - Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
  - Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected
- To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations
  - Adjust the fan speed
  - Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P. 552

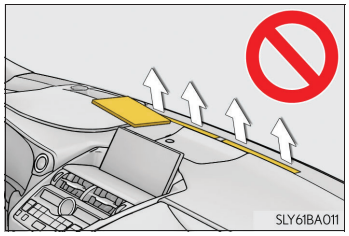
■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. A/C automatic mode switch operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 661)

WARNING

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

- Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



■ To prevent burns

- Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.
- Vehicles with windshield wiper de-icer: Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters*/seat ventilators*

Heated steering wheel and seat heaters heat the side grips of the steering wheel and seats, respectively. Seat ventilators maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.

⚠ WARNING

- Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel and seats when the heater is on:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Observe the following precautions to prevent minor burns or overheating:
  - Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
  - Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

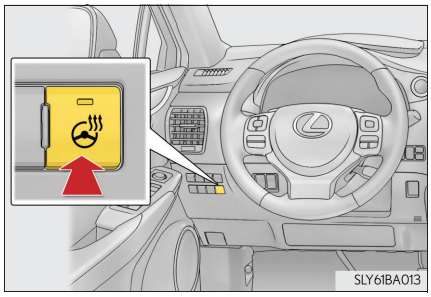
NOTICE

- Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not use the functions when the engine is off.

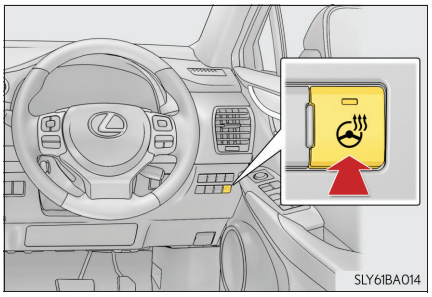
*: If equipped

Heated steering wheel

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



Turns the heated steering wheel on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heated steering wheel is operating.

■ **Operating condition**

The heated steering wheel can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Timer**

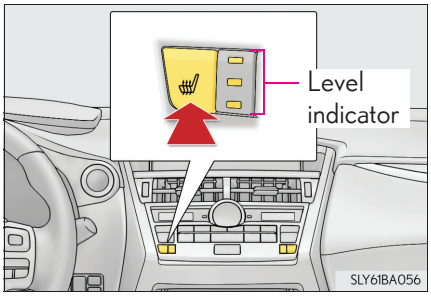
The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Seat heaters

▶ Vehicles without seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.
Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

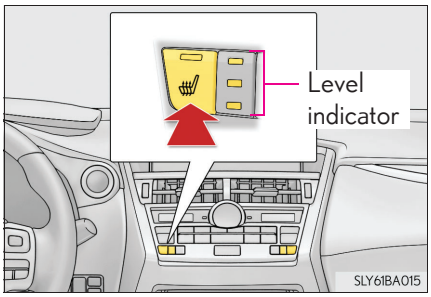
The level indicator (amber) light up during operation.



▶ Vehicles with seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.
Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The indicator (amber) and level indicator (green) light up during operation.



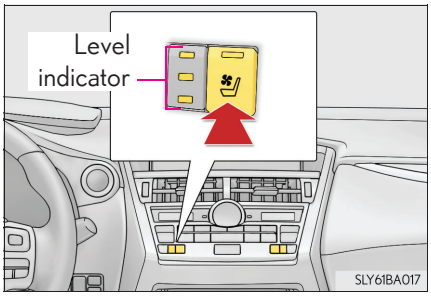
■ **Operating condition**

The seat heaters can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.
Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

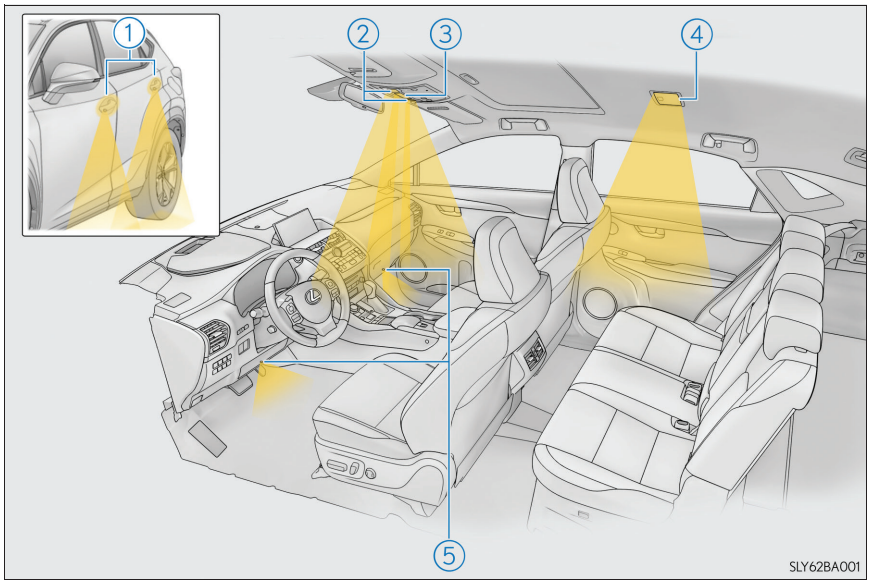
The indicator (green) and level indicator (green) light up during operation.



■ **Operating condition**

The seat ventilators can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Interior lights list



① Outer foot lights (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

② Personal lights (→P. 484)

③ Front interior light (→P. 484)

④ Rear interior light (→P. 484)

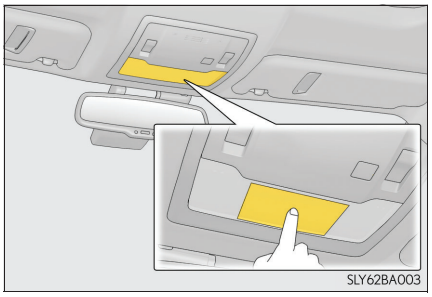
⑤ Footwell lights

- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the footwell lights will turn on. However, if the instrument panel light control switch is turned to minimum, the footwell lights will turn off. (→P. 102)
- When shifting the shift lever is in a position other than P, the brightness of the footwell light will reduce intensity.

Front interior light

Turns the light on/off (touch the light)

The rear interior light also turns on/off. However, when the rear interior light has already been turned on, it will not be controlled by front interior light operations.

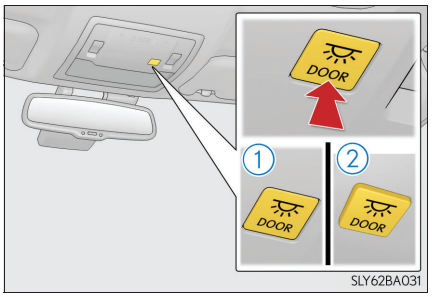

SLY62BA003

Turns the door position on/off

① On

The front and rear interior lights turn on/off when a door is opened/closed.

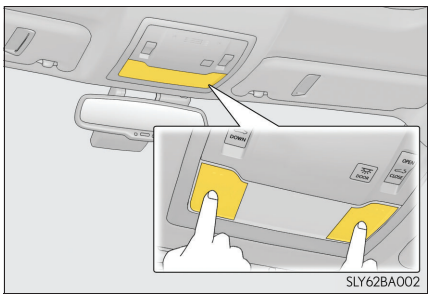
② Off



SLY62BA031

Personal lights

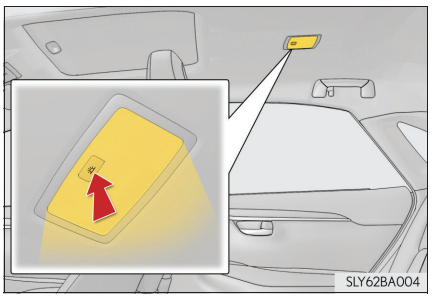
Turns the lights on/off (touch the lights)


SLY62BA002

Rear interior light

Turns the light on/off

The rear interior light is also turned on/off by the front interior light operations. If the light is turned on by front interior light operation, the rear interior light cannot turn off by pressing the switch.

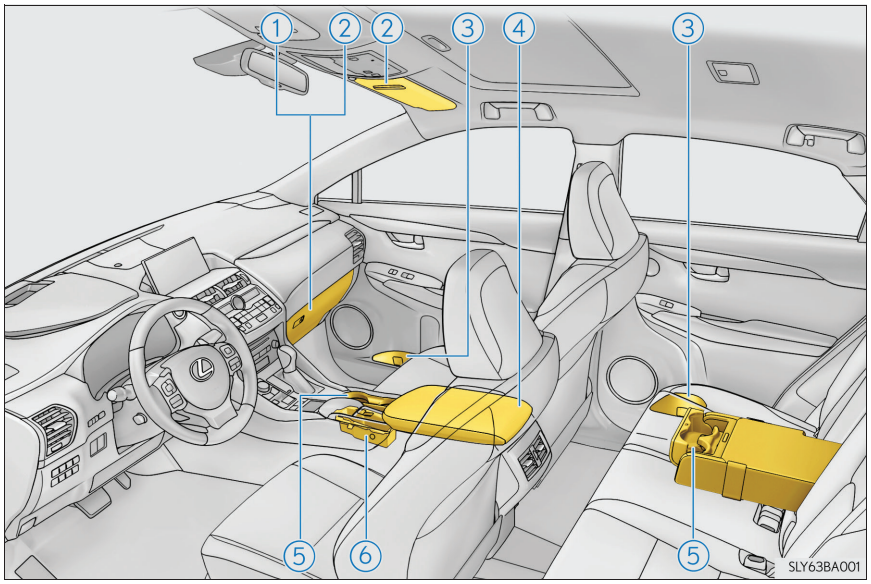

SLY62BA004

- Illuminated entry system: The lights automatically turn on/off according to engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.
- If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.
- In the following cases, the front interior lights and personal lights may not respond as normal.
  - When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
  - When operated with a wet hand
  - When wearing gloves, etc.
- Settings (e.g. the time elapsed before the lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P. 659)

NOTICE

- Never remove the lens for the front interior light and personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged. If the lens need to remove, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

List of storage features



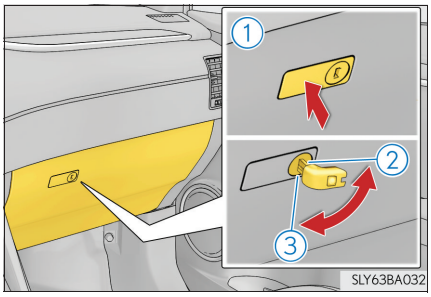
① Glove box (→P. 487)
② Card holders (→P. 490)
③ Bottle holders (→P. 488)
④ Console box (→P. 487)
⑤ Cup holders (→P. 488)
⑥ Sunglass holder (→P. 489)

WARNING

- Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:
  - Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
  - Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.
- When driving or when the glove box and the console box are not in use, keep it closed.
  In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

Glove box

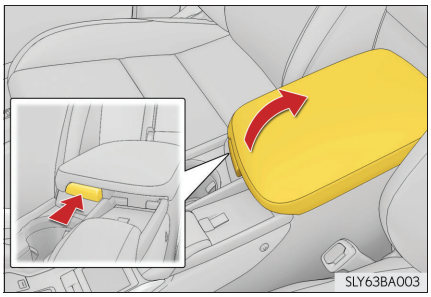
① Open (press the button)
② Unlock with the mechanical key
③ Lock with the mechanical key



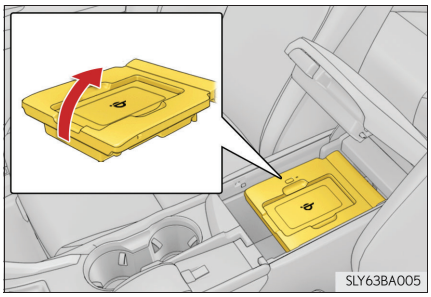
The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

Console box

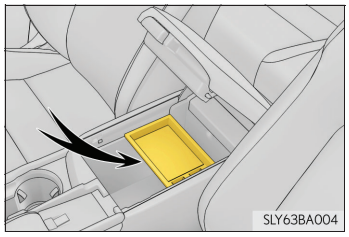
1 Lift the lid while pushing the button to release the lock.



2 Vehicles with the wireless charger: Lift the wireless charger.



- Vehicles without the wireless charger: The tray slides forward/backward and can be removed.

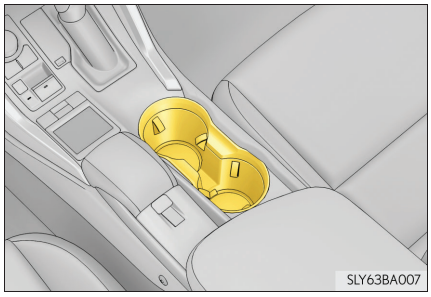


- The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

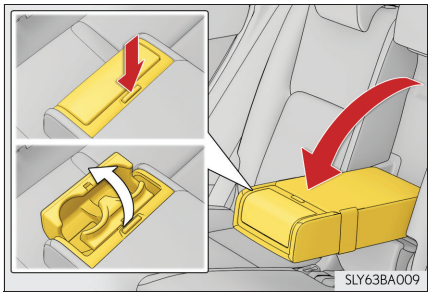
Cup holders/bottle holders

Cup holders

▶ Front



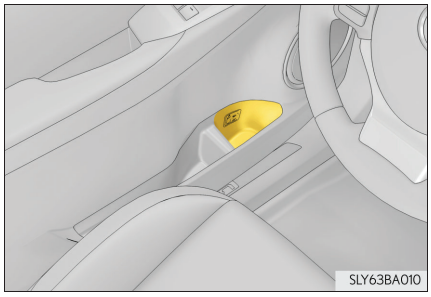
▶ Rear



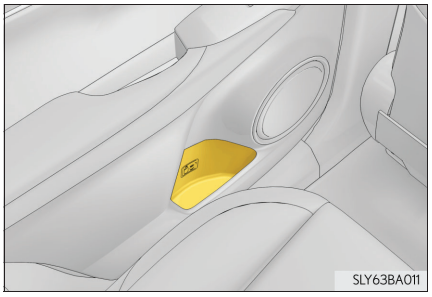
Fold down the armrest and release the button.

Bottle holders

▶ Front



▶ Rear



- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

⚠ WARNING

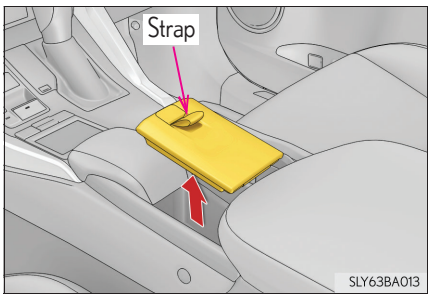
Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

NOTICE

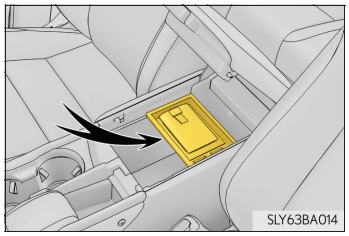
- To prevent damage to the rear cup holder, stow the cup holder before stowing the armrest.
- Do not place open bottles or glass and paper cups containing liquid in the bottle holders. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

Sunglass holder

Remove the lid using the strap.



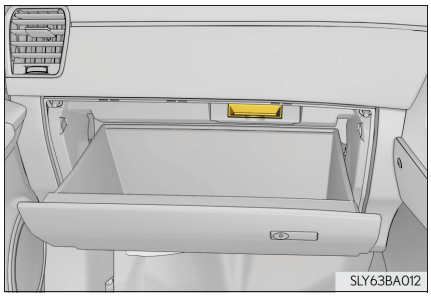
- The removed the lid of the sunglass holder can be stored on the tray in the console box.

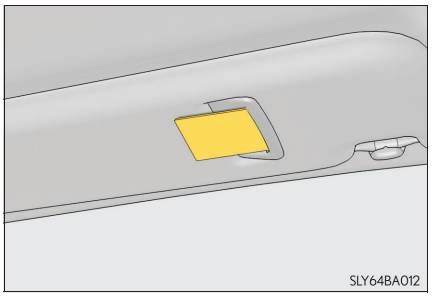


- The back side of the lid for the sunglass holder can be used as a vanity mirror. (→P. 497)

Card holders

- Inside the glove box (right-hand drive vehicles only)
- On the sun visors





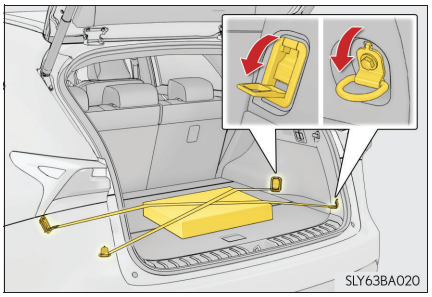
Open the glove box. (→P. 487)

Luggage compartment features

Cargo hooks

Raise the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.



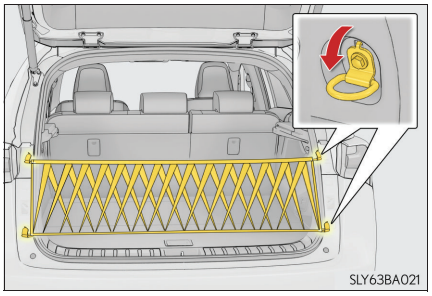
WARNING

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Cargo net hooks

Raise the hook to use.

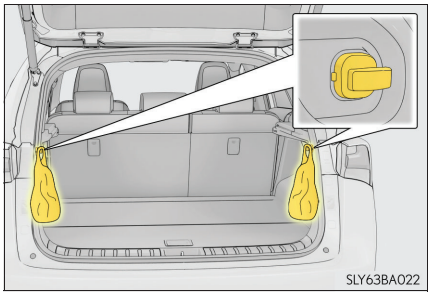
The cargo net can be hanged, using the hook.



WARNING

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Grocery bag hooks



NOTICE

Do not hang any object heavier than 5 kg (11 lb.) on the grocery bag hooks.

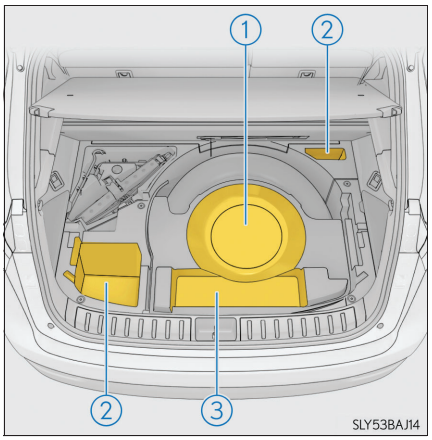
Deck under tray

Lift the deck board and attach the hook. (→P. 493) The following item can be stowed.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

① First-aid kit and other items
② Accessories
③ Warning reflector*

*: The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

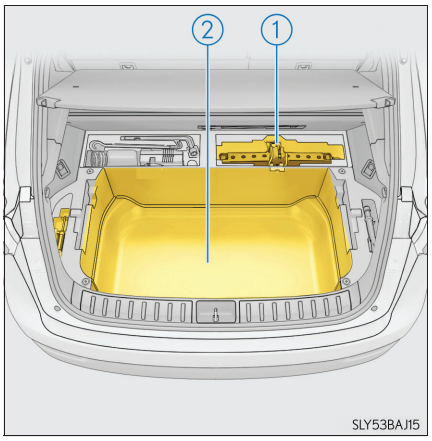


▶ Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit

① Warning reflector* and other items

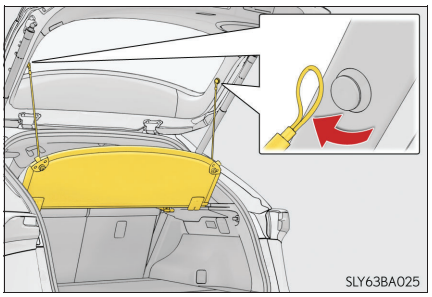
② First-aid kit and other items

*: The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

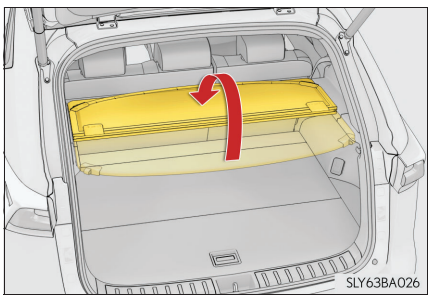


Deck board

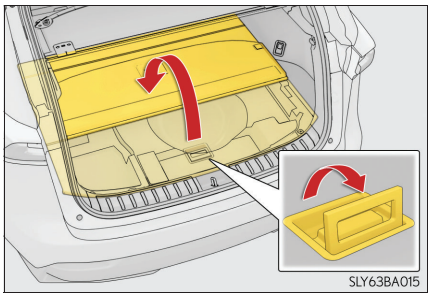
1 If the luggage cover is used: Unhook the cords.



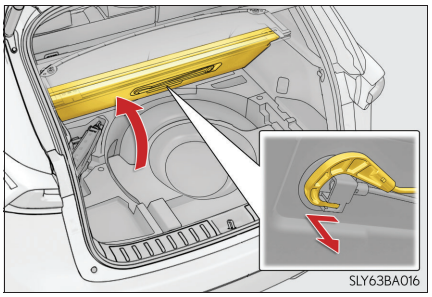
2 If the luggage cover is used: Fold up the luggage cover.



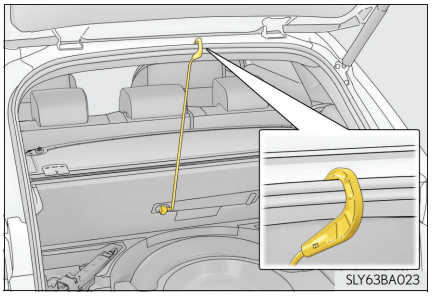
3 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.



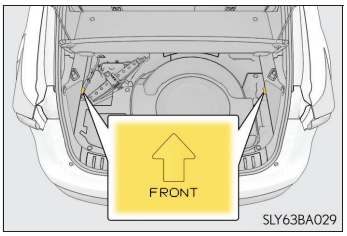
4 Lift the deck board and remove the hook on the backside of the deck board.



5 Attach the hook to the upper edge of the back door opening as shown.



When attaching the side deck board, attach it so that the "↑FRONT" mark points to the front side of the vehicle.

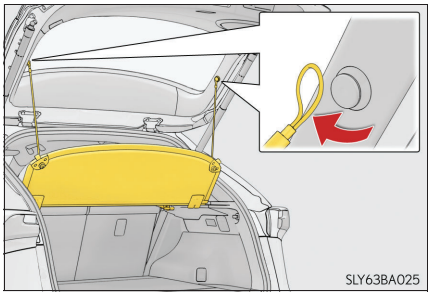


⚠ WARNING

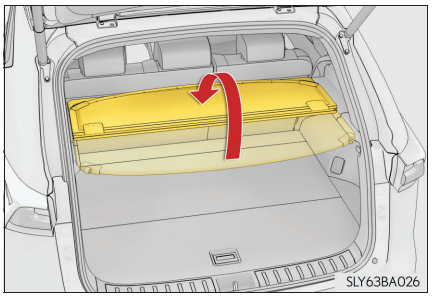
If the deck boards are opened or removed, return them to their original positions before driving. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the deck boards or the items stored in the deck under tray.

Stowing the luggage cover

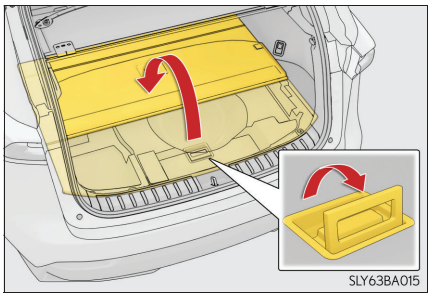
1 Unhook the cords.



2 Fold up the luggage cover.

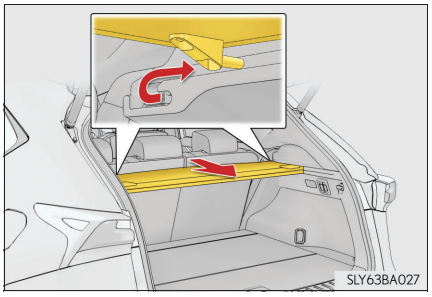


3 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.

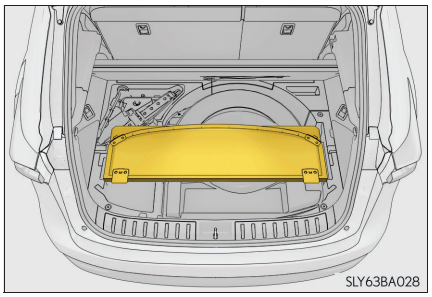


4 Remove the luggage cover.

When the seatback for the rear seat is collapsed to the rear, remove the cover after the cover most upright position. (→P. 171)



5 Stow the luggage cover in the deck under tray while lifting the deck board.



WARNING

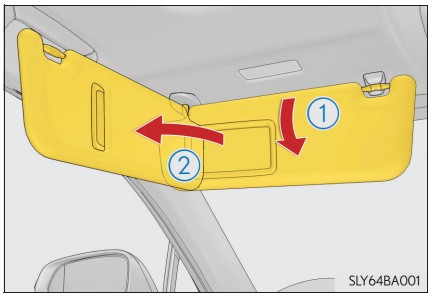
- Do not place anything on the luggage cover. In the event of sudden braking or turning, the item may go flying and strike an occupant. This could lead to an unexpected accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.

Other interior features

Sun visors

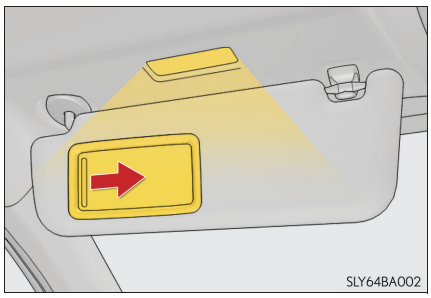
① To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

② To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.



Vanity mirrors

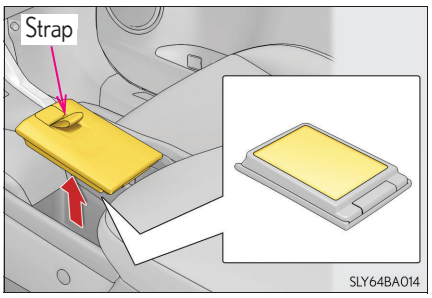
▶ On the sun visors



Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

▶ On the sunglass holder



Remove the lid of sunglasses holder using the strap. (→P. 489)

There is a vanity mirror on the back side of the lid.

If the vanity lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the light will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

NOTICE

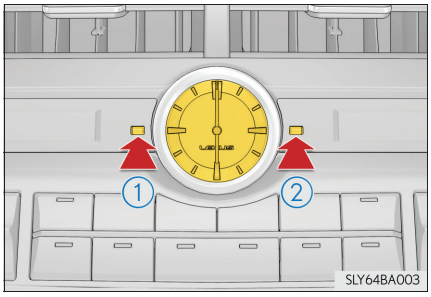
- To prevent damage to the vanity mirror, when the lid of sunglasses holder is removed, do not subject it to strong impacts or set heavy objects on top of it.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Clock

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.

① Pressing and holding will move the clock hands backward.

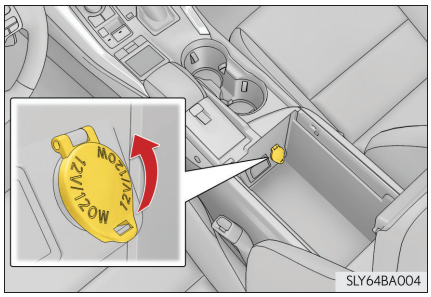
② Pressing and holding will move the clock hands forward.



Power outlet

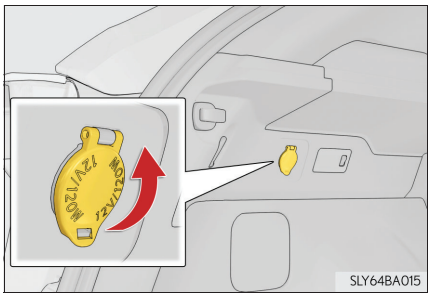
Please use a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC /10 A (power consumption of 120 W).
When using electronic goods, make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets is less than 120 W.

▶ Inside the console box



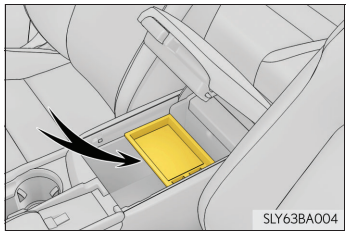
Open the lid.

▶ In the luggage compartment



Open the lid.

- The power outlet can be used when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.
- The notch in console box allows power cables to be passed through even when the console box is closed.



NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the power outlet, close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
  Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Wireless charger (if equipped)

A portable device can be charged by just placing Qi standard wireless charge compatible portable devices according to the Wireless Power Consortium, such as smart phones and mobile batteries, etc., on the charge area.

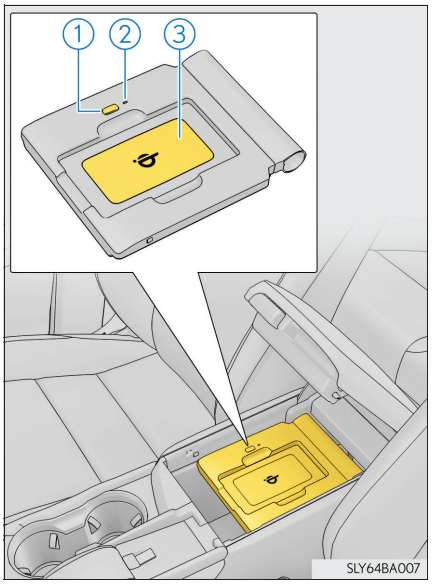
This function cannot be used with portable devices that are larger than the charging area. Also, depending on the portable device, it may not operate as normal. Please read the operation manual for portable devices to be used.

The "Qi" symbol

The "Qi" symbol is a trademark of the Wireless Power Consortium.

Name for all parts

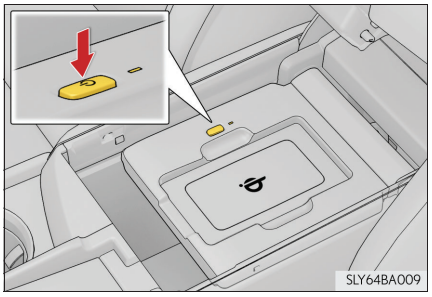
① Power supply switch
② Operation indicator light
③ Charge area



Using the wireless charger

1 Open the console box. (→P. 487)

2 Press the power supply switch of the wireless charger.

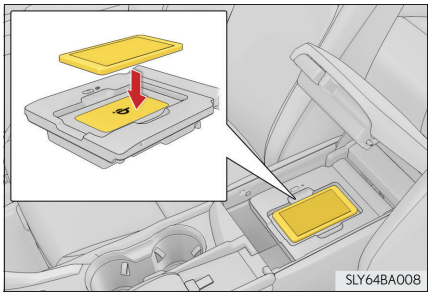


Switches on and off with each press of the power supply switch.

When turned on, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.

Even with the engine off, the on/off state of the power supply switch is memorized.

3 Place the charging side of the portable device down.



When charging, the operation indicator light (orange) comes on.

If charging is not occurring, try placing the portable device as close to the center of the charging area as possible.

When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.

● Recharging function

- When charging is complete and after a fixed time in the charge suspension state, charging restarts.
- When the portable device is moved, charging is stopped for a moment and then it restarts.

Lighting conditions of operation indicator light

Operation indicator light	Conditions
Turning off	When the Wireless charger power supply is off
Green (comes on)	On Standby (charging possible state)
	When charging is complete*
Orange (comes on)	When placing the portable device on the charging area (detecting the portable device)
	Charging

*: Depending on the portable device, there are cases where the operation indicator light will continue being lit up orange even after the charging is complete.

● When the operation indicator light flashes

When an error occurs, the operation indicator light flashes an orange color. Handle the error based on the following table.

Operation indicator light	Suspected causes	Handling method
Flashing repeatedly once every second (Orange)	Vehicle to charger communication failure.	Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Repeatedly flashes 3 times continuously (Orange)	A foreign substance is between the portable device and charge area.	Remove the foreign substance from between portable device and the charge area.
	The portable device is out of sync due to the device being shifted from its position.	Place the portable device near the center of the charge area.
Repeatedly flashes 4 times continuously (Orange)	Temperature rising within the wireless charger.	Stop charging at once and start charging again after for a while.

■ **The wireless charger can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Usable portable devices**

Qi standard wireless charge standard can be used on compatible devices.
However, not all Qi standard devices and compatibility are guaranteed.

Starting with mobile phones and smart phones, it is aimed for low power electrically supplied portable devices of no more than 5W.

■ **When covers and accessories are attached to portable devices**

Do not charge in situations where cover and accessories not able to handle Qi are attached to the portable device. Depending on the type of cover and accessory, it may not be possible to charge. When charging is not performed even with the portable device placed on the charge area, remove the cover and accessories.

■ **While charging, noise enters the AM radio**

Turn off the wireless charger and confirm that the noise has decreased. If the noise decreases, continuously pushing the power supply switch of the wireless charger for 2 seconds, the frequency of the charger can be changed and the noise can be reduced. Also, on that occasion, the operation indicator light will flash orange 2 times.

■ **Important points of the wireless charger**

- If the electronic key cannot be detected within the vehicle interior, charging cannot be done. When the door is opened and closed, charging may be temporarily suspended.
- When charging, the wireless charging device and portable device will get warmer, however this is not a malfunction.
  When a portable device gets warm while charging, charging may stop due to the protection function on the portable device side. In this case, when the temperature of the portable device drops significantly, charge again.

■ **Operation sounds**

When the power supply is turned on, while searching for the portable device a sound will be produced, however this is not a malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

When charging a portable device, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the main part of the portable device while driving.

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators, as well as any other electrical medical device, should consult their physician about the usage of the wireless charger. The operations of the wireless charger may have an affect on medical devices.

■ **To prevent damage or burns**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in a possibility of equipment failure and damage, catch fire, burns due to overheat.

- Do not insert any metallic objects between the charging area and the portable device while charging
- Do not attach stickers, metallic objects, etc., to the charger area or portable device
- Do not cover with cloth, etc., and charge
- Do not charge portable devices other than designated
- Do not attempt to dismantle for disassembly or modifications
- Do not hit or apply a strong force

NOTICE

■ **Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly**

In the following conditions, it may not operate correctly

- The portable device is fully charged
- There is foreign matter between the charge area and portable device
- The temperature of the portable device gets higher from charging
- The charging surface of the portable device is facing up
- The placement of the portable device is out of alignment with the charge area
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby

In addition, excluding the above-mentioned, when the charger does not perform normally or the operation display lamp is flashing continuously, it is considered that the wireless charger is malfunctioning. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **To prevent failure or damage to data**

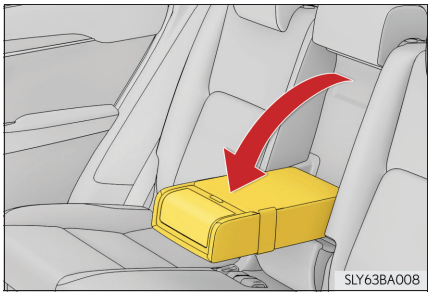
- Do not bring magnetic cards, such as credit cards, or magnetic recording media, etc., close to the charger while charging, otherwise, data may disappear under the influence of magnetism. Also, do not bring precision instruments such as wrist watches, etc., close to the charger, as such objects may break.
- Do not leave portable devices in the cabin. The temperature inside the cabin may become high, when under the sun, and cause damage to the device.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

When the engine is stopped, do not use the wireless charger for a long time.

Armrest

Fold down the armrest for use.

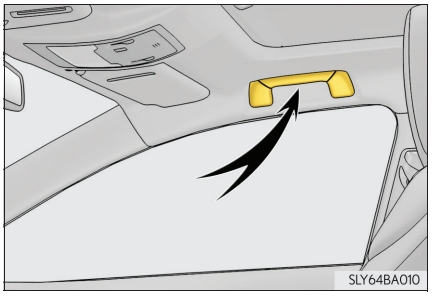


NOTICE

To prevent damage to the armrest, do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



WARNING

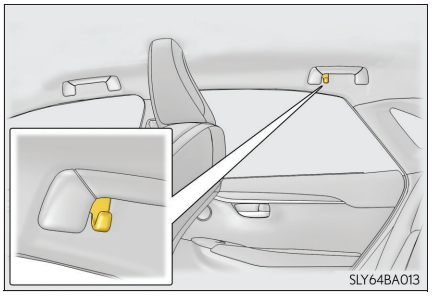
Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the assist grip, do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the rear assist grips.



WARNING

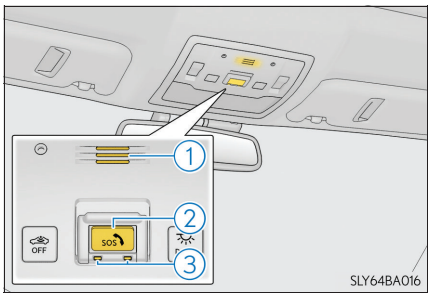
Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

ERA-GLONASS*

ERA-GLONASS is a telematics service that uses Global Navigation Satellite System (GLONASS) data and embedded cellular technology to enable the following emergency calls to be made: Automatic emergency calls (Automatic Collision Notification) and manual emergency calls (by pressing the "SOS" button). This service is required by Eurasian Customs Union Regulations.

System components

① Microphone
② "SOS" button
③ Indicator lights



Emergency Notification Services

■ Automatic Collision Notification

If any airbag deploys, the system is designed to automatically call the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP).* The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P. 507)

■ Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency, push the "SOS" button to reach the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP). The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

*: If equipped

Indicator lights

When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light will illuminate for 10 seconds and then the green indicator light will illuminate for 2 seconds, indicating that the system is enabled. The indicator lights indicate the following:

- If the green indicator light illuminates and stays on, the system is enabled.
- If the green indicator light flashes, an emergency call is being made (either automatically or manually).
- If no indicator lights illuminate, the system is not enabled.
- If the red indicator light illuminates any time other than immediately after the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the system may be malfunctioning or the backup battery may be depleted. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  The service life of the backup battery is 3 years or more.

⚠ WARNING

■ When the Emergency Call may not be made

- Any of the followings may occur. In such cases, report to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) by other means such as nearby public phones.
  - It may sometimes be difficult to connect to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) even in the reception area of the cellular phone due to the reception level, or if the line is busy.
    In such cases, you may not be able to connect to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) and thus will not be able to make emergency calls and report to the emergency departments even though the system tries to connect to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP).
  - When the vehicle is out of the cellular phone service area, the Emergency Call cannot be made.
  - When any related equipment (such as the "SOS" button panel, indicator lights, microphone, speaker, DCM, antenna, or any wires connecting the equipment.) has an abnormality, is damaged or broken, the Emergency Call cannot be made.
  - During the Emergency Call, the system makes repeated attempts to connect to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP). However, if it cannot connect to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) due to poor radio wave reception, the system may not be able to connect to the cellular network and the call may finish without connecting. The red indicator light will blink for approximately 30 seconds to indicate this disconnection.
  - This device may not function if a shock is applied to it.
- If the battery's voltage decreases or there is a disconnection, the system may not be able to access the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP).

WARNING

■ When replacing DCM to a new one

- ERA-GLONASS have to be activated. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ For your safety

- Please drive safely.
  The function of this system is to assist you in making the Emergency Call in case of accidents as traffic accidents or sudden medical emergencies, and it does not protect the driver or the passengers in any way. Please drive safely and fasten your seat belts at all times for your safety.
- In case of an emergency, make lives the top priority.
- If you smell anything burning or another unusual smell, do not stay inside the vehicle and evacuate to a safe area immediately.
- Since the system detects shocks, the automatic reporting may not always occur synchronized with the operation of the airbag system. (If the vehicle is bumped from behind, etc.)
- The airbag may not inflate even in case of an accident, if it does not involve high impact. In such cases, the system may not make emergency calls automatically. The system may also not make automatic emergency calls even if the airbag has been inflated. If any of these should occur, please report to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) by operating the "SOS" button.
- For safety, do not make the Emergency Call while driving.
  Making calls during driving may cause mishandling of the steering wheel, which may lead to unexpected accidents.
  Stop the vehicle and confirm the safety of the area before making the Emergency Call.
- When changing fuses, please use fuses that correspond to the described standard.
  If you use fuses other than those described, it may cause ignition or smoke in the circuit and may lead to a fire.
- Using the system while there is smoke or an unusual smell may cause a fire. Stop using the system immediately and consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage

Do not pour any liquid on to the "SOS" button panel, etc. and make any impact to it.

■ If the "SOS" button panel malfunctions

It may not be able to make the Emergency Call or inform you of the correct condition of the system. If the "SOS" button panel has been broken, please consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If there is any malfunction of the speaker or the microphone during the Emergency Call or the Manual Maintenance Check

You will not be able to communicate with the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator.
If any of this equipment has been broken, please consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

7-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 510

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior..... 514

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 517

7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions.....520

Hood 522

Positioning a floor jack 523

Engine compartment 525

Tires 538

Tire inflation pressure 548

Wheels 550

Air conditioning filter 552

Electronic key battery.....554

Checking and replacing fuses.....556

Light bulbs.....560

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Self-restoring coat

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash, etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature. The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc., cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contain abrasives.

■ Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors
  - Turn off the power back door (if equipped)

  Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ **Note for a smart entry & start system (if equipped)**

- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 149)

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners.
  Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners. (vehicles with water-repellent coating)

■ **Front side windows water-repellent coating**

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
  - Remove any dirt, etc., from the front side windows regularly.
  - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period.
    Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
  - Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
  - Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.
- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

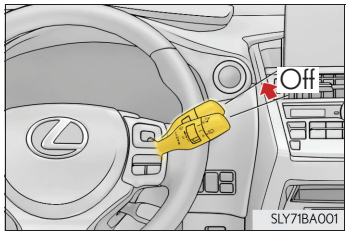
WARNING

■ **When washing the vehicle**

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components, etc. to catch fire.

■ **When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ **Precautions regarding the exhaust pipe**

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe and the muffler cutter (if equipped) until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

■ **Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)**

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels, etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ **To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms**

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ **When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Set the wiper switch to the off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

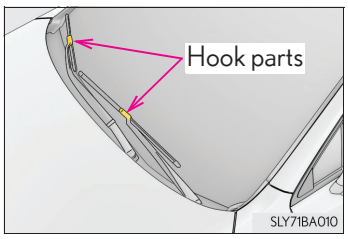
■ **When using a high pressure car wash**

- When washing the vehicle, do not let water of the high pressure washer hit directly or the vicinity of the camera. Due to the shock from the high pressure water, it is possible the device may not operate as normal.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Steering parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Brake parts

■ **When raising the windshield wiper arms**

Make sure to hold the hook parts of the wiper arms to raise them.

Do not hold only the wiper blades when raising them, or it may cause deformation of the wiper blades.



Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

■ Front side windows with UV protective coating

The front side windows have UV protective coating. To prevent any damage to the UV protective coating, observe the following:

- If the windows are dirty, gently wipe them with a cloth soaked in water or lukewarm water as soon as possible.
- If the windows are very dirty, do not open and close them repeatedly.

⚠ WARNING

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components, etc., to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 46)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ **When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with LDA [Lane Departure Alert]) (if equipped) or LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped); or Automatic High Beam**

Be careful not to touch the camera sensor (→P. 312).
If the camera is accidentally scratched or hit, LDA and Automatic High Beam may not operate properly or may cause a malfunction.

■ **Cleaning the inside of the windshield and rear window**

- Do not use a glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

■ **Cleaning the front side windows**

Do not use any compound or abrasive product (e.g., glass cleaner, detergent, wax) to clean the windows. It may damage the coating.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, refer to the "Lexus Service Booklet" or "Lexus Warranty Booklet".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you're an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer will keep a record of maintenance, which could be useful should you ever require Warranty Service. Should you choose to select a qualified and equipped professional other than an authorized Lexus repairer to service or maintain your vehicle, we recommend that you request that a record of maintenance be kept.

■ **Where to go for maintenance service?**

In order to maintain your vehicle in the best possible condition, Lexus recommends that maintenance service operations as well as other inspections and repairs be carried out by authorized Lexus dealers or repairers or other duly qualified and equipped professionals. For repairs and services covered by your warranty, please visit an authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, who will use genuine Lexus parts in repairing any difficulties you may encounter. There can also be advantages in utilizing authorized Lexus dealers or repairers for non-warranty repairs and services, as members of the Lexus network will be able to expertly assist you with any difficulties you may encounter.

Your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically due to their experience with Lexus vehicles.

■ **Does your vehicle need repairs?**

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P. 101)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

WARNING

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ **Handling of the battery**

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 534)

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 534)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine/intercooler coolant level (→P. 532)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 528)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 556)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P. 560)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator and condenser (→P. 533)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 548)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 537)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ **When working on the engine compartment**

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc., right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately. If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ **When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille**

Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 533)

■ **Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc., from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ **If you remove the air cleaner filter**

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

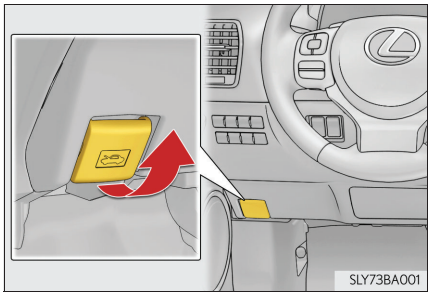
■ **If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

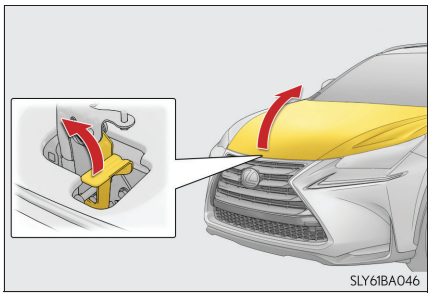
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.
The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

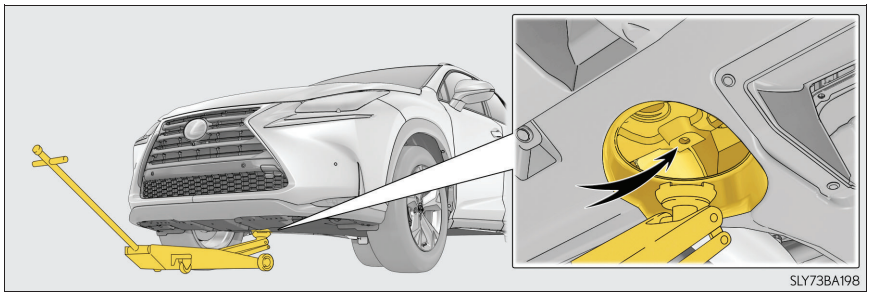
■ **Pre-driving check**
Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Positioning a floor jack

When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

◆ Front

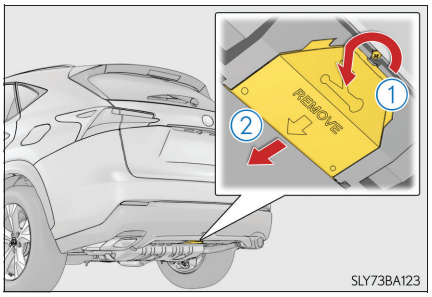


◆ Rear

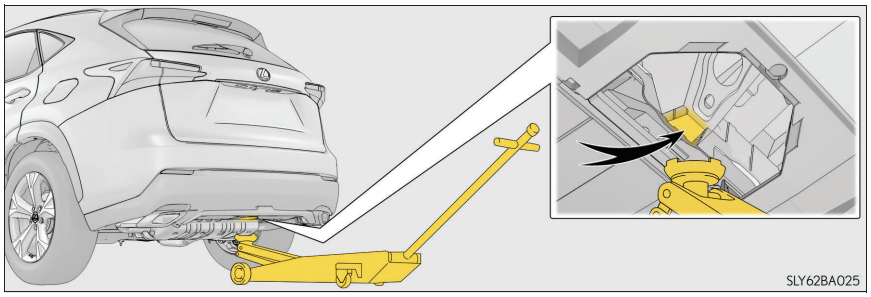
1 Before raising your vehicle with a floor jack: Remove the cover.

① Remove the bolt

② Remove the cover

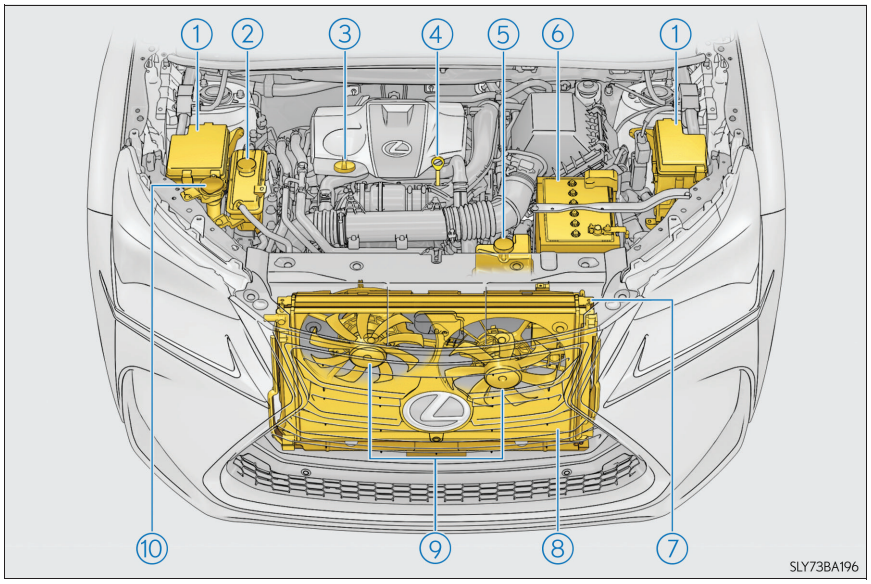


2 Raising your vehicle with a floor jack.



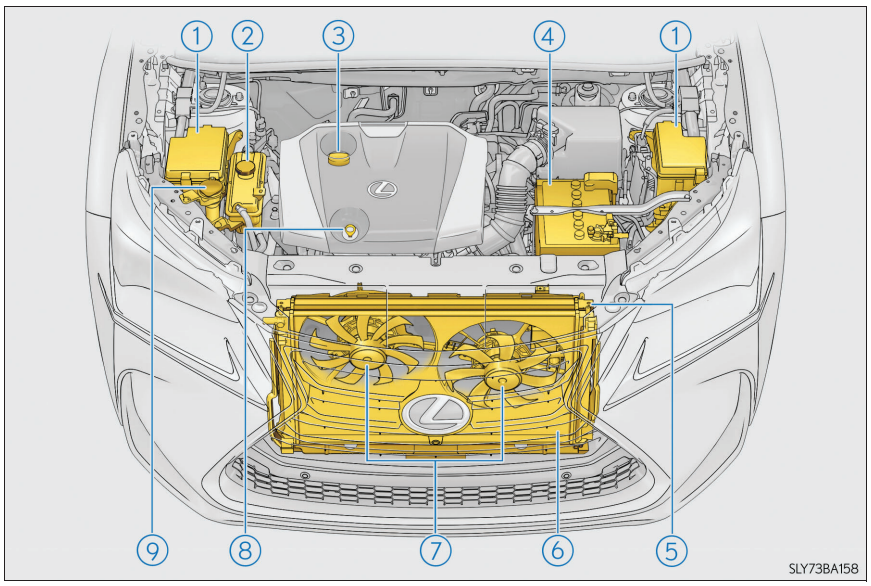
Engine compartment

▶ NX200t



① Fuse box (→P. 556)
② Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 532)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 529)
④ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 528)
⑤ Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P. 532)
⑥ Battery (→P. 534)
⑦ Radiator (→P. 533)
⑧ Condenser (→P. 533)
⑨ Electric cooling fans
⑩ Washer fluid tank (→P. 537)

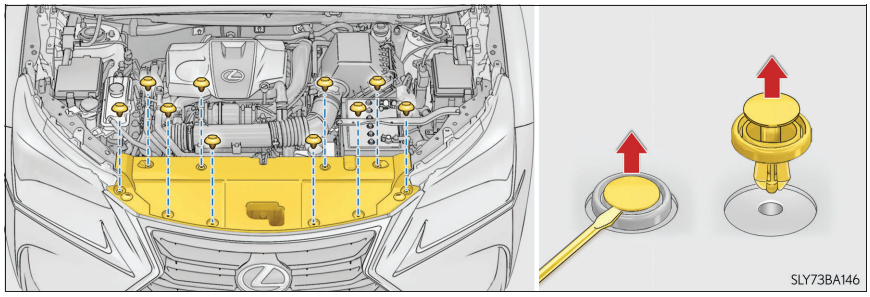
▶ NX200



① Fuse box (→P. 556)
② Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 532)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 529)
④ Battery (→P. 534)
⑤ Radiator (→P. 533)
⑥ Condenser (→P. 533)
⑦ Electric cooling fans
⑧ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 528)
⑨ Washer fluid tank (→P. 537)

Engine compartment cover

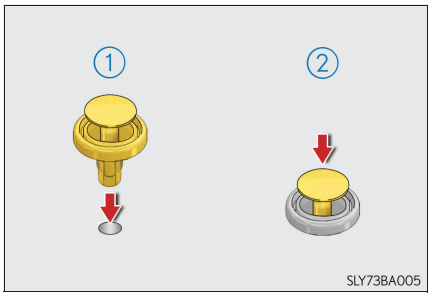
Removing the engine compartment cover



Installing the clips

① Insert

② Press



NOTICE

After installing an engine compartment cover

Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

Engine oil

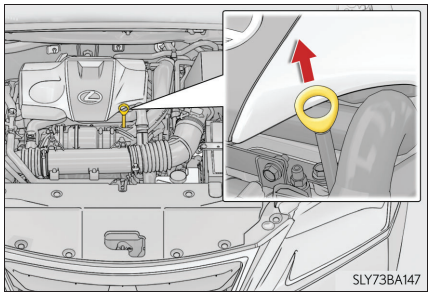
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

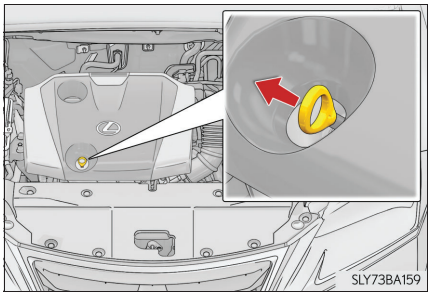
1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

▶ NX200t



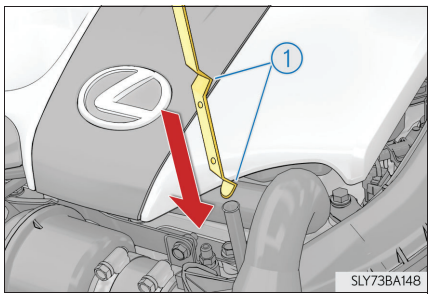
▶ NX200



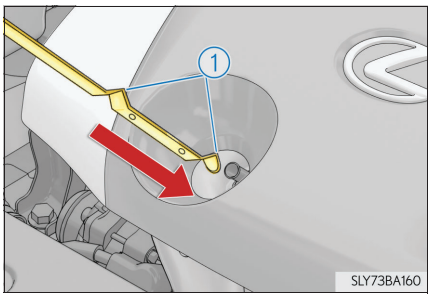
3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully with its protruding areas (① in the illustration) pointing towards engine.

▶ NX200t

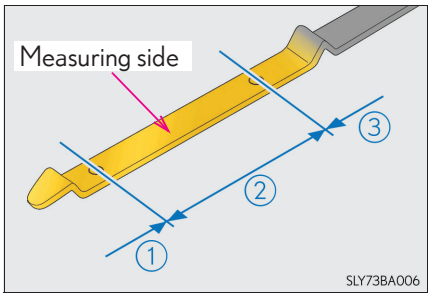


▶ NX200



5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

① Low
② Normal
③ Excessive

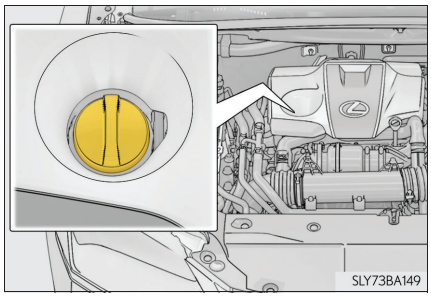


6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

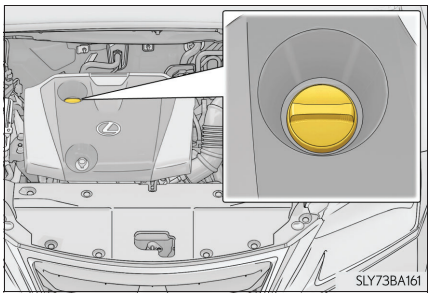
■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

▶ NX200t



▶ NX200



Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 644
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.
2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.
3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ **Engine oil consumption**

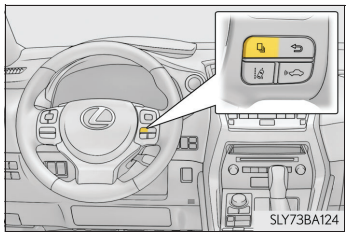
A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

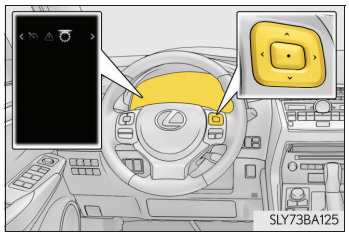
■ **After changing the engine oil**

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

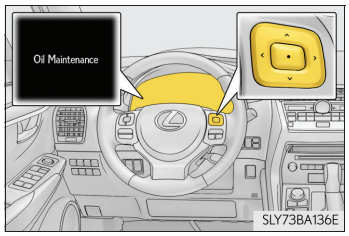
1 Press  of the meter control switch.



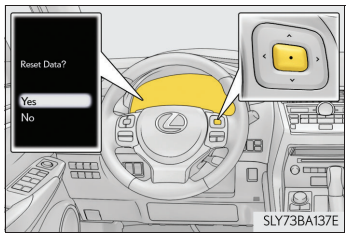
2 Press ❮ or ❯ of the meter control switch, select , and then press ⊡.



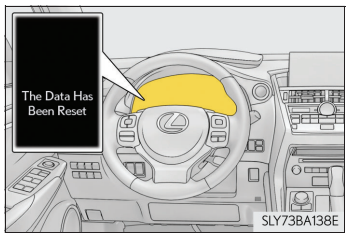
3 Press ^ or ⌄ of the meter control switch, select the “Oil Maintenance” screen and then press and hold the ⊡.



4 Select the "Yes" and push .



5 A message is displayed on the multi-information display.



WARNING

■ **Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

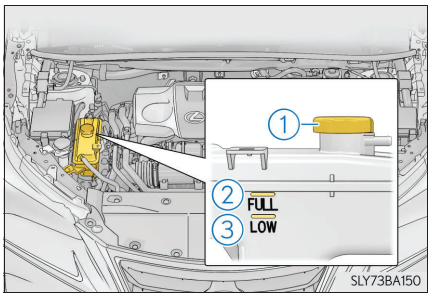
Coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

■ Engine coolant reservoir

① Reservoir cap
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line

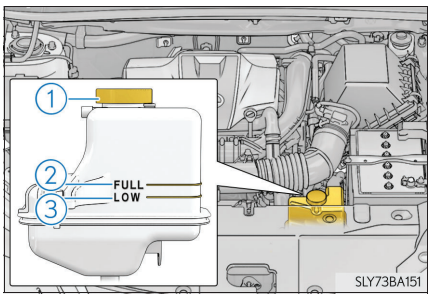
If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 634)



■ Intercooler coolant reservoir (NX200t only)

① Reservoir cap
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 634)



■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir and the intercooler coolant reservoir cap. The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ **When adding coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear away any foreign objects.

If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

■ **When the electric cooling fans are operating**

Do not touch the engine compartment.
With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. Be sure the engine switch is off when working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

■ Caution symbols

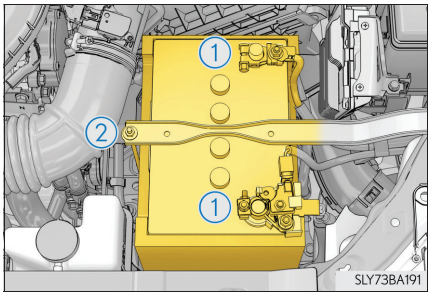
The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks		Battery acid
	Shield eyes		Note operating instructions
	Keep away from children		Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

① Terminals
② Hold-down clamp

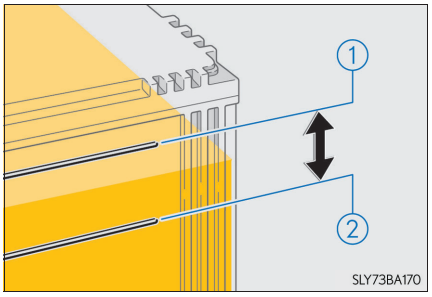


■ Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is between the “UPPER LEVEL” and “LOWER LEVEL” lines.

① “UPPER LEVEL” line
② “LOWER LEVEL” line

If the fluid level is at or below the “LOWER LEVEL” line, add distilled water.

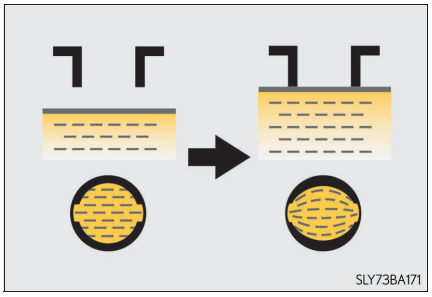


Adding distilled water

1 Remove the vent plug.

2 Add distilled water.

If the "UPPER LEVEL" line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.



3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

After recharging/reconnecting the battery

- The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.
  1 Shift the shift lever to P.
  2 Open and close any of the doors.
  3 Restart the engine.
- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine switch before disconnecting the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to the battery being disconnected is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at all the methods above, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

Battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ **Where to safely charge the battery**

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ **Emergency measures regarding electrolyte**

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ **When there is insufficient battery fluid**

Do not use if there is insufficient fluid in the battery. There is a possible danger that the battery may explode.

NOTICE

■ **When recharging the battery**

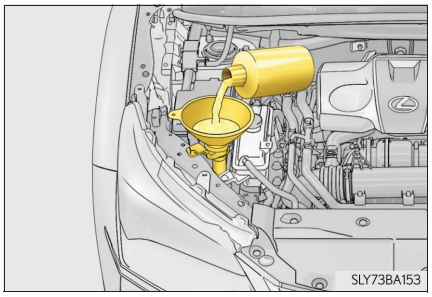
Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ **When adding distilled water**

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Washer fluid

If none of the washer do not work or the "Windshield Washer Fluid Low" appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or operating as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine, etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

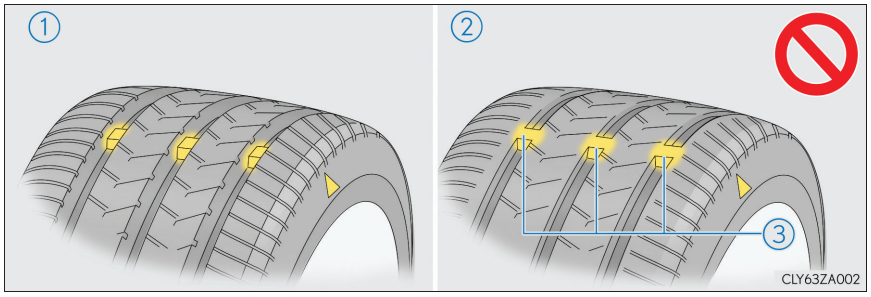
Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



① New tread

② Worn tread

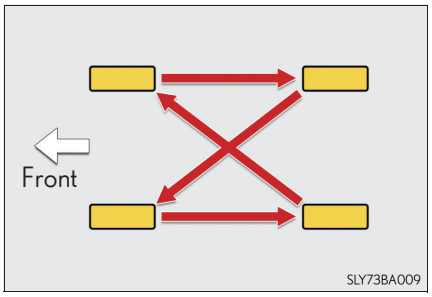
③ Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or "Δ" mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models:
Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models:
Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

(vehicle with the tire pressure warning system)

Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a warning light. (→P. 587)

◆ Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 541)

◆ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When adjusting the tire inflation pressure
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed or load weight.
- When rotating the tires
- When changing the tire.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

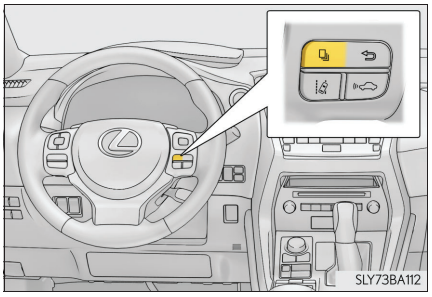
Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 651)

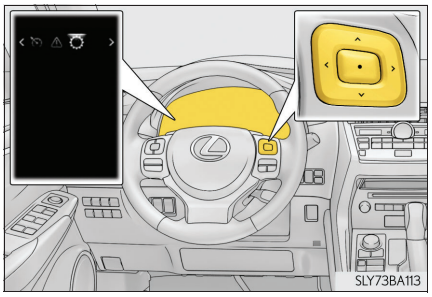
Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

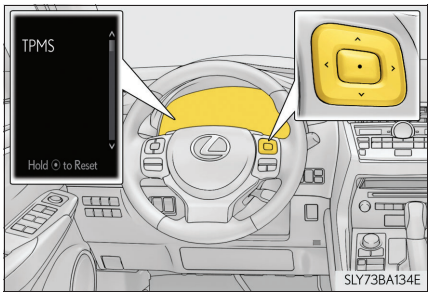
4 Press  of the meter control switch.



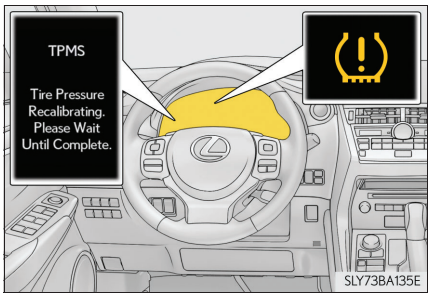
5 Press ❮ or ❯ of the meter control switch, select , and then press ⊙.



6 Press ^ or ⌄ of the meter control switch, select the "TPMS" screen and then press and hold the ⊙.



7 A message and an indicator are displayed by the multi-information display, and initialization is completed.



◆ Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Initialize the system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ **If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)**

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly**

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains, etc., are equipped.
- An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If wheel without the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ **The initialization operation**

● Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.

● If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to restart the initialization again as initialization will restart automatically when the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.

● If you accidentally restart the initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 20 minutes.

■ Certification for the tire pressure warning system

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following:
DoC address: http://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

CE 0891

Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declares that this PMV-C210 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että PMV-C210 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dat het toestel PMV-C210 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil PMV-C210 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. att denna PMV-C210 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framg år av direktiv 1999/5/EG
Undertegnede PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr PMV-C210 overholder de væ sentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät PMV-C210 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigeneinschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩ ΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ PMV-C210 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo PMV-C210 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que el PMV-C210 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que este PMV-C210 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposiç ões da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan PMV-C210 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. seadme PMV-C210 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõ uetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a PMV-C210 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelmé nyeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že PMV-C210 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento PMV-C210 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta PMV-C210 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis PMV-C210 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka PMV-C210 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że PMV-C210 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. yfir því að PMV-C210 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret PMV-C210 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og ø vrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., декларира, че PMV-C210 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul PMV-C210 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim , PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj PMV-C210 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., deklariše da je PMV-C210 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je PMV-C210 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Me anë të kësaj, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO, LTD., Deklaron se ky PMV-C210 është në përputhje me kërkesat themelore dhe dispozitat e tjera përkatëse të direktivës 1999/5/EC.

WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: Do not tow anything if a tire that has been repaired using the emergency tire puncture repair kit is installed. The load on the tire may cause unexpected damage to the tire.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not initializing tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 539)

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P. 651)

■ **Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure**

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure**

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.

WARNING

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

When replacing wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 539, 551)

WARNING

■ **When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ **Use of defective wheels prohibited**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.
Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

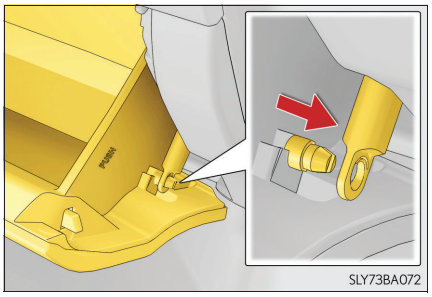
Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

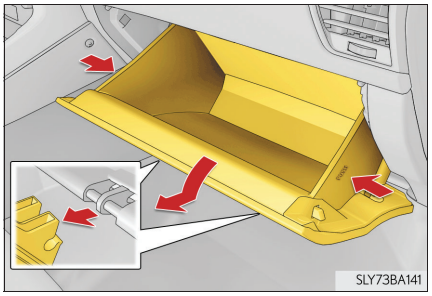
Removal method

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.

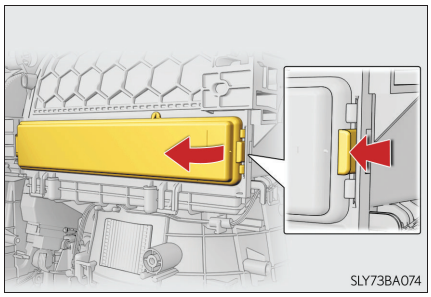


3 Push in the glove box on the vehicle's outer side to disconnect the claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.

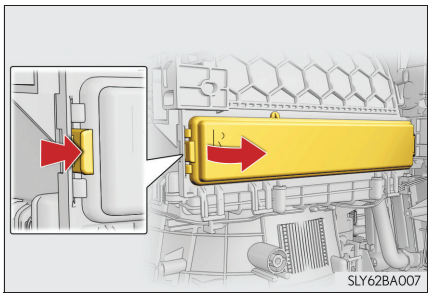


4 Remove the filter cover.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

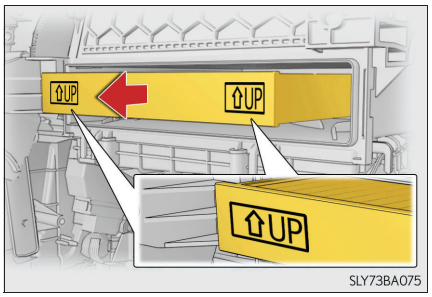


▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



5 Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.



■ **Checking interval**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Lexus Service Booklet" or "Lexus Warranty Booklet".)

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the system**

When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.

Electronic key battery

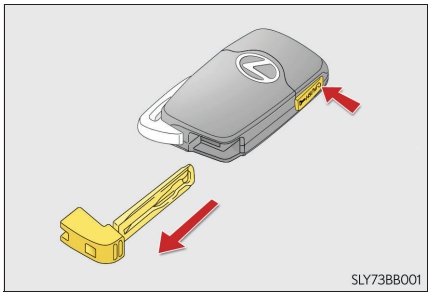
Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

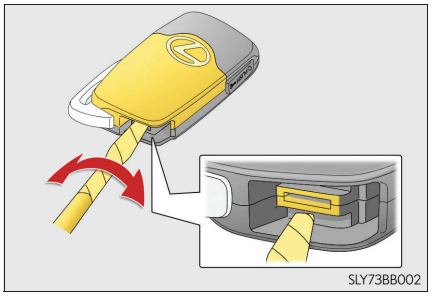
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.

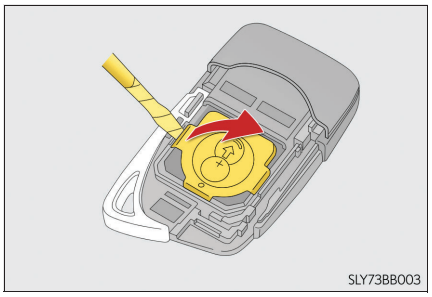


2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a tape.

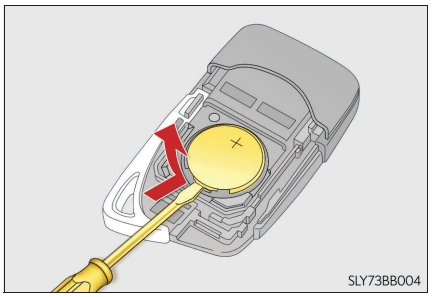


3 Remove the battery cover.



4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



■ Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at your Lexus dealer. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

⚠ WARNING

■ Removed battery and other parts

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

■ Certification for the smart entry & start system

CAUTION: RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

⚠ NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

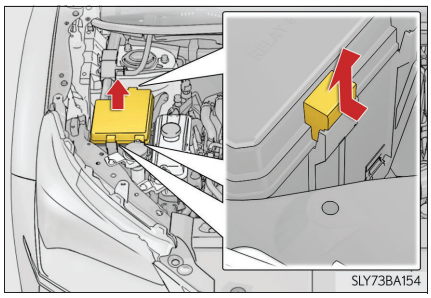
Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

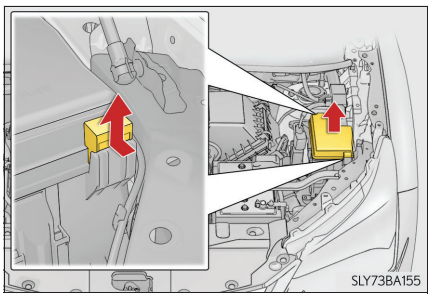
2 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

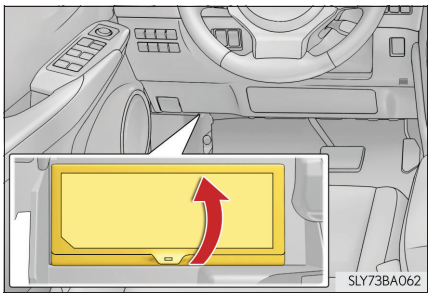
▶ Engine compartment: type B fuse box



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Left side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

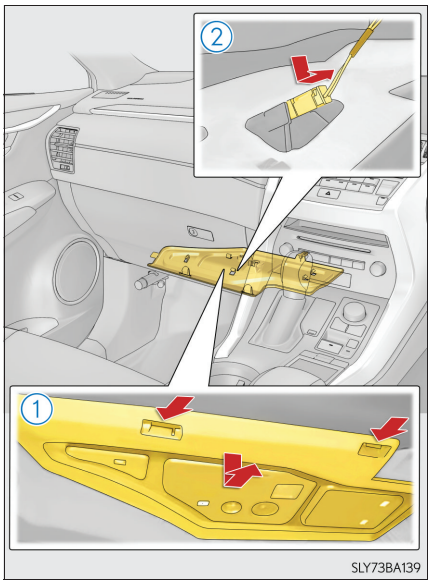
Remove the lid.



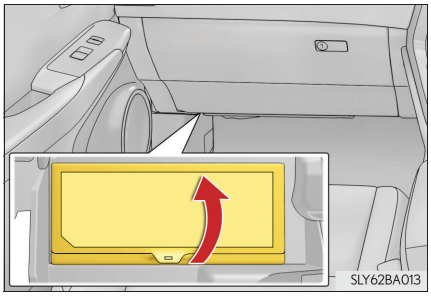
▶ Left side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

① Remove the cover

② Remove the connector

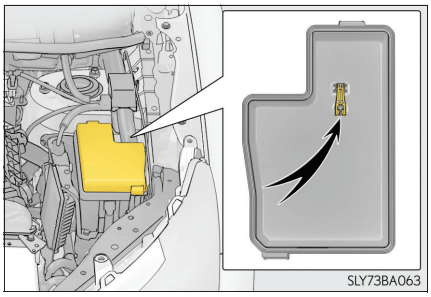


Remove the lid.



3 Remove the fuse.

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.



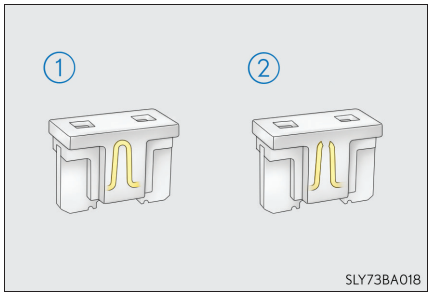
4 Check if the fuse is blown.

① Normal fuse

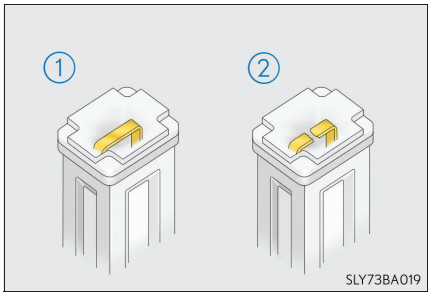
② Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

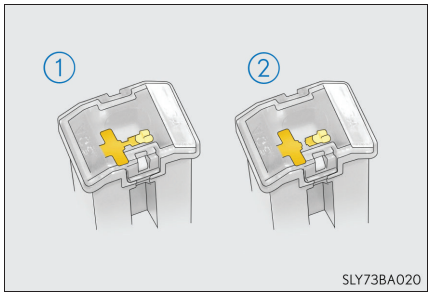
▶ Type A



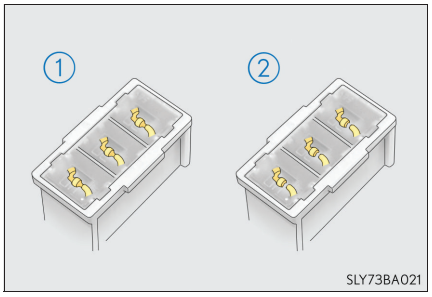
▶ Type B



▶ Type C



▶ Type D



■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 560)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If there is an overload in a circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ **When replacing light bulbs**

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

WARNING

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P. 653)

Removing the engine compartment cover

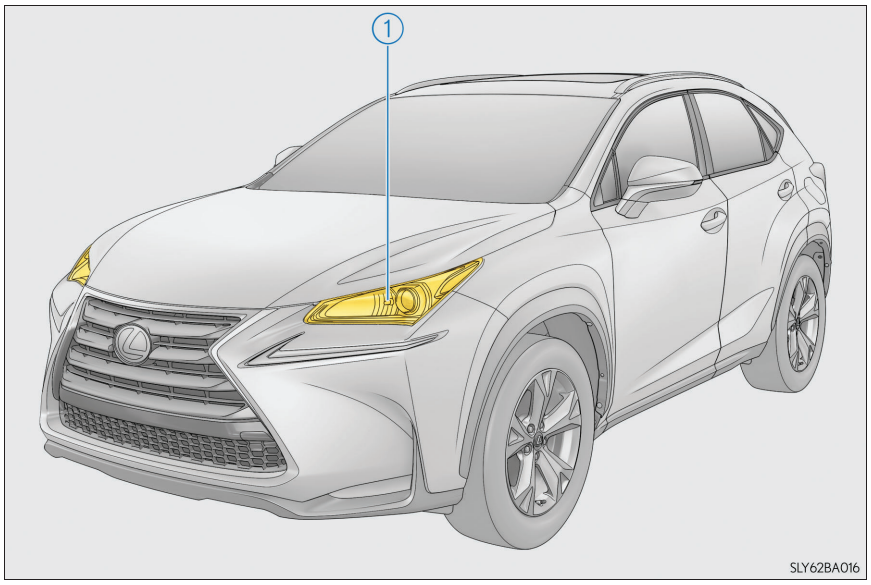
→P. 527

Canceling the power back door system

→P. 139

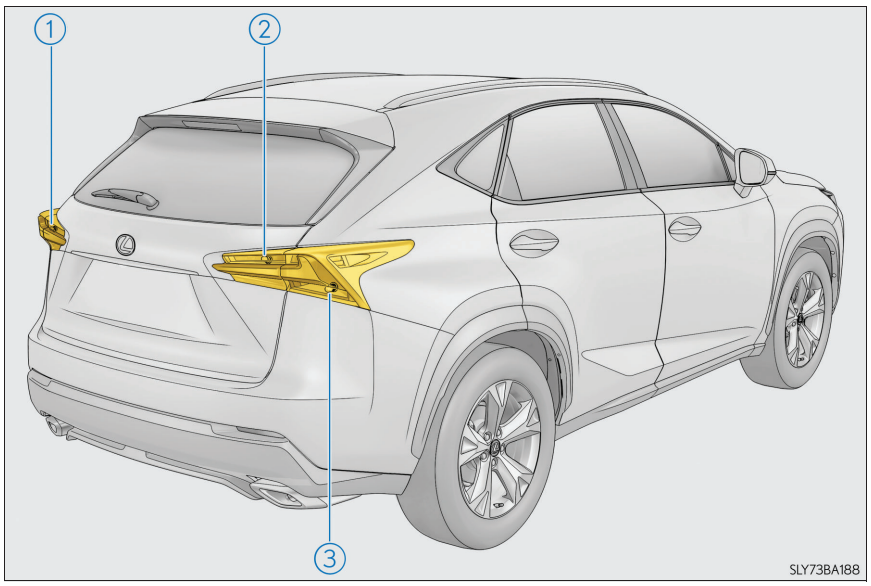
Bulb locations

■ Front



① Headlight high beam (halogen bulbs)

■ Rear



① Back-up light*1
② Back-up light*2
③ Rear turn signal light

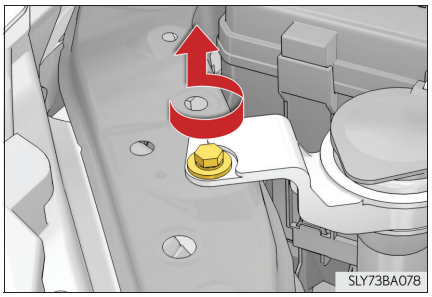
*1: Right-hand drive vehicles
*2: Left-hand drive vehicles

Replacing light bulbs

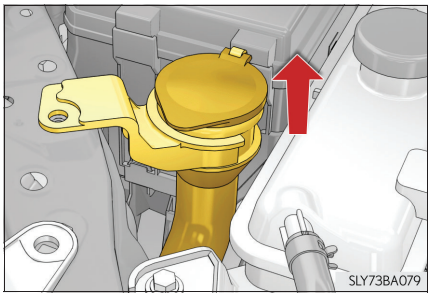
■ Headlight high beams (halogen bulbs)

▶ For the right side only:

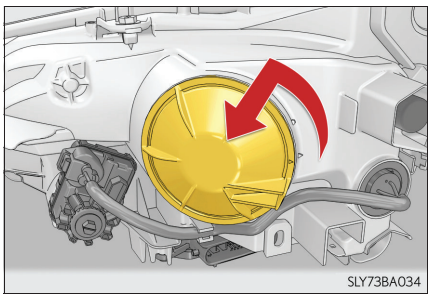
1 Remove the bolt, and move the washer fluid supply opening.



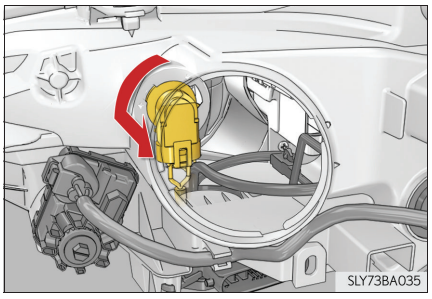
When it is difficult to work, remove the washer fluid supply opening.



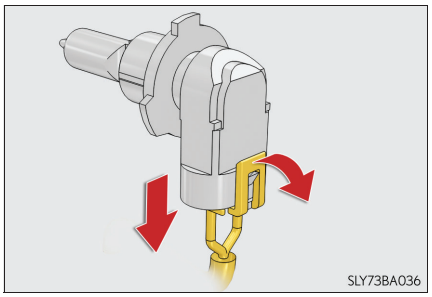
2 Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.



3 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

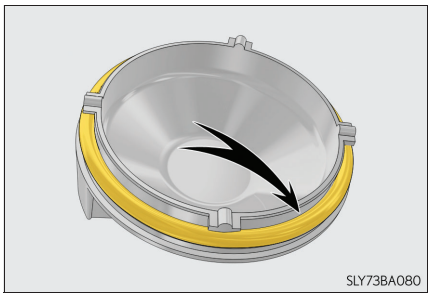


4 Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

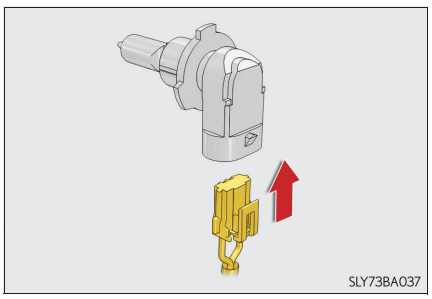


5 Confirm whether the O-ring of the cover has not come off.

If the O-ring come off, attached to the proper position.

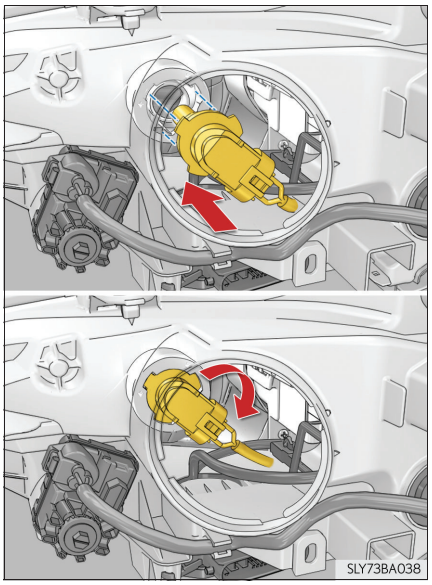


6 Replace the light bulb, and set the connector.



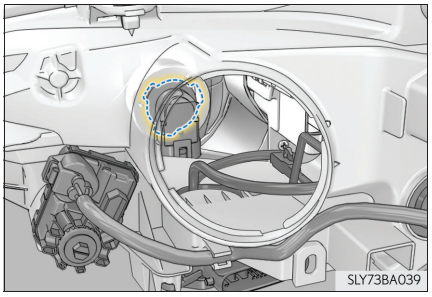
7 Install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert. Turn the bulb base clockwise to set.



8 Confirm the installation of the bulb base.

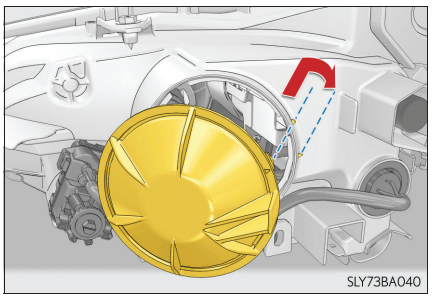
Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlight high beams on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.



9 Install the cover and turn it clockwise.

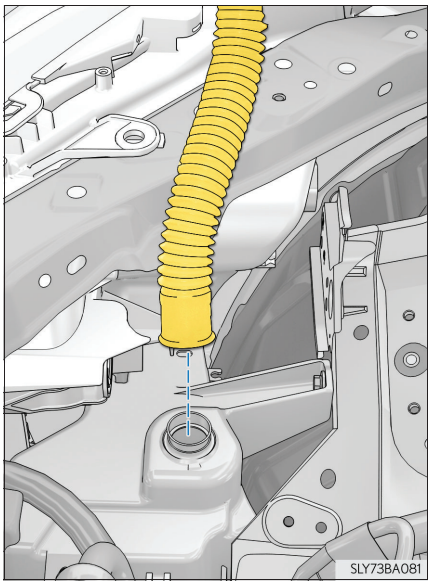
Align the ▲ of the cover to the positioning mark of the light unit and insert and turn it.

There is the positioning mark on the outer side of the light unit.



10 When removing the washer fluid supply opening:
Install the washer fluid supply opening.

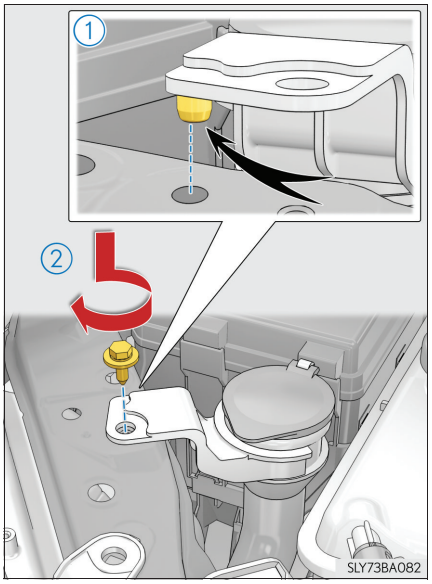
Align the washer tank with the washer fluid opening position.



11 Fix the washer fluid supply opening.

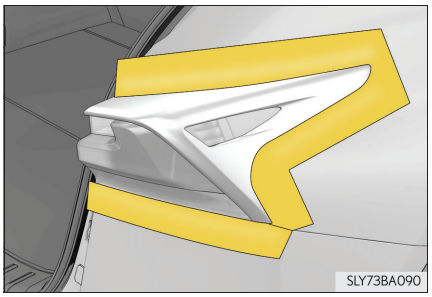
① Align the tab position and install washer fluid supply opening.

② Fasten the bolt.



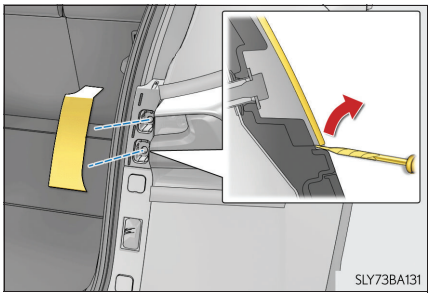
■ Rear turn signal lights

1 Open the back door and attach protective tape around the light unit. (Use masking tape. Do not use any duct tape, as it may leave markings.)

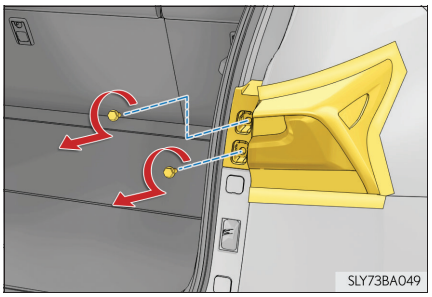


2 Remove the cover.

It is recommended for safeguarding to wrap the tip of the screwdriver with a cloth, etc., in order to prevent scratches to the vehicle.



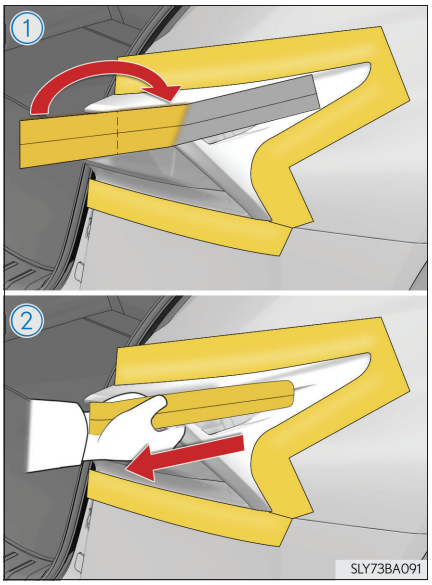
3 Remove the 2 bolts.



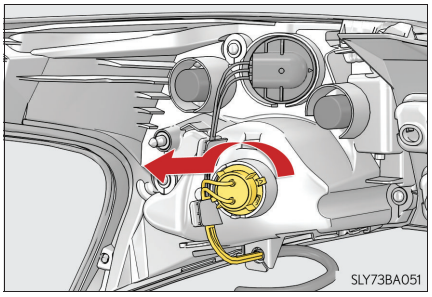
4 Remove the light unit.

① Attach 2 long pieces of the masking tape and fold the excess portion over in half.

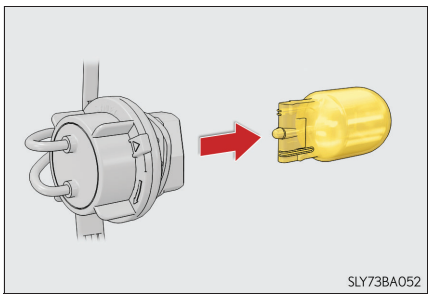
② While holding the section folded in half, pull toward the rear of the lens and remove.



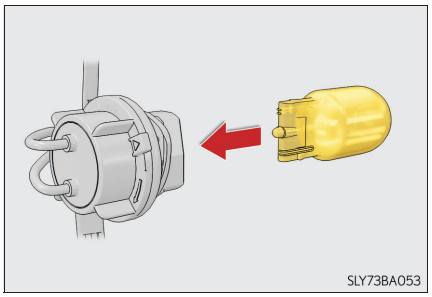
5 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



6 Remove the light bulb.

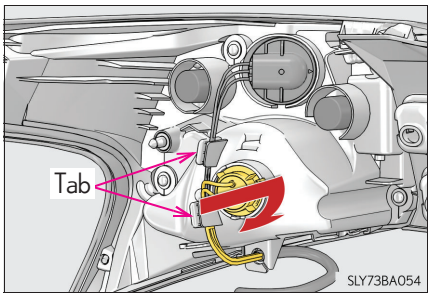


7 Replace the light bulb.



8 Turn clockwise and set the bulb base.

Confirm that cable is fixed to the tab.

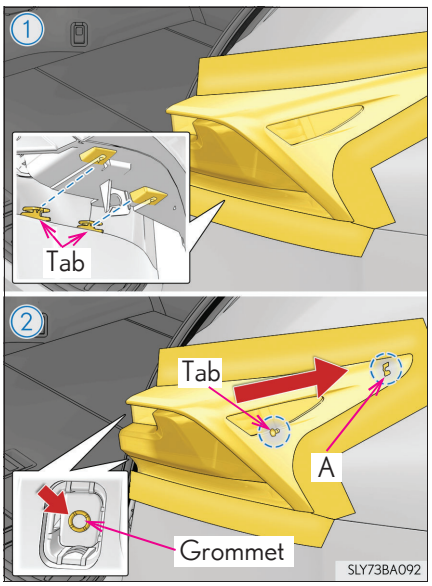


9 Set the light unit.

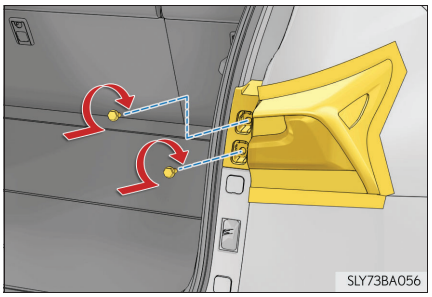
① Align the light unit with the 2 tabs on the rear bumper.

② Push the light unit forward while pushing A.

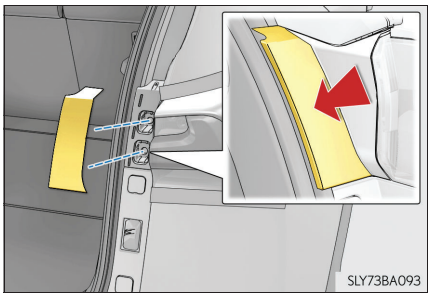
Confirm that the grommet fits into the bolt installation hole on the light unit.



10 Install the 2 bolts.



11 Install the cover.

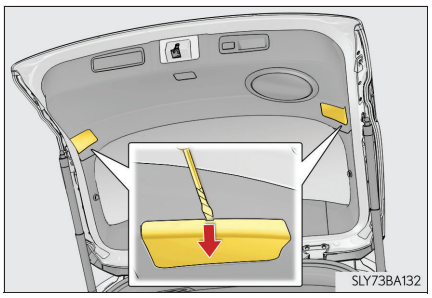


Back-up light

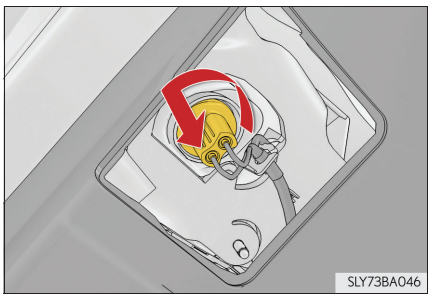
1 Open the back door and remove the cover.

Press down on the notch on the cover and remove the cover.

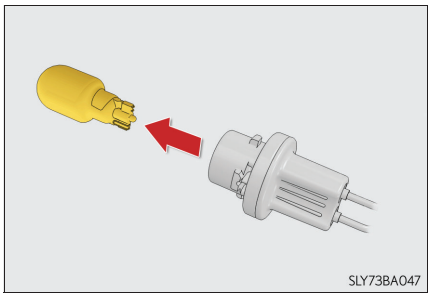
It is recommended for safeguarding to wrap the tip of the screwdriver with a cloth, etc., in order to prevent scratches to the vehicle.



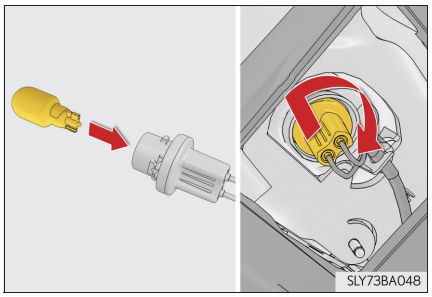
2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



3 Remove the light bulb.

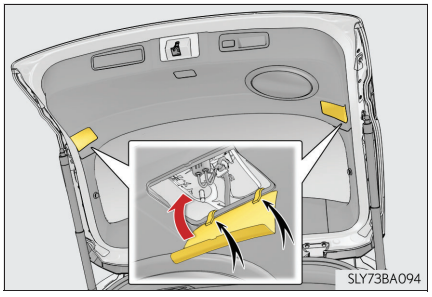


4 Replace the light bulb, and install the bulb base.



5 Install the back door cover.

Align the 2 tabs on the cover and install.



■ Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

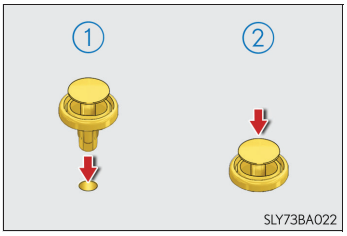
- Headlight low beams
- Headlight high beams (LED type)
- Front turn signal lights
- Daytime running lights and front position lights
- Front fog lights (if equipped)
- Cornering lights (if equipped)
- Rear fog light
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop lights
- Tail lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights
- Outer foot lights

■ After replacing the bulbs

After removing the engine compartment cover, return the cover to original position with the clips.

① Insert

② Press



■ LED lights

The headlight low beams, headlight high beams (LED type), front turn signal lights, daytime running lights, front position lights, front fog lights (if equipped), cornering lights (if equipped), rear fog light, side turn signal lights, stop lights, tail lights, high mounted stoplight, license plate lights and outer foot lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional to have the light replaced.

If two or more LEDs in a stop light burn out, your vehicle may not conform to local laws (ECE)

■ **Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens**

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ **When replacing light bulbs**

→P. 558

⚠ WARNING

■ **Replacing light bulbs**

- Be sure to stop the engine and turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.
  Doing so may result in death or serious injury due to electric shock.

■ **To prevent damage or fire**

- Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

8-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 574

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 575

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 576

If you think something is wrong..... 582

Fuel pump shut off system..... 583

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds..... 584

If a warning message is displayed 591

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)..... 594

If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire)..... 607

If the engine will not start..... 623

If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 625

If the vehicle battery is discharged..... 629

If your vehicle overheats..... 633

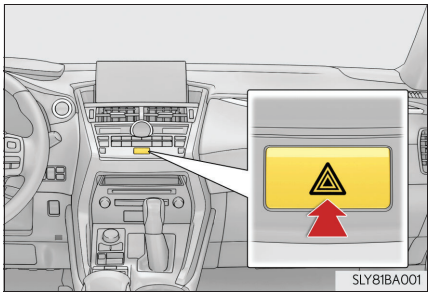
If the vehicle becomes stuck 637

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.



Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

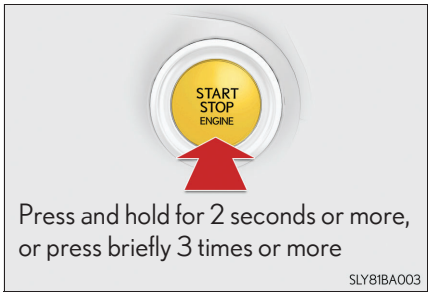
3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

SLY81BA003

5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

⚠ WARNING

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the steering wheel will be lost, making the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

2WD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good conditions. (→P. 577, 580) If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

AWD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck, use a towing dolly. (→P. 577, 580)

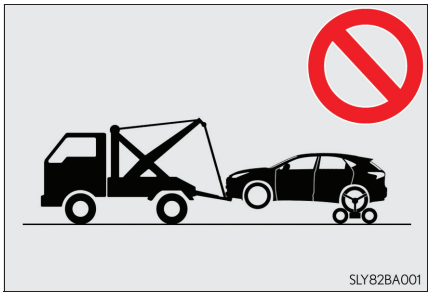
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

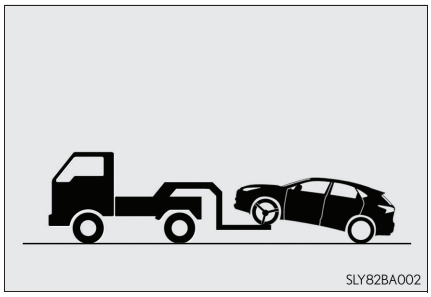
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.



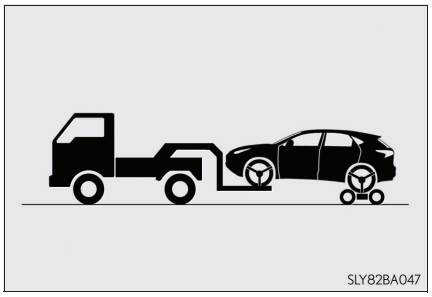
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front (2WD models)



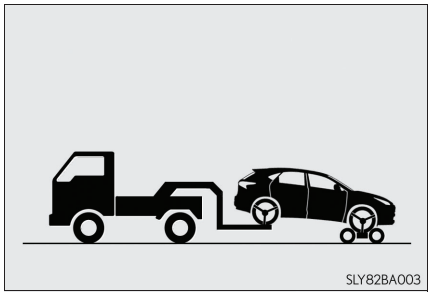
Release the parking brake.

▶ From the front (AWD models)



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

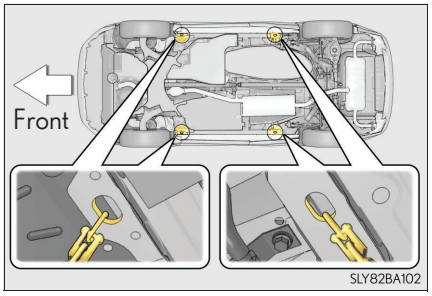
▶ From the rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

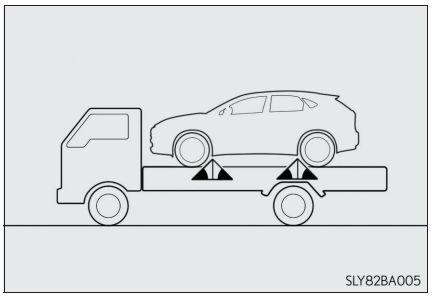
Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.



Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).

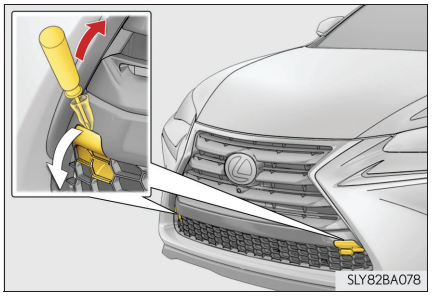
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drivetrain, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedure

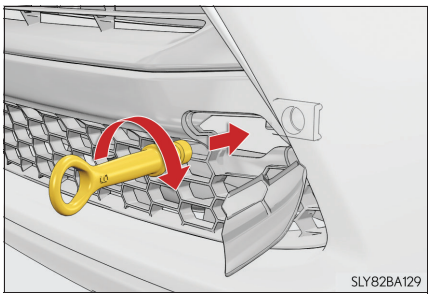
1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P. 595, 609)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flat-head screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body as shown in the illustration.

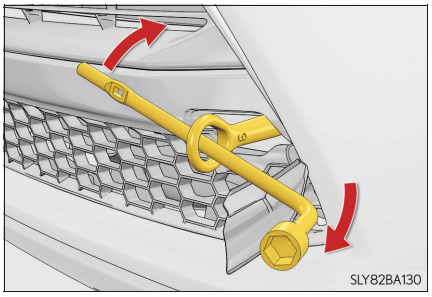


3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench* or hard metal bar.

*: If a wheel nut wrench is not equipped, a wheel nut wrench can be purchased at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

7 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.

When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P. 231, 237

■ **While towing**

If the hybrid system is off, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ **Wheel nut wrench**

Vehicles without a wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench can be purchased at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Vehicles with a wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench is installed in luggage compartment. (→P. 595, 609)

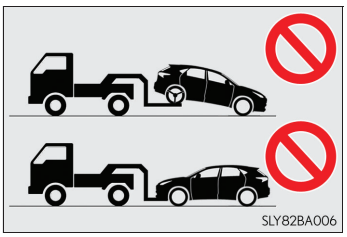
⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When towing the vehicle**

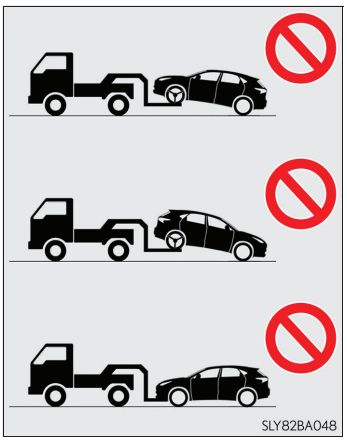
▶ 2WD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.


SLY82BA006

▶ AWD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.


SLY82BA048

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **While towing**

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc., which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the engine switch off.
  There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ **Installing towing eyelet to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelet may come loose during towing.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck**

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing**

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine misfire or misses, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning light and warning buzzer list

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Brake system warning light** Indicates that: • The brake fluid level is low; or • The brake system is malfunctioning → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**
*1 	**Charging system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**
*1 	**Low engine oil pressure warning light (warning buzzer)** Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**
*1 	**High coolant temperature warning light (warning buzzer)** Indicates that the engine is overheating → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.** **Handling method (→P. 633)**
	**Brake system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic Multidrive or automatic transmission control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**SRS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 	**Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)** Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	**PCS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system The warning light will operate as follows, even when the system is not malfunctioning: • The light will come on when the TRC and VSC systems are turned off. (→P. 346) • The light will come on when the pre-crash safety system is turned off. (→P. 352) • The light will flash when the system cannot temporarily be used. → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Slip indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC system; • The TRC system; or • The hill-start assist control system The light will flash when the VSC or TRC system is operating. → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (Flashes)	**Brake hold operated indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (Flashes)	**Parking brake indicator** It is possible that the parking brake is not fully engaged or released → **Operate the parking brake switch once again.** This light comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.
	**Low fuel level warning light** Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 9.0 L (2.3 gal., 1.9 Imp.gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**
	**Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)***2 Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**
*3 	**Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)***2 Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**
	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P. 591

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	**Tire pressure warning light** When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 588) • Flat tire (→P. 594, 607) → **Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.** When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 589) → **Have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**
*1 	**Brake Override System/Drive-Start Control warning light** Indicates that: • The Brake Override System is operating; • The Brake Override System is malfunctioning (with warning buzzer); • The Drive-Start Control is operating (with warning buzzer); or • The Drive-Start Control is malfunctioning (with warning buzzer) → **Follow the instruction that are displayed on the multi-information display.**

*1: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*2: Seat belt warning buzzer:
The seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver, front passenger and rear passengers that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

*3: This light illuminates on the center panel.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Inspect the appearance of the tire to check that the tire is not punctured.

If the tire is punctured: →P. 594, 607

If the tire is not punctured:

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out even after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization. (→P. 540)

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire**

The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

→P. 542

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

⚠ WARNING

■ **If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted. When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy. When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

WARNING

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- Vehicles with a spare tire: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, repair the flat tire by using emergency tire puncture repair kit.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ **If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

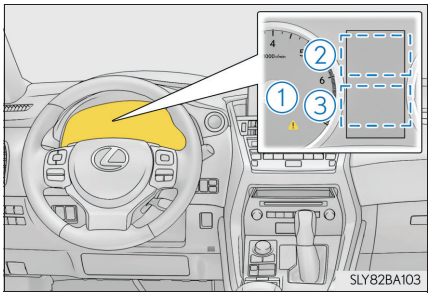
NOTICE

■ **To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



① Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

② Multi-information display

③ Handling Method

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the following actions have been performed, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ **System warning lights**

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on along with a message shown on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the ABS

  The ABS warning light comes on. (→P. 585)
- Malfunction of the charging system

  The charging system warning light comes on. (→P. 584)

■ **If "Shift to P Before Exiting Vehicle" is shown**

Message is displayed when the driver's door is opened without turning the engine switch to OFF with the shift lever in any position other than P.
Shift the shift lever to P.

■ **If "Oil Maintenance Required Soon" is shown**

Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the oil maintenance data has been reset.)

Check the engine oil, and change if necessary. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P. 530)

■ **If "Oil Maintenance Required" is shown**

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed. (After the engine oil is changed and the oil maintenance data has been reset.)

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P. 530)

■ If "See Owner's Manual" is shown

● If the following messages are shown, follow the instructions, accordingly.

• "Engine Coolant Temp High" (→P. 633)

● If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction.
Immediately have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

• "Braking Power Low"
• "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction"

● If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction.

Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

• "Low Oil Pressure"
• "Charging System Malfunction"
• "Transmission Fluid Temp High"

■ Warning buzzer

→P. 589

⚠ NOTICE

■ "High Power Consumption Partial Limit On AC/Heater Operation" is frequently shown

There is a possible malfunction relating to the charging system or the battery may be deteriorating. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.
For details about tires: →P. 538

⚠ WARNING

■ **If you have a flat tire**

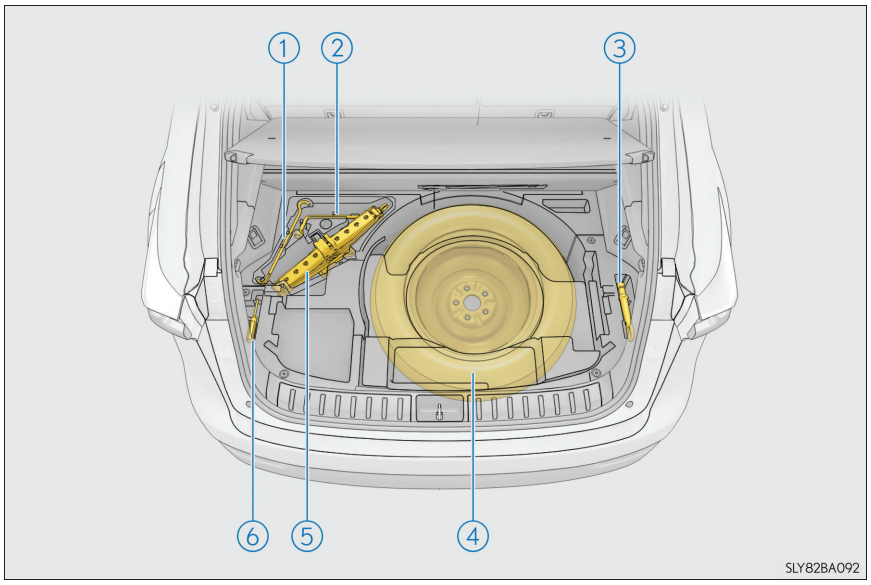
Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 574)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



① Jack handle
② Wheel nut wrench
③ Towing eyelet
④ Spare tire
⑤ Jack
⑥ Screwdriver

WARNING

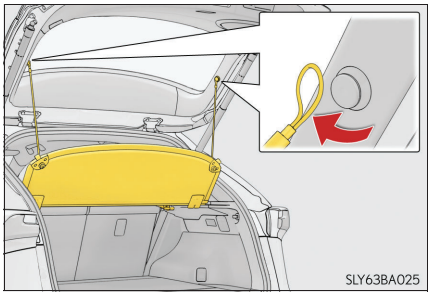
■ **Using the tire jack**

Observe the following precautions.
Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

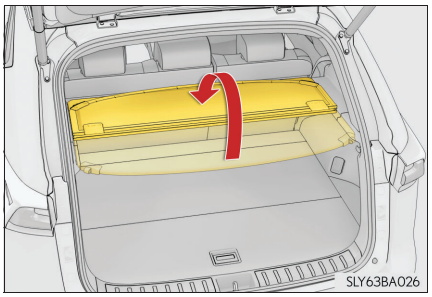
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.
  Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

Taking out the jack

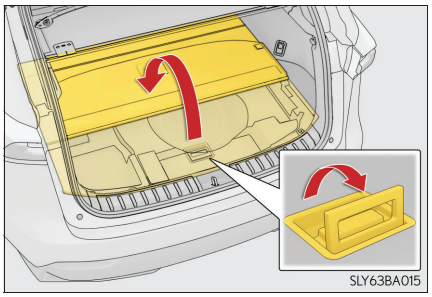
1 If the luggage cover is used: Unhook the cords.



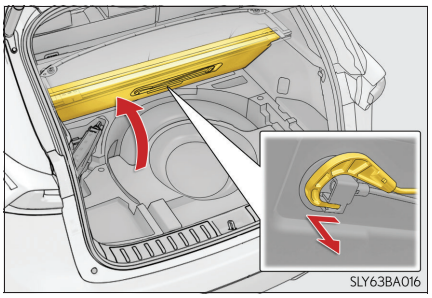
2 If the luggage cover is used: Fold up the luggage cover.



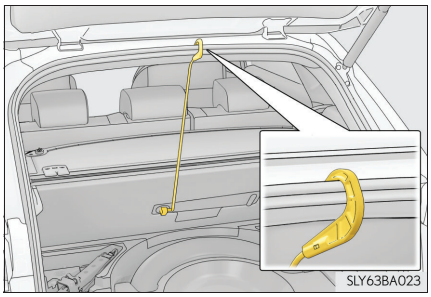
3 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.



4 Lift the deck board and remove the hook on the backside of the deck board.



5 Attach the hook to the upper edge of the back door opening as shown.

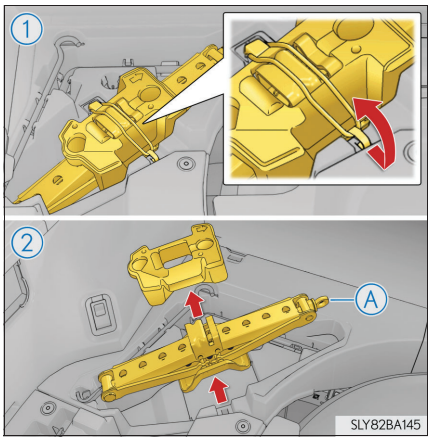


6 Removing the Jack.

① Remove the rubber band.

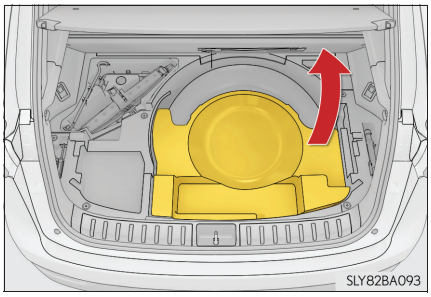
② Remove the cover and the jack.

When stowing the jack, close it by turning the handle indicated by Ⓐ until it does not move anymore, stow the jack and the cover, and press on the jack to fix with the rubber band.

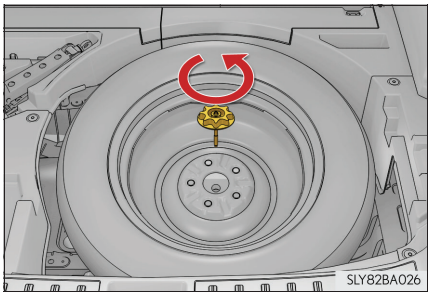


Taking out the spare tire

1 Remove deck under tray.



2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



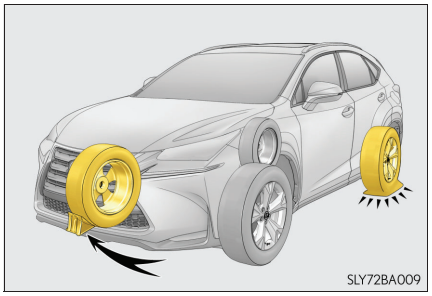
WARNING

■ **When storing the spare tire**

Be careful not get fingers or other body parts caught between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

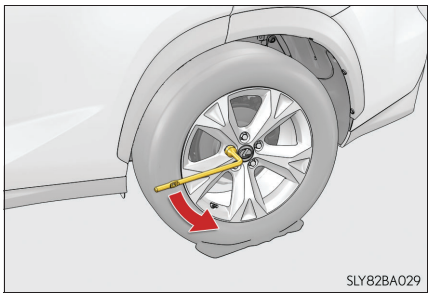
Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.



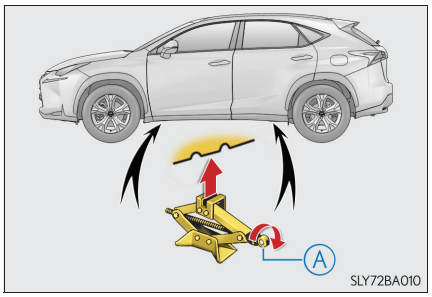
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

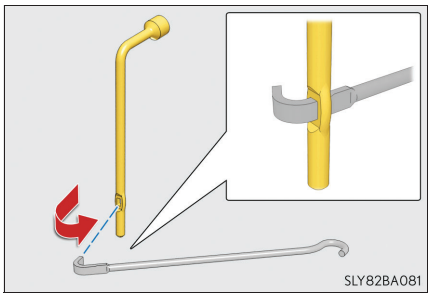


3 Turn the tire jack portion Ⓐ by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

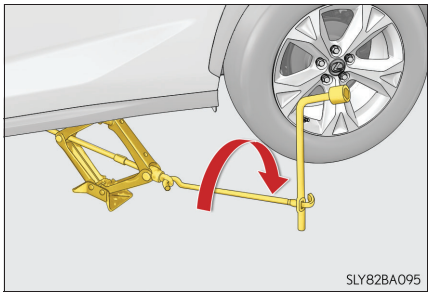
The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.



4 Install the wheel nut wrench in jack handle.

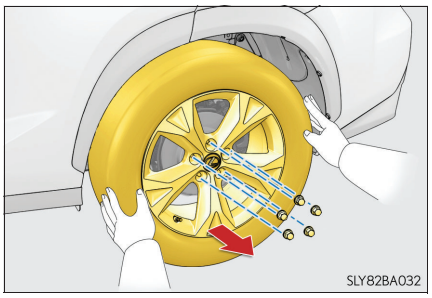


5 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

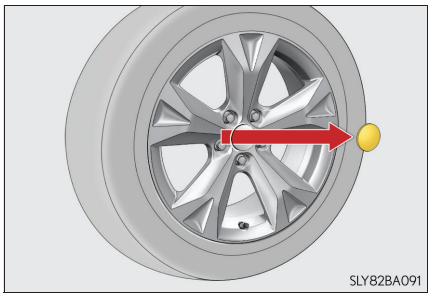


6 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



7 Remove the wheel ornament by pushing from the reverse side.



WARNING

Replacing a flat tire

- Observe the following precautions.
  Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
  - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
  - Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
    After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc., may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
    Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident.
    Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel ornament while the vehicle is moving.

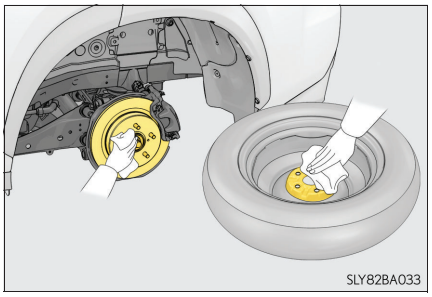
Replacing a flat tire for vehicles with power back door

In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to canceling the power back door system (→P. 139). Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

Installing the spare tire

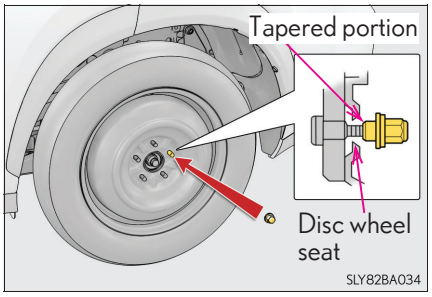
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

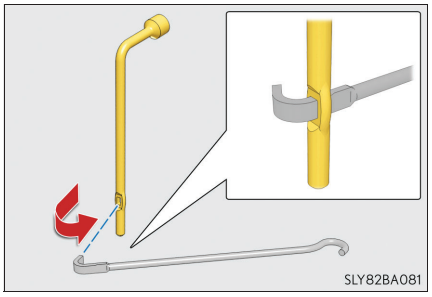


2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

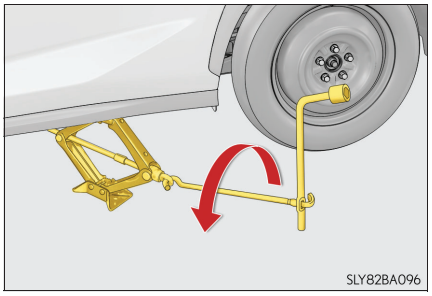
Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.



3 Install the wheel nut wrench in jack handle.

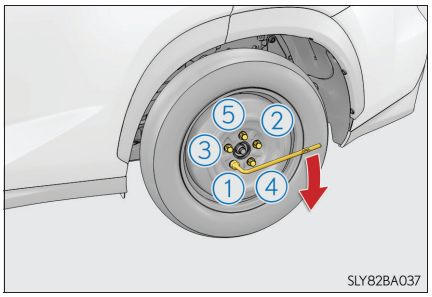


4 Lower the vehicle.



5 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf)



6 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ **The compact spare tire**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 651)

■ **After completing the tire change (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 540)

■ **When using the compact spare tire (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ **When the compact spare tire is equipped**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

■ **If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice**

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.

Certification for the jack

FLEX N GATE

TECHNICAL RECORD

Flex-N-Gate/ Ventra Bradford

Declaration of EC Conformance

1. The undersigned, Mr. Tony Fabiano, representing the manufacturer, herewith declares that the machinery described below fulfils all the relevant provisions of:

   - Directive 2006/42/EC, on Machinery

2. Description of the machinery

   a) Part Name: Jack Sub-Assembly Pantograph
   b) Part Number: 09111-OE011 (0300206)
   c) Function: lifting motor vehicle
   d) Model: 1.35 tonne
   e) Serial Number: Not Applicable
   f) OEM: Lexus, a Division of Toyota Motor Corporation

3. Manufacturer:

   Flex-N-Gate / Ventra, 75 Reagens Industrial Court, RR # 1 Bradford, ON, Canada L4A 2Z4

4. Person authorised to compile the technical file:

   Gerard Vals
   Product Engineer
   FNG - BARCELONA
   Avda de la Riera, 7-9
   Sant Just Desvern, Barcelona
   Spain 08960

5. Applicable Harmonized Standards:

   EN1494:2000+A1:2008

6. Other Standards or Specifications:

   Toyota Technical Specification TSF9501G, Test Method for Car Jack Strength, Class C1, Rev 6, April 2008.

7. Done at: Bradford, Canada

8. Date: May-15-15

Tony Fabiano
Director of Engineering
Flex-N-Gate/Ventra
Bradford Product Development Centre

WARNING

■ When using the compact spare tire

- Remember that the spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

■ When the compact spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)
- EPS
- AVS (if equipped)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) (if equipped)
- Panoramic view monitor (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist monitor (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)

Also, not only can the following system not be utilized fully, but it may even negatively affect the drive-train components:

- AWD system (if equipped)

■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ **Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ **Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire**

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ **When replacing the tires (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire)

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit.
A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

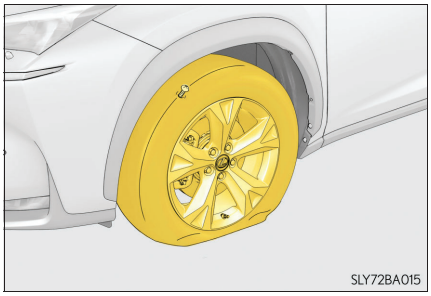
Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before repairing the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.
- Check the degree of the tire damage.

A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread.

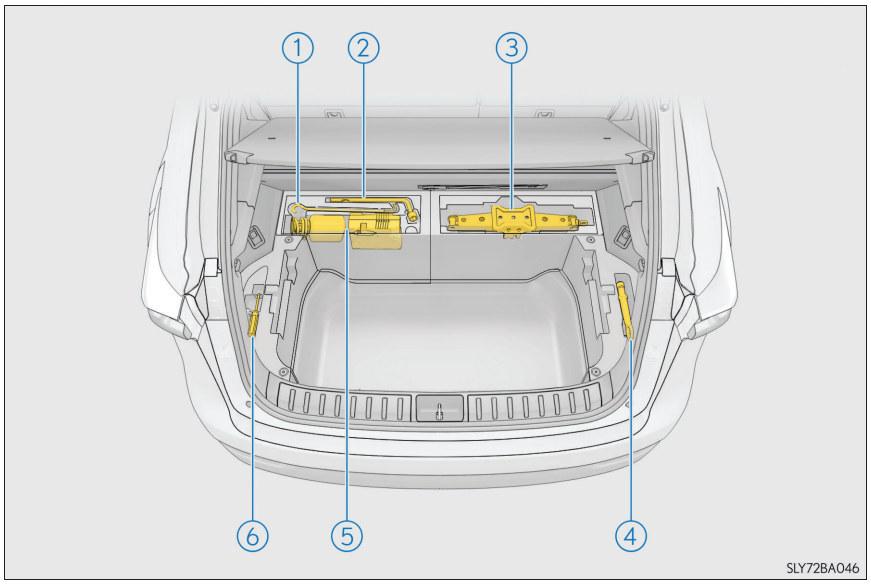


- Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the kit.
- To avoid sealant leakage, move the vehicle until the area of the puncture, if known, is positioned at the top of the tire.

A flat tire that cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
- When the tire lost air pressure due to a crack or damage in the tire sidewall
- When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
- When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
- When the wheel is damaged
- When two or more tires have been punctured
- When there is more than one hole or cut in the damaged tire

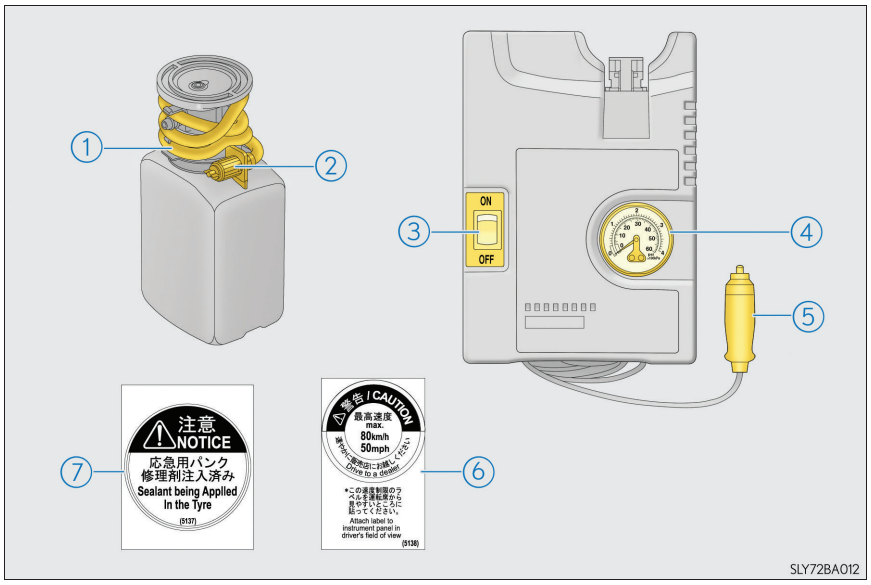
Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit, jack and tools



① Jack handle (if equipped)
② Wheel nut wrench (if equipped)
③ Jack* (if equipped)
④ Towing eyelet
⑤ Emergency tire puncture repair kit
⑥ Screw driver

*: Use of the jack (→P. 599)

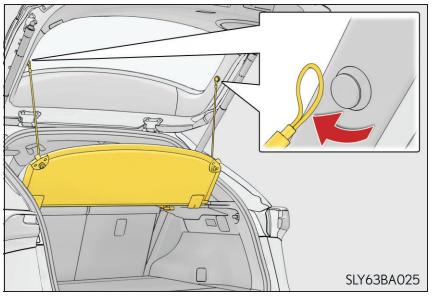
Emergency tire puncture repair kit components



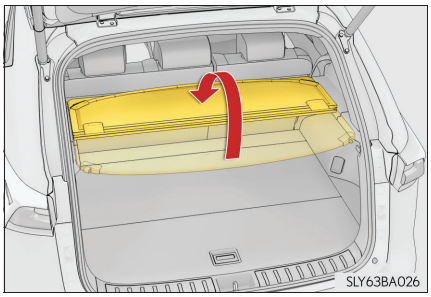
1. Hose
2. Air release cap
3. Compressor switch
4. Air pressure gauge
5. Power plug
6. Speed limit stickers
7. Sealant infected sticker

Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit

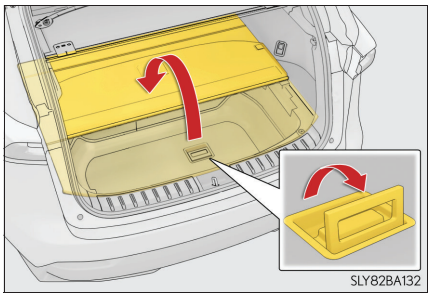
1. If the luggage cover is used: Unhook the cords.



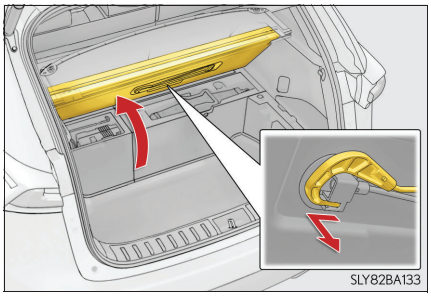
2 If the luggage cover is used: Fold up the luggage cover.



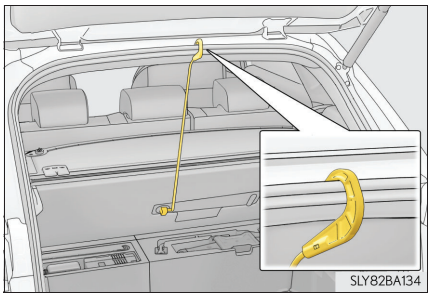
3 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.



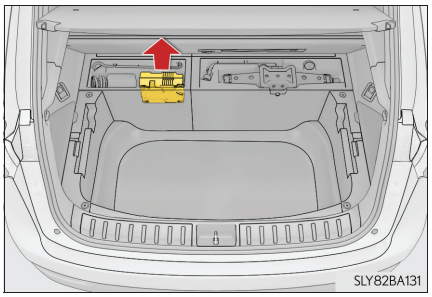
4 Lift the deck board and remove the hook on the backside of the deck board.



5 Attach the hook to the upper edge of the back door opening as shown.



6 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kit.



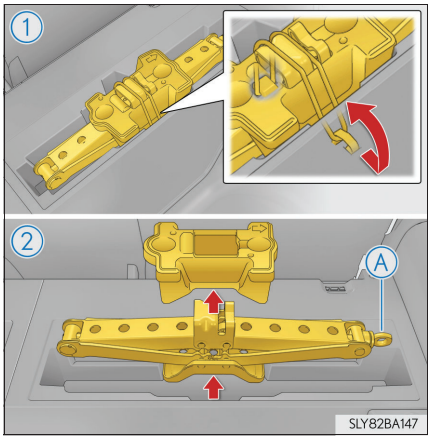
Taking out the jack

① Remove the rubber band.

② Remove the jack and the cover.

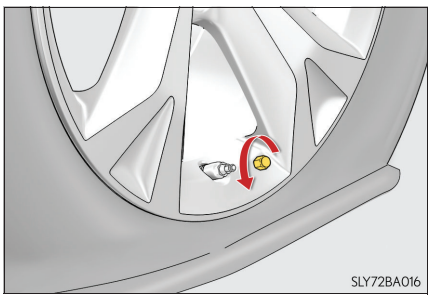
Use of the jack: →P. 599

When stowing the jack, close it by turning the handle indicated by Ⓐ until it does not move anymore, stow the jack and the cover, and press on the jack to fix with the rubber band.



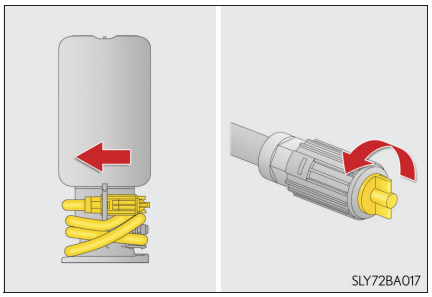
Emergency repair method

1 Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.



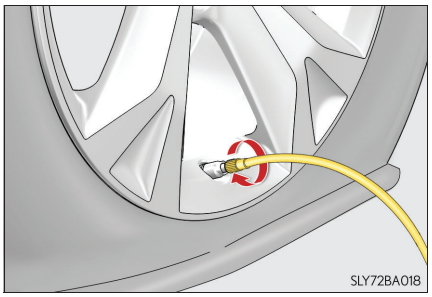
2 Extend the hose. Remove the air release cap from the hose.

Your will use the air release cap again. Therefore keep it in a safe place.

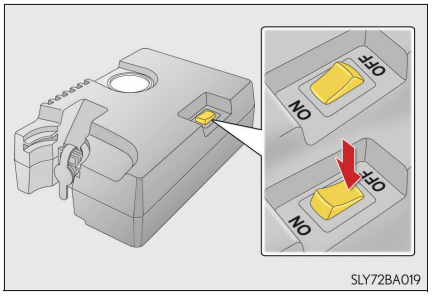


3 Connect the hose to the valve.

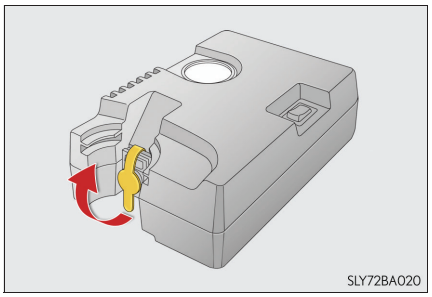
Screw the end of hose clockwise as far as possible.



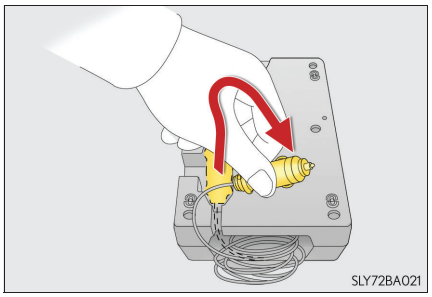
4 Make sure that the compressor switch is off.



5 Lift the rubber stopper on the compressor.



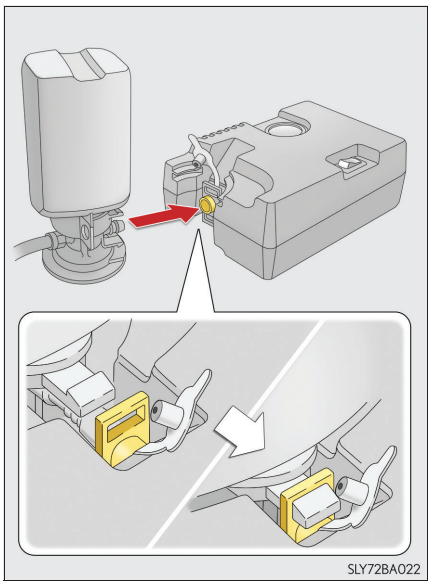
6 Remove the power plug from the compressor.



7 Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P. 498)

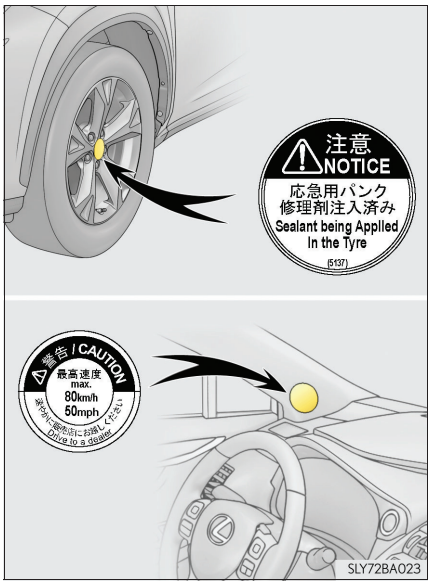
8 Connect the bottle to the compressor.

Make sure that the bottle is securely connected.



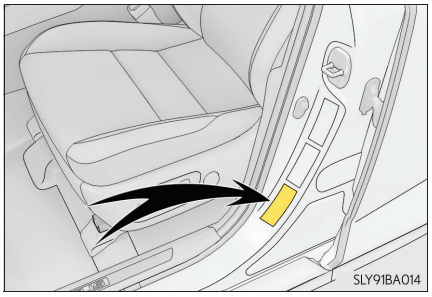
9 Attach the 2 stickers as shown.

Remove any dirt and moisture from the wheel before attaching the label. If it is impossible to attach the label, make sure to tell any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional when you have them repair and replace the tire that sealant is injected.



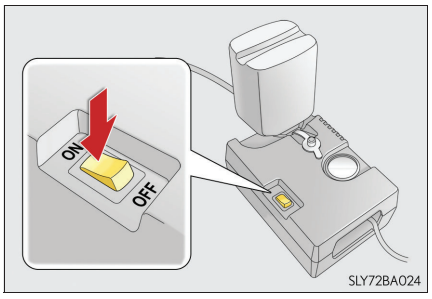
10 Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label as shown. (→P. 651)

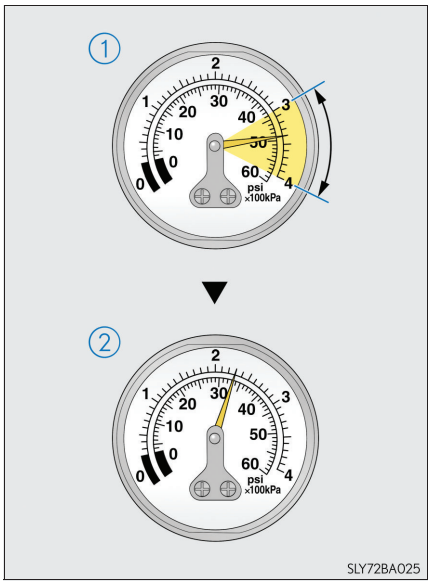


11 Start the engine. (→P. 221)

12 To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.



13 Inflate the tire until the recommended pressure is reached.



① The sealant will be injected and the pressure will spike to 300 kPa (3.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 44 psi) or 400 kPa (4.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 58 psi), then gradually decrease.

② The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 minute (15 minutes at low temperature) after the switch is turned on.

- Turn the compressor switch off and then check the tire inflation pressure. Being careful not to over inflate, check and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached.
- If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the recommended level after inflation for 10 minutes (35 minutes at low temperature) with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the recommended level, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure. (→P. 620)

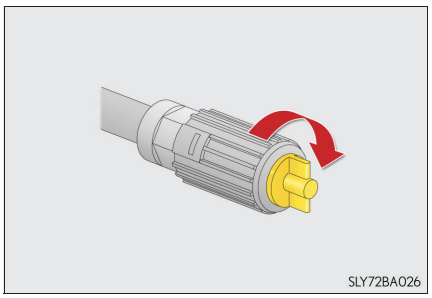
14 With the compressor switch off, disconnect the hose from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

Some sealant may leak when the hose is removed.

15 Install the valve cap onto the valve of the emergency repaired tire.

16 Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.

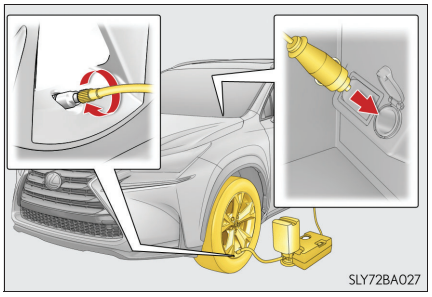
If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.



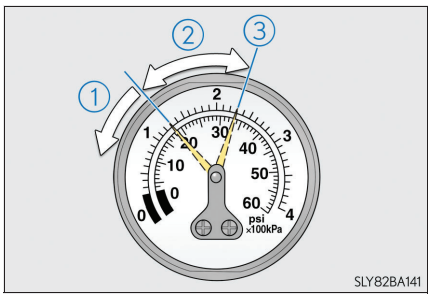
17 Temporarily store the bottle in the luggage compartment while it is connected to the compressor.

18 To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive safety for about 5 km (3 miles) below 80 km/h (50 mph).

19 After driving, stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and reconnect the compressor.


SLY72BA027

20 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check the tire inflation pressure.



SLY82BA141

① If the tire inflation pressure is below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi): The puncture cannot be repaired. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

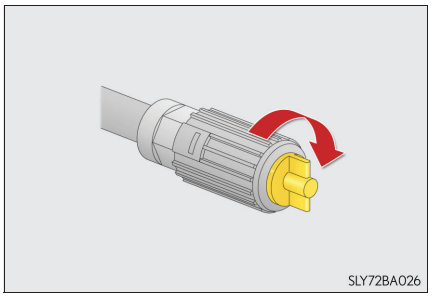
② If the tire inflation pressure is between 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) and a point below the recommended level: The tire can be repaired. Proceed to step 21.

③ If the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level: Proceed to step 22.

21 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform step 19.

22 Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.

If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.



23 Store the bottle in the luggage compartment while it is connected to the compressor.

24 Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional that is less than 100 km (62 miles) away for tire repair or replacement.

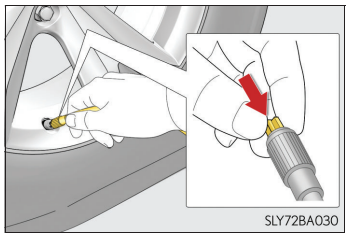
■ Emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The emergency tire puncture repair kit is for filling the car tire with air.
- The sealant has a limited life span. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The sealant should be replaced before the expiry date. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for replacement.
- The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant in the bottle and other parts of the kit have been used and need to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- The compressor can be used repeatedly.
- The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -40°C (-40°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- The kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
- If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
- If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
- During operation of the kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- Do not use to check or to adjust the tire pressure.

■ If the tire is inflated to more than the recommended level

1 Disconnect the hose from the valve.

2 Install the air release cap to the end of the hose and push the protrusion on the air release cap into the valve to let some air out.



3 Disconnect the hose from the valve, remove the air release cap from the hose and then reconnect the hose.

4 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check that the air pressure indicator shows the recommended level. (→P. 651)
If the air pressure is lower than the recommended level, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended pressure is reached.

■ After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
- Even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.

■ Note for checking the emergency tire puncture repair kit

Check the sealant expiry date occasionally.
The expiry date is shown on the bottle. Do not use sealant whose expiry date has already passed. Otherwise, repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be performed properly.

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident.

- The emergency tire puncture repair kit is made exclusively for your vehicle. Do not use it on other vehicles.
- Do not use the emergency tire puncture repair kit for tires that are a different size than the specified ones or for any other purpose. Doing so may cause the tires to not be repaired properly.

■ Precautions for use of the sealant

- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

WARNING

■ **When fixing the flat tire**

- Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
- Connect the valve and hose securely with the tire installed on the vehicle.
- If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur or sealant may be sprayed out.
- If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.
- After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
- Perform temporary repairs according to the work procedures. If the procedures are not followed accordingly, the tire sealant fluid may spurt out.
- Be separated from the tire during repairs when operating the temporary repair kit, as there is the danger of rupturing. If crack or deformation occurs, turn the kit switch off and stop the repairs.
- The kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the compressor continuously for more than 35 minutes.
- Parts of the repair kit will get hot during operation. Handle with care during and after operation. As the kit gets hot, especially the metallic portion of the bottle and the compressor connection, do not touch during use or immediately after use.
- Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS air bag from operating properly.

■ **Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly**

- Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.
- If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following:
  - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
  - Tire inflation pressure. If tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or below, this may indicate severe tire damage.

NOTICE

■ When performing an emergency repair

- Perform the emergency repair without removing the nail or screw that has punctured the tread of the tire. If the object that has punctured the tire is removed, repair by the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be possible.
- The kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the kit vacuums up dust, etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Use the kit with the top facing upward. The kit cannot work properly if it is laid on its side.

■ Handling the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The compressor power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the compressor to any other source.
- If gasoline splatters on the kit, the kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
- Store the kit in its assigned place out of reach of children.
- Do not disassemble or modify the kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 539)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 221), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P. 221)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 83)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 629)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 624)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 629)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever to P.
3. Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
4. Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the electronic key does not operate properly

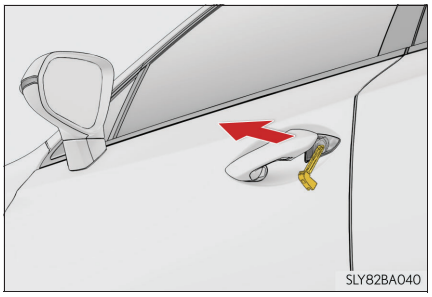
If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 150) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the hybrid system can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors

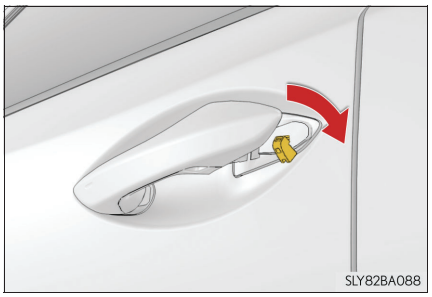
Use the mechanical key to perform the following operations. (→P. 125)

■ Unlocking the door

1 Insert the mechanical key while pulling on the driver's door handle.



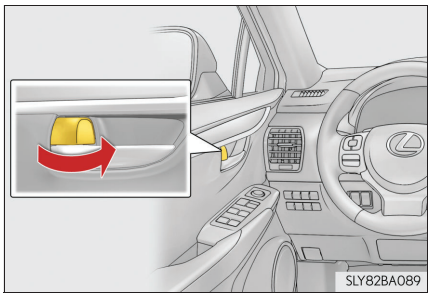
2 Unlocking the door.



3 Remove the key, return the handle, and then pull the handle again.

■ Locking the door

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.



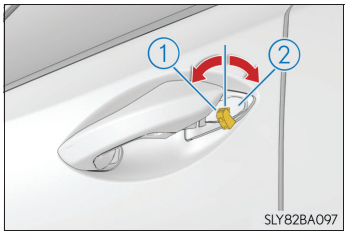
2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

■ Key linked functions

① Closes the windows and moon roof* (turn and hold)

② Opens the windows and moon roof* (turn and hold)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

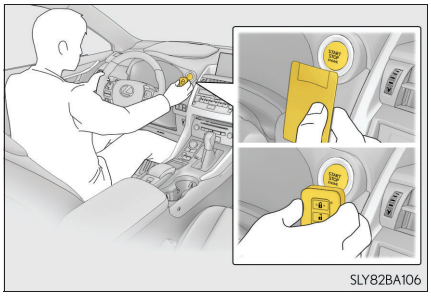


Starting the engine

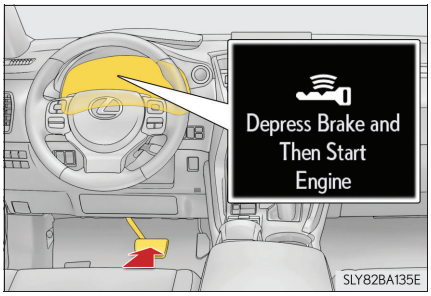
1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.
When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.


SLY82BA106

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that message is shown on the multi-information display.



SLY82BA135E

4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be operated, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P. 554)

■ **Alarm**

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.

If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 89)

■ **Changing engine switch modes**

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step 3 above.

The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 222)

■ **When the electronic key does not work properly**

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on.
  (Customizable features →P. 658)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P. 150)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or moon roof (if equipped)**

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof.
Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

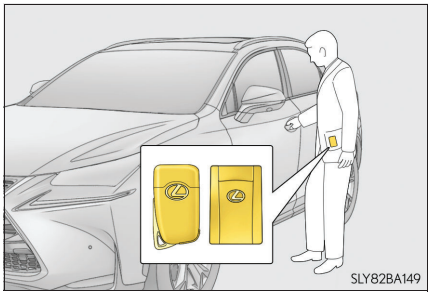
If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

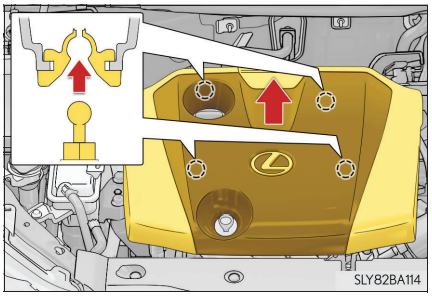
1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and the doors may lock. (→P. 90)


SLY82BA149

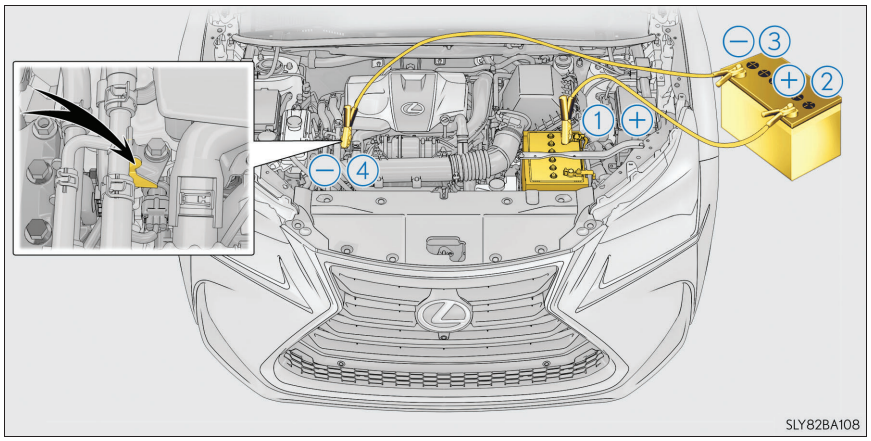
2 Open the hood (→P. 522).

3 NX200 only: Remove the engine cover.

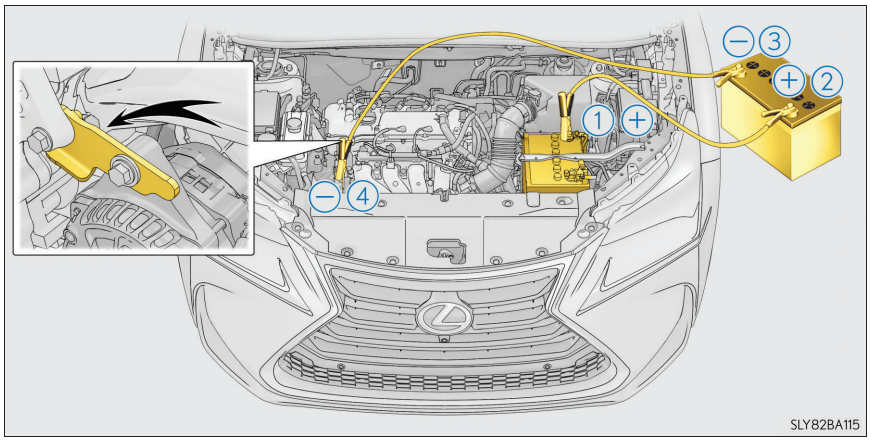

SLY82BA114

4 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

▶ NX200t



▶ NX200



① Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

② Connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

③ Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

④ Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

5 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

6 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.

7 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

8 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ **When the battery is removed or discharged**

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off.
  If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.
- The power back door must be initialized. (→P. 143)

■ **Replacing battery**

The battery used with the Stop & Start system is a dedicated battery, replace the battery with a performance battery S-95 or greater.
If the appropriate battery is not used, the Stop & Start system is limited for battery protection. The battery may quickly deteriorate, or in the worst case, the engine may not be able to be started.
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or engine drive belt.

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P. 101) enters the red zone, or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

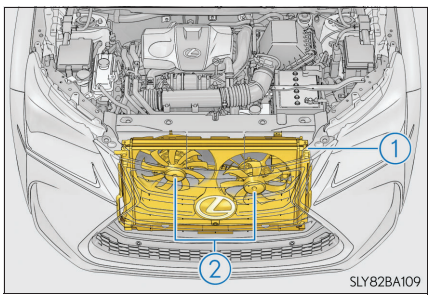
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

① Radiator

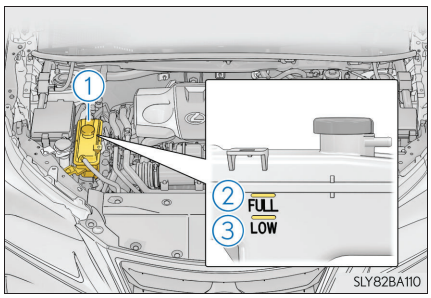
② Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

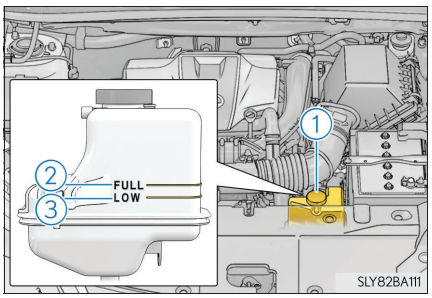


4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir.

▶ Engine



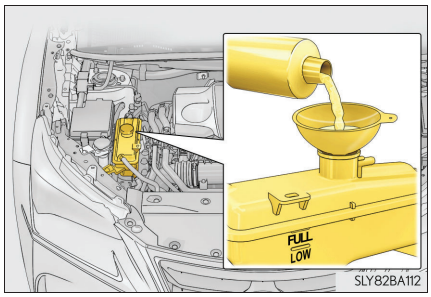
▶ Intercooler radiator (NX200t only)



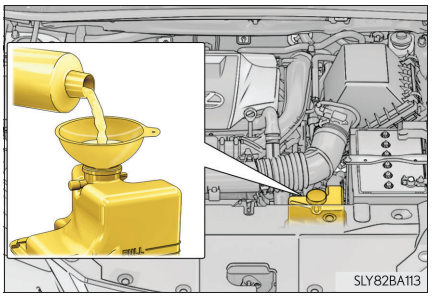
① Reservoir
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line

5 Add coolant if necessary.

▶ Engine



▶ Intercooler radiator (NX200t only)



Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fans may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fans are not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the fan is operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

8 Check if "Engine Coolant Temp High" is shown on the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear:
Stop the engine and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the message is not displayed:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- Do not touch within the engine compartment or get close when the cooling fan is operating. Body parts, clothes, etc., may get caught and lead to an accident, resulting in serious injury. The cooling fan operates automatically at times when the air conditioner is operating and times when the coolant temperatures are high.
  NX200t only: Also, it may operate for several minutes even after the engine switch is turned off.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
  High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

NOTICE

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ **To prevent damage to the cooling system**

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust, etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

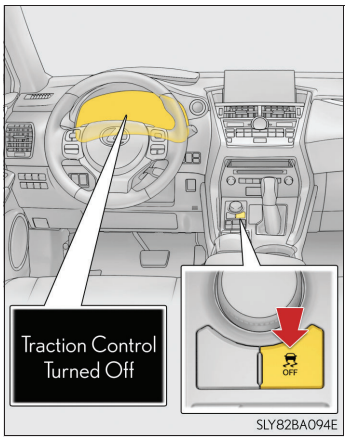
If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

1. Stop the engine. Shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine.
5. Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press  to turn off TRC. (→P. 345)



WARNING

■ **When attempting to free a stuck vehicle**

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ **When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **To avoid damage to the transmission and other components**

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

Vehicle specifications 9

9-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 640
Fuel information 654
9-2. Customization
Customizable features 656
9-3. Initialization
Items to initialize 666

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		4630 mm (182.3 in.)
Overall width		1845 mm (72.6 in.)
Overall height*1		1645 mm (64.8 in.)
Wheelbase		2660 mm (104.7 in.)
Tread	Front	1580 mm (62.2 in.)*2 1570 mm (61.8 in.)*3
	Rear	1580 mm (62.2 in.)*2 1570 mm (61.8 in.)*3
Gross vehicle mass		2295 kg (5060 lb.)*4 2280 kg (5027 lb.)*5 2350 kg (5181 lb.)*6 2335 kg (5148 lb.)*7 2175 kg (4795 lb.)*8 2225 kg (4906 lb.)*9
Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	1270 kg (2800 lb.)
	Rear	1270 kg (2800 lb.)
Drawbar load*10		60kg (132 lb.)
Towing capacity*10	Without brake	750 kg (1653 lb.)
	With brake	1500 kg (3307 lb.)

*1: Unladen vehicle
*2: Vehicles with 225/65R17 tires or 225/60R18 tires
*3: Vehicles with 235/55R18 tires
*4: For AGZ10L-AWTLTW models*11
*5: For AGZ10R-AWTLTW models*11
*6: For AGZ15L-AWTLTW models*11
*7: For AGZ15R-AWTLTW models*11
*8: For ZGZ10L-AWXLPW models*11
*9: For ZGZ15L-AWXLPW models*11

*10: Vehicles with towing package

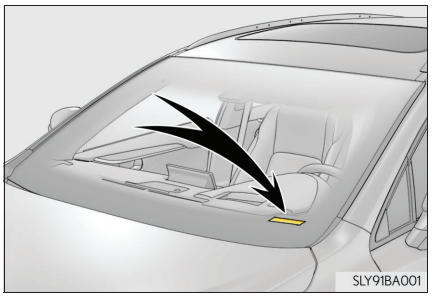
*11: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label. (→P. 641)

Vehicle identification

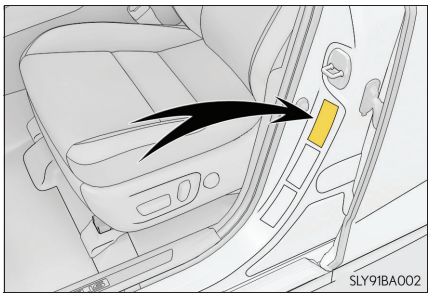
■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

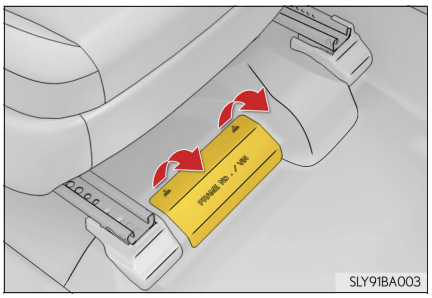
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the manufacturer's label.



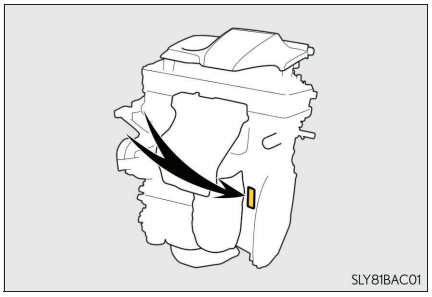
This number is also stamped under the right-hand front seat.



■ Engine number

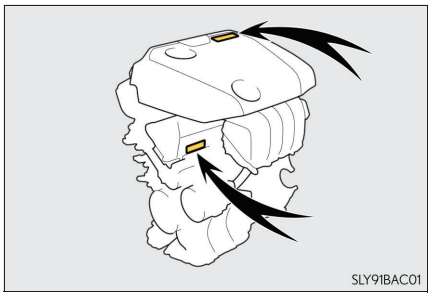
▶ NX200t

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



▶ NX200

The engine number is stamped on the engine block and engine cover as shown.



Engine

▶ NX200t

Model	8AR-FTS
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline (with turbocharger)
Bore and stroke	86.0 × 86.0 mm (3.39 × 3.39 in.)
Displacement	1998 cm^3 (121.9 cu.in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

▶ NX200

Model	3ZR-FAE
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	80.5 × 97.6 mm (3.17 × 3.84 in.)
Displacement	1987 cm^3 (121.2 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type		▶ EU area Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only ▶ Except EU area Unleaded gasoline only
Research octane number	NX200t	95 or higher
	NX200	91 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)		60 L (15.9 gal., 13.2 Imp.gal.)

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*)	
With filter	▶ NX200t 4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp.qt.) ▶ NX200 4.2 L (4.4 qt., 3.7 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	▶ NX200t 4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 Imp.qt.) ▶ NX200 3.9 L (4.1 qt., 3.4 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

▶ NX200t

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

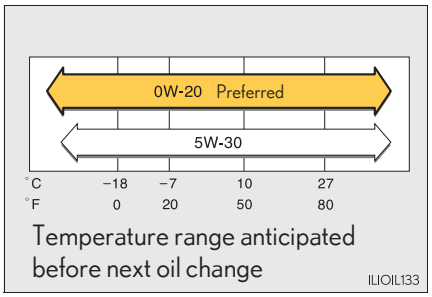
"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" or API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving" or SN "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Viscosity grade:
SAE 0W-20 and 5W-30

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines" is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.



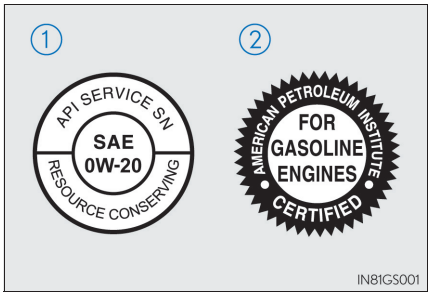
Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

▶ NX200

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil". Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving" or SN "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

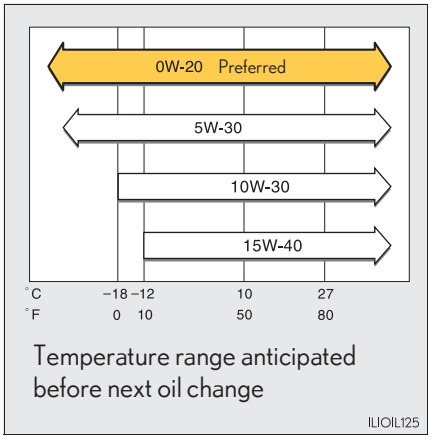
15W-40:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



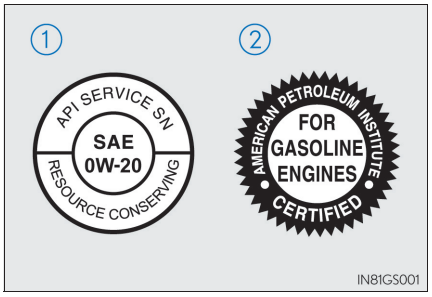
Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*	NX200t	▶ Gasoline engine 7.9 L (8.3 qt., 7.0 Imp.qt.) ▶ Intercooler 2.9 L (3.1 qt., 2.6 Imp.qt.)
	NX200	6.0 L (6.3 qt., 5.3 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*: The coolant capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Ignition system (spark plug)

Make	▶ NX200t NGK DILFR7K9G ▶ NX200 DENSO SC20HR11 or SC16HR11
Gap	▶ NX200t 0.9 mm (0.04 in.) ▶ NX200 1.1 mm (0.04 in.)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**
Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

Battery Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.25 or higher If the specific gravity is lower than the standard value, charge the battery.
Charging rates Quick charge Slow charge	 15 A max. 5 A max.

Automatic transmission (NX200t)

Fluid capacity*	6.5 L (6.9 qt., 5.7 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ **Transmission fluid type**
Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Multidrive (NX200)

Fluid capacity*	7.1 L (7.5 qt., 6.2 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine CVT Fluid FE

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ **CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) fluid type**
Using Multidrive fluid other than "Toyota Genuine CVT Fluid FE" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.45 L (0.48 qt., 0.40 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

Rear differential (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.5 L (0.5 qt., 0.4 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	Left-hand drive vehicles	100 mm (3.94 in.) Min.
	Right-hand drive vehicles	90 mm (3.54 in.) Min.
Pedal free play		1.0 — 6.0 mm (0.04 — 0.24 in.)
Fluid type		SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 490 N (50.0 kgf, 110 lbf) while the engine is running.

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels

▶ Type A

Tire size	225/65R17 102H
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	▶ Front tire 240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 35 psi) ▶ Rear tire 240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 35 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 7 J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

▶ Type B

Tire size	225/60R18 100H		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kg/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kg/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100mph)	270 (2.7, 39)	270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Type C

Tire size	235/55R18 100V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kg/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kg/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100mph)	270 (2.7, 39)	270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Compact spare tire (if equipped)

Tire size	T165/80D17 104M
Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 4 T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

■ **When towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package)**

Add 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) to the recommended tire inflation pressure, and drive at speeds below 100 km/h (62 mph).

■ **When installing a compact spare tire (if equipped)**

Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights High beam (halogen bulbs)*	60	A
	Rear turn signal lights	21	B
	Back-up lights	16	C
Interior	Vanity lights	8	C
	Luggage compartment light	5	C

A: HB3 halogen bulbs
B: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
C: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
*: If equipped

Fuel information

▶ NX200t

EU area:

You must only use unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.

Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.

Except EU area:

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.

▶ NX200

EU area:

You must only use unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.

Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 91 or higher for optimum engine performance.

Except EU area:

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 91 or higher for optimum engine performance.

■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has an Research Octane Number that follows the above.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly.
- EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as "E50" or "E85" and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle's fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Except EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as "E50" or "E85" and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle's fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed using the multi-information display, the Remote Touch or Lexus Display Audio controller, or at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

Customizing vehicle features

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.

■ **Changing using the Remote Touch**

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.

2 Select "Setup" on the "MENU" screen and select "Vehicle".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ **Changing using the Lexus Display Audio controller**

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Lexus Display Audio controller.

2 Select "Setup" on the "MENU" screen and select "Vehicle".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ **Changing using the multi-information display**

1 Press ❮ or ❯ of the meter control switches, select , and then press ⊡.

2 Press ^ or ⌄ of the meter control switches, select the item, and then press ⊡.

3 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches, select the desired setting, and then press ⊙.

To go back to the previous screen or exit the customize mode, press ⮌.

Customizable Features

① Vehicles with a Remote Touch or Lexus Display Audio controller: Settings that can be changed using the Remote Touch or Lexus Display Audio controller

② Settings that can be changed using the multi-information display

③ Settings that can be changed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

④ Settings that can be changed using the vehicle switch

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – =Not available

■ Door lock (→P. 130, 625)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Unlocking using a mechanical key	All doors unlocked in first step	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	–	–	O	–
Speed linked door locking function	On	Off	O	–	O	–
Shift position linked door locking function	Off	On	O	–	O	–
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Off	On	O	–	O	–
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	On	Off	O	–	O	–

■ **Smart entry & start system* and wireless remote control (→P. 124, 148)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Operation signal (emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	–	O	–
Time elapsed before the automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	–	–	O	–
		120 seconds				
Open door reminder buzzer (When locking the vehicle)	On	Off	–	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ **Smart entry & start system* (→P. 148)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Smart door unlocking	All the doors	Driver's door	O	–	O	O
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	–	O	–
Number of consecutive door lock operations	As many as desired	2 times	–	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ **Wireless remote control (→P. 124)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Wireless remote control	On	Off	–	–	O	–
Unlocking operation	All doors unlocked in first step	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	O	–	O	–

■ Automatic light control system (→P. 246)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O	–
Time elapsed before the headlights turn off (follow me home)	30 seconds	60 seconds	–	–	O	–
		90 seconds				
		120 seconds				

■ Illumination (→P. 483)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O	–
		7.5 seconds				
		30 seconds				
Time elapsed before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O	–
		7.5 seconds				
		30 seconds				
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	–	–	O	–
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	O	–
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	O	–
Footwell lighting	On	Off	–	–	O	–
Fading out of the outer foot lights when they turn off	Long	Short	–	–	O	–

■ Multi-information display (→P. 101, 105)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Eco Driving Indicator Light	On	Off	–	○	–	–
Language*1	English	French	–	○	–	–
		Spanish				
		German				
		Italian				
		Russian				
Units	km (L/100km)	km (km/L)	–	○	–	–
		miles (MPG)*2				
switch settings	Drive information 1	Desired status screen*3	–	○	–	–
Speed warning	Off	On	–	○	–	–
Speed warning setting	30 km/h (20 mph)	30 ~ 260 km/h (20 ~ 160 mph)	–	○	–	–
Drive information screen displayed on the first screen of i (Drive information 1)	Current fuel consumption	*4	–	○	–	–
	Average fuel consumption (after reset)					
Drive information screen displayed on the second screen of i (Drive information 2)	Distance (range)	*4	–	○	–	–
	Average speed (after reset)					
Pop-up display*5	On	Off	–	○	–	–
Accent color	Color 1	Color 2	○	○	–	–

*1: The default setting varies according to countries.

*2: If equipped

*3: Some status screens cannot be registered (indicated on the multi-information display)

*4: 2 of the following items: current fuel consumption, average fuel economy (after reset), average fuel economy (after refuel), average fuel economy (after start), average vehicle speed (after reset), average vehicle speed (after start), distance (driving range), distance (after start), elapsed time (after reset), elapsed time (after start), blank

*5: Intersection guidance, Incoming calls, Adjust brightness, Stop & Start system duration, Stop & Start system status

■ **Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 470)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	On	Off	O	–	O	–
A/C Auto switch operation	On	Off	O	–	O	–

■ **Power windows (→P. 192)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	–	–	O	–
Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On	–	–	O	–

■ **Moon roof*1 (→P. 195)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Mechanical key linked operation*2	Off	On	–	–	O	–
Wireless remote control linked operation*2	Off	On	–	–	O	–

*1: If equipped

*2: This function cannot be customized unless power window operations, using the wireless remote control or mechanical key, is enabled.

■ Turn signal lever(→P. 239)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	3	4	–	–	O	–
		5				
		6				
		7				
		Off				

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor* (→P. 322)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Detection distance of the front center sensor	Long	Short	O	–	O	–
Detection distance of the rear center sensor	Long	Short	O	–	O	–
Display setting (When Lexus parking assist-sensor is operating)	On	Off	O	–	O	–
Buzzer volume	3	1 to 5	O	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ Driving position memory* (→P. 178)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Standard	Off	O	–	O	–
		Partial				
Selection the door linking driving position memory with door unlock operation	Driver's door	All doors	–	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ Outside rear view mirrors (→P. 189)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Automatic folding/extending operation	Linked to locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	–	–	O	–
		Linked to engine switch operation				
Linked mirror function when reversing	On	Off	–	–	O	–

■ Stop & Start system* (→P. 266)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Change the Stop & Start system duration when the A/C is on	Normal	Long	–	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)* (→P. 312)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Steerage assist	On	Off	–	O	–	–
Sensitivity adjustment for the lane deviation alert buzzer	Standard	High	–	O	–	–

*: If equipped

■ Alarm* (→P. 89)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
Deactivates the alarm when the doors are unlocked using the mechanical key	Off	On	–	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ Power back door*1 (→P. 136)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③	④
▶ Set at the desired Position (height)*2 Back Door Automatic Open and Stop Position	Initial settings Position	Stop at the desired position (height)	–	–	–	O
▶ 5 step configuration Back Door Automatic Open and Stop Position	5	1 to 5	O	–	O	–
Power back door operations	On	Off	–	O	–	–

*1: If equipped

*2: Configured by operating the switch of the lower back door. (→P. 139)

■ Vehicle customization

- When the speed linked door locking function and the shift position linked door locking function are both on, the door lock operates as follows.
  - When shifting the shift lever to any position other than P, all the doors will be locked.
  - If the vehicle is started with all the doors locked, the speed linked door locking function would not operate.
  - If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed linked door locking function will operate.
- When the smart entry & start system is off, smart door unlocking cannot be customized.
- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the automatic door lock function is activated, the signals will be generated in accordance with the Operation signal (buzzer) and the Operation signal (emergency flashers) settings.

■ **In the following situations, customize mode in which the settings can be changed through the multi-information display will automatically be turned off.**

- A warning message appears after the customize mode screen is displayed.
- The engine switch is turned off.
- The vehicle begins to move while the customize mode screen is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Cautions during customization**

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Items to initialize

The following item must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system*	• When adjusting the tire inflation pressure • When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed or load weight • When rotating the tires • When changing the tire	P. 539
Oil maintenance	• After the maintenance is performed	P. 530
Power back door*	• After reconnecting or changing the battery • After changing a fuse	P. 143
Power window	• When functioning abnormally	P. 193
Moon roof*		P. 197

*: If equipped

Index

What to do if...
(Troubleshooting).....668
Alphabetical index..... 672

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Audio/visual system

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed

You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 126)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately. (→P. 128)

The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P. 554)
- Vehicles with entry function
  Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?
  When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P. 222)
- Vehicles with entry function
  Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P. 150)

The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P. 133)

If you think something is wrong

The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P. 221)
- Is the shift position in P? (→P. 221)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P. 148)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P. 224)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
  In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P. 627)
- Is the battery discharged? (→P. 629)

The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

  If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode (→P. 231, 237)

The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P. 224)

The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
  The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P. 192)

The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P. 223)

A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

  Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P. 586)
- The parking brake indicator is on

  Is the parking brake released? (→P. 242)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P. 584, 591)

An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (vehicles with an alarm)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door during setting the alarm?
  The sensor detects it and the alarm sounds. (→P. 89)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode or start the engine.

A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?
  Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P. 591)

A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P. 584, 591.

When a problem has occurred

If you have a flat tire

- Vehicles without a spare tire
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and repair the flat tire temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 607)
- Vehicles with a spare tire
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P. 594)

The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P. 637)

Alphabetical index

A

A/C 470
Air conditioning filter 552
Automatic air conditioning system 470
Blower customization 476
Pollen removal mode 476
S-FLOW mode 472
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 343
Function 343
Warning light 585
Active Sound Control (ASC) 245
Adaptive Variable Suspension system (AVS) 344
Air conditioning filter 552
Air conditioning system 470
Air conditioning filter 552
Automatic air conditioning system 470
Blower customization 476
Pollen removal mode 476
S-FLOW mode 472
Airbag manual on-off system 54
Airbags 45
Airbag manual on-off system 54
Airbag operating conditions 51
Airbag precautions for your child 47
Airbag warning light 585
Correct driving posture 36
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 51
Curtain shield airbag precautions 49
General airbag precautions 47
Locations of airbags 45
Modification and disposal of airbags 50
Seat cushion airbag 45
Side airbag operating conditions 51
Side airbag precautions 48
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 51
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 49
SRS airbags 45
Alarm 89
Alarm 89
All-wheel drive lock mode 349
Anchor brackets 61

Antenna
Radio ... 406
Smart entry & start system ... 148
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ... 343
Function ... 343
Warning light ... 585
Approach warning ... 276, 292
Armrest ... 504
ASC (Active Sound Control) ... 245
Assist grips ... 504
Audio system (with navigation system)*
Audio system (with Lexus Display Audio System) ... 380
Antenna ... 406
Audio input ... 387
AUX port ... 387
Bluetooth® audio ... 431
CD player ... 407
iPod ... 413
MP3/WMA disc ... 407
Optimal use ... 397
Portable music player ... 422
Radio ... 405
Setup menu ... 389
Steering wheel audio switches ... 386
USB memory ... 417
Automatic air conditioning system ... 470
Air conditioning filter ... 552
Blower customization ... 476
Pollen removal mode ... 476
S-FLOW mode ... 472
Automatic headlight leveling system ... 248
Automatic High Beam ... 250
Automatic light control system ... 248
AUX port ... 387
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system) ... 344

B

Back door ... 136
Wireless remote control ... 136
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs ... 569
Wattage ... 653
Battery
If the battery is discharged ... 629
Preparing and checking before winter ... 370
Warning light ... 584
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) ... 359
Blind Spot Monitor function ... 365
Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function ... 367

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA STSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Bluetooth® 454
Audio system 431
Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 433
Bottle holders 488
Brake
Brake Hold 243
Fluid 650
Parking brake 240
Warning light 584
Brake assist 343
Brake Hold 243
Break-in tips 204
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control 102
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 359
Blind Spot Monitor function 365
Rear Crossing Traffic Alert function 367

C

Card holders 490
Card key 124
Care
Aluminum wheels 511
Exterior 510
Interior 514
Seat belts 515
Self-restoring coat 510
Cargo hooks 491
Cargo net hooks 491
CD player 407
Chains 372
Child restraint system 57
Child seats definition 59
Child seats installation 70, 78
Installing a CRS to the passenger seat 62
Installing a CRS to the rear seat 65
Installing CRS with ISOFIX rigid anchors 72
Installing CRS with seat belts 66
Installing CRS with top strap 80
Child safety 56
Airbag precautions 47
Back door precautions 143
Battery precautions 536, 632
Child restraint system 57
Electronic sunshade precautions 200
How your child should wear the seat belt 42
Installing child restraints 70, 78
Moon roof precautions 198
Power window lock switch 192
Power window precautions 194
Rear door child-protectors 133
Removed key battery precautions 555
Seat belt precautions 44
Seat heater precautions 480
Child-protectors 133

Cleaning 510, 514
Aluminum wheels 511
Exterior 510
Interior 514
Seat belts 515
Clock 498
Coat hooks 505
Condenser 533
Console box 487
Consumption screen 118
Coolant
Capacity 648
Checking 532
Preparing and checking before winter 370
Warning light 584
Cooling system 532
Engine overheating 633
Cornering lights 247
Cruise control
Cruise control 300
Dynamic radar cruise control 271
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 286
Cup holders 488
Curtain shield airbags 45
Customizable features 656

D

Daytime running light system 248
Deck board 493
Deck under tray 492
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors 475
Rear window 475
Windshield 475
Differential 650
Dimension 640
Display
Drive information 107
Dynamic radar cruise control 271
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 286
Fuel consumption information 118
Head-up display 111
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 304
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 312
Multi-information display 105
Warning messages 591
Do-it-yourself maintenance 520
Doors
Automatic door locking and unlocking system 133
Back door 136
Door glasses 192
Door lock 130
Outside rear view mirrors 189
Rear door child-protectors 133
Side doors 130

Double locking system 88
Drive information 107
Drive-start control 203, 230
Driver's seat belt reminder light 586
Driver's seat position memory 178
Driving
Break-in tips 204
Correct posture 36
Driving mode select switch 340
Procedures 202
Winter drive tips 370
Driving position memory 178
Memory recall function 180
Dynamic radar cruise control
Function 271
Warning message 591
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range
Function 286
Warning message 591

E

Eco drive mode 340
Electric Power Steering (EPS)
Function 344
Warning light 585
Electronic key
Battery-saving function 149
If the electronic key does not operate properly 625
Replacing the battery 554
Electronic sunshade 199
Jam protection function 199
Operation 199
Emergency brake signal 344
Emergency flashers 574
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds 584
If a warning light turns on 584
If a warning message is displayed 591
If the battery is discharged 629
If the electronic key does not operate properly 625
If the engine will not start 623
If you have a flat tire 594, 607
If you lose your keys 126, 128
If you think something is wrong 582
If your vehicle becomes stuck 637
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 575
If your vehicle needs to be towed 576
If your vehicle overheats 633

Engine
Accessory mode 222
Compartment 525
Engine switch 221
Hood 522
How to start the engine 221
Identification number 642
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 575
Ignition switch (Engine switch) 221
Overheating 633
Engine compartment cover 527
Engine coolant
Capacity 648
Checking 532
Preparing and checking before winter 370
Warning light 584
Engine coolant temperature gauge 101
Engine immobilizer system 83
Engine oil
Capacity 643
Checking 528
Preparing and checking before winter 370
Warning light 584
Engine switch 221
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)
Function 344
Warning light 585
ERA-GLONASS 506

F

Flat tire 594, 607
Floor mats 34
Fluid
Automatic transmission 649
Brake 650
Continuously Variable Transaxle 649
Multidrive 649
Washer 537
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 571
Switch 254
Follow me home system 247
Front fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 571
Switch 254
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 586
Front position lights
Light switch 246
Replacing light bulbs 571

Front seats
Adjustment ... 169
Cleaning ... 514
Correct driving posture ... 36
Driving position memory ... 178
Head restraints ... 182
Power easy access system ... 178
Seat heaters ... 482
Seat position memory ... 178
Seat ventilators ... 482
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs ... 571
Turn signal lever ... 239
Fuel
Capacity ... 643
Fuel gauge ... 101
Gas station information ... 688
Information ... 654
Refueling ... 262
Type ... 643
Fuel consumption information ... 118
Fuel filler door ... 262
Refueling ... 262
When the fuel filler door cannot be opened ... 264
Fuses ... 556

G

Gas station information ... 688
Gauges ... 101
Glove box ... 487
Grocery bag hooks ... 492

H

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) ... 433
Head restraints ... 182
Headlights ... 246
Automatic headlight leveling ... 248
Automatic High Beam system ... 250
Follow me home system ... 247
Light switch ... 246
Replacing light bulbs ... 562, 571
Wattage ... 653
Head-up display ... 111
Heated steering wheel ... 481
Heaters
Automatic air conditioning system ... 470
Heated steering wheel ... 481
Outside rear view mirrors ... 475
Seat heaters ... 482
High mounted stoplight
Replacing light bulbs ... 571
Hill-start assist control ... 343
Hood ... 522
Warning message ... 134, 591
Hooks
Cargo hooks ... 491
Retaining hooks (floor mat) ... 34
Horn ... 186

I

Identification
- Engine ... 642
- Vehicle ... 641

Ignition switch (Engine switch) ... 221
Illuminated entry system ... 485
Immobilizer system ... 83
Indicators ... 96
Initialization
- Engine oil maintenance data ... 530
- Items to initialize ... 666
- Tire pressure warning system ... 540

Inside rear view mirror ... 187
Instrument panel light control ... 102
Interior lights ... 483
- Switch ... 484
- Wattage ... 653

Intrusion sensor ... 91
ISOFIX rigid anchors ... 72

J

Jack
- Positioning a floor jack ... 523
- Vehicle-equipped jack ... 595, 609

Jack handle ... 595, 609
Jam protection function
- Electronic sunshade ... 199
- Moon roof ... 195
- Power back door opener and closer ... 143
- Power windows ... 192

K

Keyless entry
- Smart entry & start system ... 148
- Wireless remote control ... 124

Keys ... 124
- Battery-saving function ... 149
- Electronic key ... 124
- Engine switch ... 221
- If the electronic key does not operate properly ... 625
- If you lose your keys ... 126, 128
- Key number plate ... 124
- Keyless entry ... 148
- Mechanical key ... 124
- Replacing the battery ... 554
- Warning buzzer ... 149
- Wireless remote control key ... 124

Knee airbags ... 45

L

Lane Departure Alert (LDA) ... 304
Lane Departure Alert with steering control (LDA) ... 312
Language (multi-information display) ... 660
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) ... 304
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) ... 312
Lever
- Auxiliary catch lever ... 522
- Hood lock release lever ... 522
- Shift lever ... 226, 233
- Turn signal lever ... 239
- Wiper lever ... 256

Lexus Display Audio controller 382
Lexus Display Audio system 380
Lexus parking assist-sensor
Function 322
License plate lights
Light switch 246
Replacing light bulbs 571
Light
Automatic High Beam system 250
Cornering lights 247
Fog light switch 254
Follow me home system 247
Headlight switch 246
Illuminated entry system 485
Interior light list 483
Interior lights 484
Luggage compartment light 140
Personal lights 484
Replacing light bulbs 560
Turn signal lever 239
Vanity lights 497
Wattage 653
Light bulbs
Replacing 560
Wattage 653
Luggage cover 495

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 520
Maintenance data 640
Maintenance requirements 517
Malfunction indicator lamp 585
Meter
Head-up display 111
Indicators 98
Instrument panel light control 102
Meters 101
Multi-information display 105
Warning lights 584
Warning messages 591
Microphone 434
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 187
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 475
Outside rear view mirrors 189
Vanity mirrors 497
Moon roof
Jam protection function 195
Operation 195
Warning message 197, 591
MP3 disc 407
Multidrive 233

Multi-information display
Drive information 107
Dynamic radar cruise control 271
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 286
Language 660
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 304
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 312
Lexus parking assist-sensor 322
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 350
Warning messages 591

N

Navigation system*

O

Odometer 101
Oil
Engine oil 643
Rear differential oil 650
Transfer oil 650
Opener
Back door 137
Fuel filler door 264
Hood 522
Outside rear view mirrors 189
Adjusting and folding 189
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 359
Linked mirror function when reversing 190
Mirror position memory 178
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 475
Outside temperature display 101
Overheating 633

P

Paddle shift switches 227, 228, 234, 235
Panic mode 125
Parking assist sensors 322
Parking brake
Operation 240
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer/message 242
Warning light 586
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)
Function 350
PCS switch 351
Warning light 585
Warning message 591
Personal lights 483
Switch 484

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA STSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Pollen removal mode 476
Power back door opener and closer 136
Power easy access system 178
Power outlet 498
Power steering (Electric Power Steering system) 344
Warning light 585
Power windows
Door lock linked window operation 193
Jam protection function 192
Operation 192
Window lock switch 192
Pre-Crash Safety system (PCS)
Function 350
PCS switch 351
Warning light 585
Warning message 591

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control) 271
Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range) 286
Radiator 533
Radio 405
Rear Crossing Traffic Alert 359
Rear fog light
Replacing light bulbs 571
Switch 254
Rear passenger's seat belt reminder light 586
Rear seat
Folding down the rear seatbacks 172
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 566
Turn signal lever 239
Wattage 653
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 187
Outside rear view mirrors 189
Rear view monitor system 330
Rear window defogger 475
Rear window wiper 260
Refueling 262
Capacity 643
Fuel types 643
Opening the fuel tank cap 262
When the fuel filler door cannot be opened 264
Remote Touch*
Replacing
Electronic key battery 554
Fuses 556
Light bulbs 560
Tires 594

S

- **Seat belts** 38
  - Adjusting the seat belt 41
  - Child restraint system installation 57
  - Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt 515
  - Emergency Locking Retractor 42
  - How to wear your seat belt 38
  - How your child should wear the seat belt 42
  - Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 43
  - Reminder light and buzzer 586
  - Seat belt pretensioners 41
  - SRS warning light 585
- **Seat heaters** 482
- **Seat position memory** 178
- **Seat ventilators** 482
- **Seats**
  - Adjustment 169
  - Adjustment precautions 170
  - Child seats/child restraint system installation 57
  - Cleaning 514
  - Driving position memory 178
  - Folding down the rear seatbacks 172
  - Head restraint 182
  - Power easy access system 178
  - Properly sitting in the seat 36
  - Seat heaters 482
  - Seat ventilators 482
- **Sensor**
  - Automatic High Beam system 253
  - Inside rear view mirror 188
  - Lexus parking assist-sensor 322
  - Radar sensor 278, 295, 352
  - Rain-sensing windshield wipers 258
  - Tilt sensor 93
- **Service reminder indicators** 96
- **S-FLOW mode** 472
- **Shift lever** 226, 233
  - If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 231, 237
- **Shift lock system** 230, 237
- **Side airbags** 45
- **Side doors** 130
- **Side mirrors** 189
  - Adjusting and folding 189
  - BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 359
  - Heaters 475
- **Side turn signal lights**
  - Replacing light bulbs 571
  - Turn signal lever 239
- **Smart entry & start system** 148
  - Antenna location 148
  - Entry functions 130, 136
  - Starting the engine 221
  - Warning message 591

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA STSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Snow tires....370
Spare tire
Inflation pressure....651
Storage location....595
Spark plug....648
Specifications....640
Speech command system....467
Speedometer....101
Sport mode....340
Steering wheel
Adjustment....185
Audio switches....386
Heated steering wheel....481
Meter control switches....106
Power easy access system....178
Telephone switches....444
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal....344
Replacing light bulbs....571
Stop & Start system
Function....266
Idling stop time....269
Replacing battery....631
Storage feature....486
Storage precautions....486
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck....637
Sun visors....497
Sunglass holder....489
Sunshade....199
Switch
All-wheel drive lock switch....349
ASC (Active Sound Control)....245
Audio remote control switches....386
Automatic High Beam switch....250
Brake hold switch....243
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch....359
Cruise control switch....271, 286, 300
Door lock switch....132
Driving mode select switch....340
Driving position memory switches....179
Electronic sunshade switch....199
Emergency flashers switch....574
Engine switch....221
Fog light switch....254
Heated steering wheel....481
HUD (Head-up display) switches....111
Ignition switch....221
Intrusion sensor cancel switch....91

LDA switch 304, 312
Lexus parking assist-sensor switch 322
Light switches 246
Meter control switches 106
Moon roof switches 195
Outside rear view mirror switches 189
Paddle shift switches 227, 228
Parking brake switch 240
PCS switch 351
Power back door opener and closer switch 137, 138
Power window switch 192
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 475
Rear window wiper and washer switch 260
Seat heater switches 482
"SOS" button 506
Stop & Start cancel switch 266
Talk switch 444, 467
Telephone switches 444
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button 271, 286
VSC OFF switch 345
Window lock switch 192
Windshield wipers and washer switch 256

T

Tachometer 101
Tail lights
Light switch 246
Replacing light bulbs 571
Talk switch 444, 467
Telephone switch 444
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 89
Double locking system 88
Engine immobilizer system 83
Intrusion sensor 91
Tilt sensor 91
Tilt sensor 91
Tire inflation pressure
Maintenance data 651
Warning light 587
Tire pressure warning system
Function 539
Initializing 539
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 539
Registering ID codes 541
Warning light 587
Tires 538
Chains 372
Checking 538
If you have a flat tire 594, 607
Inflation pressure 548, 651

Replacing 538
Rotating tires 538
Size 651
Snow tires 370
Spare tire 594, 651
Tire pressure warning system 539
Warning light 587
Tools 595
Top strap 80
Towing
Emergency towing 578
Towing eyelet 579
Trailer towing 213, 214
Traction control 343
Trailer towing 214
Transfer 650
Transmission
Automatic transmission 226
Multidrive 233
Selecting a driving mode 340
TRC (Traction Control) 343
Trip meters 101
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 566, 571
Turn signal lever 239
Wattage 653

U

USB memory 417
USB port 387, 413, 417

V

Vanity lights
Vanity lights 497
Wattage 653
Vanity mirrors 497
Vehicle identification number 641
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 343
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 343

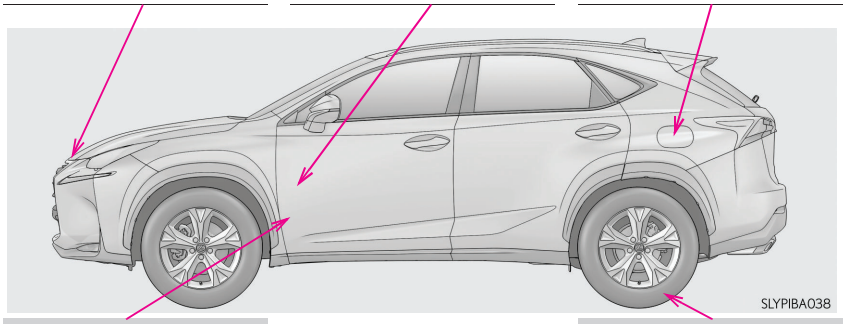
W

Warning buzzers
Approach warning 276, 292
Downshifting 229
Lexus parking assist-sensor 325
Light reminder 248
Open door 134
Seat belt reminder 586
Warning lights
ABS 585
Brake hold operated indicator 586
Brake Override System 587
Brake system 584
Charging system 584
Drive-Start Control 587
Electric power steering 585
High coolant temperature 584

Low engine oil pressure 584
Low fuel level 586
Malfunction indicator lamp 585
Master warning light 586
Parking brake indicator 586
PCS warning light 585
Seat belt reminder light 586
Slip indicator 586
SRS 585
Tire pressure 587
Warning messages 591
Washer
Checking 537
Low washer fluid warning message 537
Preparing and checking before winter 370
Switch 256
Washing and waxing 510
Wheels 550
Replacing wheels 550
Size 651
Window glasses
Front side windows 511, 515
Power windows 192
Window lock switch 192
Windows
Power windows 192
Rear window defogger 475
Washer 256
Windshield wiper de-icer 476
Windshield wipers
Intermittent windshield wipers 256
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 257
Winter driving tips 370
Wireless charger 499
Wireless communication 454
Wireless remote control key 124
Battery-saving function 149
Locking/Unlocking 124
Panic mode 125
Replacing the battery 554
WMA disc 407

GAS STATION INFORMATION

Auxiliary catch lever	Back door opener switch*	Fuel filler door
P. 522	P. 137	P. 264



Hood lock release lever	Tire inflation pressure
P. 522	P. 651

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	60 L (15.9 gal., 13.2 Imp.gal.)
Fuel type	EU area: Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only Except EU area: Unleaded gasoline only P. 643
Cold tire inflation pressure	P. 651
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference)	▶ NX200t With filter 4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp.qt.) Without filter 4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 Imp.qt.) ▶ NX200 With filter 4.2 L (4.4 qt., 3.7 Imp.qt.) Without filter 3.9 L (4.1 qt., 3.4 Imp.qt.)
Engine oil type	▶ NX200t P. 644 ▶ NX200 P. 646

*: Vehicles with a power back door

Fuel label information

When you find these types of fuel label at the gas station, use only the fuel with one of the following labels.

Gasoline engine

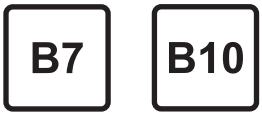


Diesel engine

For 1WW and 2WW engines



Except for 1WW and 2WW engines



Fuel cell vehicle

